

DEPARTMENT OF MILITIA AND DEFENCE

FOR THE

DOMINION OF CANADA

SUPPLEMENTARY REPORT

ORGANIZATION, EQUIPMENT, DESPATCH

AND

SERVICE OF THE CANADIAN CONTINGENTS

DURING

THE WAR IN SOUTH AFRICA

1899—1900

PRINTED BY ORDER OF PARLIAMENT



OTTAWA

PRINTED BY S. E. DAWSON, PRINTER TO THE QUEEN'S MOST
EXCELLENT MAJESTY

1901

To His Excellency the Right Honourable Sir GILBERT JOHN ELLIOT, Earl of Minto and Viscount Melgund of Melgund, County of Forfar, in the Peerage of the United Kingdom, Baron Minto of Minto, County of Roxburgh, in the Peerage of Great Britain, Baronet of Nova Scotia, &c., &c., Governor General of Canada.

MAY IT PLEASE YOUR EXCELLENCY—

I have the honour to forward to Your Excellency the supplementary Report of the Department of Militia and Defence of the Dominion of Canada concerning the organization, equipment, despatch and service of the Canadian contingents during the war in South Africa in 1899-1900, which is respectfully submitted.

I have the honour to be,

My Lord,

Your Excellency's most obedient servant,

F. W. BORDEN,

Minister of Militia and Defence.

DEPARTMENT OF MILITIA AND DEFENCE,

OTTAWA, May 10, 1901.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART I

	PAGE
Report of the Deputy Minister of Militia and Defence.....	7
Appendix A—Report of the Accountant.....	11
Appendix B—Report of the Chief Superintendent of Militia Stores.....	13
Appendix C—Report of the Chief Engineer.	22

PART II

REPORT OF THE MAJOR GENERAL COMMANDING.

1ST CONTINGENT.

	PAGE
Authority for	1
Recruiting centres.....	3
Oath on enlistment.....	3
Companies designated.....	4
Concentration at Quebec.....	4
Formed into a Regiment.....	4
Officers.....	4
Establishment.....	5
Appointments and promotions after formation.....	6
Nursing Sisters.....	7
Officers for instructional purposes.....	7
Marching out State.....	8
Thanks of Her Majesty's Government.....	9
Commendatory letter from Minister of Militia.....	9
Reinforcements.....	9
Colonel Otter's General Report.....	11
Col. Otter's report on action at Paardeberg, Feb. 18, with sketch, Appendix A. 1.	42
" " " " Feb. 20, " " A. 2.	45
" " " " final action, Feb. 27, " " A. 3.	46
" " " " Israels Poort, Appendix A. 4	48
Lt.-Col. Buchan's Diary, April 26 to May 25, Appendix A. 5.....	50
Col. Otter's report on action at Doornkop, May 29, with Sketch, Appendix A. 6..	54
Died from disease, Appendix A. 7.....	56
Killed in Action, or died from wounds received in action, Appendix A. 8.....	59
Wounded, Appendix A. 9.....	59
Receipts and disbursements by Col. Otter, of contributions from various sources, Appendix A. 10.....	61
List of Donors and Donations, Appendix A. 11.....	62
Report of Miss Pope, senior Nursing Sister, 1st Contingent.....	63

2ND CONTINGENT.

Offer of, accepted.....	67
Mounted Rifles.—Establishment.....	69
" " Enrolment and concentration.....	71
" " Officers	72
" " Appointments and promotions after formation, 1st Battalion..	73
" " " " " " 2nd Battalion..	74

2ND CONTINGENT—*Continued.*

Brigade Division Field Artillery :—Establishment.....	75
" " " " Enrolment and concentration.....	76
" " " " Officers.....	76
Conditions of service, both arms.....	77
Departure for South Africa.....	77
Marching out State, S.S. "Laurentian".....	78
" " " "Pomeranian".....	78
" " " "Milwaukee".....	79
Recapitulation.....	79
Guns, Ammunition, &c.....	80
Report of Lt.-Col. Lessard, O.C., R.C.D.....	81
Mounted Infantry Division, including R.C.D, Append x C. I.....	102
Casualties, R.C. Dragoons.....	104
Report Lt. Col. T. D. B. Evans, O.C., C.M. Rifles.....	106
Casualties, C. M. Rifles.....	114
Report Lt. Col. C. W. Drury, O.C., B.D.R.C.F. Artillery.....	116
" Lt.-Col. J. A. G. Hudon, O.C. "C" Battery R.C.F.A.....	119
" Major Hurdman, " "D" " ".....	138
" Major G. H. Ogilvie, " "E" " ".....	149
Casualties, Brigade Div. R.C.F. Artillery.....	151
Report Miss Hurcomb, senior Nursing Sister, 2nd Contingent.....	153

LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE.

Establishment.....	155
Recruiting centres.....	155
Conditions.....	156
Concentration.....	156
Officers.....	156
Officers, Seniority in Army.....	157
Appointments and promotions in the field.....	158
Marching out State, Halifax.....	159
Reinforcements.....	159
Report of Lt.-Col. Steele, M.V.O.....	159
Extract from Despatch from Sir Redvers Buller, on work of Corps, Appendix G. (1).....	176
Casualties, Appendix G. (2).....	178

AUXILIARY CORPS.

Nursing Sisters.....	179
Postal Corps.....	179
Artificers.....	180

GENERAL AND OTHER REMARKS.

Return of the troops.....	180
Commissions in the Army.....	181
Telegrams at special rates.....	182
Prolongation of service, 1st Contingent.....	182
Pay and Allowances.....	183
Deferred Pay, 1st Contingent.....	188
" " "C" Battery, R.C.F.A.....	188
Commendatory despatches.....	189
Canada's aid to the Empire.....	191

REPORT

ON THE

SOUTH AFRICAN CONTINGENTS

PART I.

DEPARTMENT OF MILITIA AND DEFENCE,

OTTAWA, April 23, 1901.

To the Honourable

F. W. BORDEN,

Minister of Militia and Defence.

SIR,—In my report to you dated April 17, 1900, upon the work done by the Department during the year 1899, I made the following remarks on the organization, equipment and despatch of the Contingents to South Africa, and I may be permitted to repeat them at the outset of this report. I stated :—

‘Of the work done in the department during the year, that connected with the organization, equipment and despatch of the first contingent, and the organization and equipment of the second contingent was, in a way, the most important, and possessed a more absorbing interest than any feature relating to military operations carried on in connection with the permanent force, or with the drill or manœuvres of the active militia.

‘I take this opportunity of assuring you that the loyalty and patriotic devotion to Britain evinced by Canadians of every creed and nationality, and wherever living, also existed to the fullest extent among the officials of the department.

‘The work of organizing and enrolling the contingents was carried out with zeal by the officers of the military branch of the department, efficiently aided by the district officers commanding and staff officers in the various military districts.

‘As intimated elsewhere, herein, practically the whole of the clothing, the necessities, the equipment, &c., had to be purchased for the contingents and delivered to them within about two weeks.

‘To accomplish this the officials in the purchasing branch, in charge of Captain A. Benoit, worked early and late in a systematic and businesslike way that could not be excelled.

‘The distribution of the supplies involving, as it did, a great amount of labour and exceptional care, was carried out very successfully by the stores branch under the control of Lieut.-Col. Macdonald, Chief Superintendent of Stores, who states that the officers of his branch spared neither time nor effort to thoroughly and rapidly do the work connected with the equipment of these forces.

‘The experience gained in connection with the sending out of the contingents, from the inception of the work until its completion, is regarded by the officers of all the branches in the department as having been of great advantage and service to them.

‘I cannot close this report without expressing my appreciation of the earnest co-operation I have received, throughout my first year as Deputy Minister, from all the officials in the department. They have invariably discharged their duties in a

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901.

most satisfactory and earnest manner. But I desire to especially refer to their willingness—I might say eagerness—to work with unremitting application in getting the contingents ready to go to South Africa. Night after night for weeks, some of the clerks in our department worked in their offices till a very late hour, and when necessity arose, they did not hesitate to come on Sundays and holidays; a number of them, in fact, cheerfully gave up both Christmas and New Year's Day to help to get their own particular work done and prevent delay. The work was done in a marvellously short time. That there was no hitch in the preparations nor any avoidable delay in the despatch of these troops, is due in a very great measure to the intelligent way in which this service was performed.

‘I take this opportunity of showing that I recognize and highly appreciate the zeal and efficiency displayed by the departmental staff in the discharge of their different duties.’

In the foregoing remarks I have dwelt more upon the equipment of the contingents than upon their organization or their transport to South Africa, while no reference at all was made to the large amount of work done in the Account Branch, and by the Engineer Branch in getting the transport steamers ready to carry the troops to Africa.

I now submit, herewith, separate reports (Appendix A, B, C) from the Accountant, the Chief Superintendent of Stores, and the Chief Engineer; also from the Major General Commanding (Part II); a perusal of these may give some idea of the nature of the increased work that the despatch of the contingents entailed upon these branches.

Special attention is invited to that part of the report of the accountant in which he refers to the additional work done in his branch in connection with the Contingents; even this lucid statement on the subject cannot give more than a faint idea of the work done by himself and his staff from the time the organization and equipment of the Contingents began down to the present moment.

Hitherto I have not made any reference to the work done in our correspondence branch in relation to the Contingents.

While it is true that much work of this nature was necessarily done through the Military Branch, nevertheless it is a fact that hundreds and hundreds of applications for enlistment were sent direct to you, as Minister, and to myself, as your deputy; countless communications and suggestions were received from persons who wrote us about almost every subject which they could conceive might have even a remote connection with the despatch of the Contingents; while hundreds of people, both in Canada and elsewhere, whose curiosity had been aroused, wrote for information on many and varied questions.

All these communications had to be answered, entered in our registers, and then filed; besides this the usual routine departmental work had to be carried on.

But, owing to the suddenness of the emergency and to the nature of the work we had to depend entirely on our regular staff to do it; there was no time to train others to assist them; early and late they cheerfully laboured for months to keep abreast of their work, and now that the strain is past, I cannot but record my profound appreciation of their zeal and industry during that time.

If the sending of the Contingents to Africa has brought credit to Canada, glory to those brave Canadians who fought and those who died there for the Empire, and drawn us

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

into closer and more enduring relationship to the Mother Country, surely some slight meed of praise is due to our departmental staff who willingly performed, without any expectation of recognition thereof, the unusual and important work they were called upon to do.

The despatch of the Canadian troops to South Africa, their work and stay there are matters of the past ; in connection with their return the following remarks may be of interest.

Of the clothing, ordnance, equipment, &c., taken from Canada, all the first was used and none returned to stores.

Out of the three batteries sent to Africa, only two have been brought back to Canada ; it is understood that the War Department intends to either return the remaining battery from South Africa or to replace it.

The two batteries brought back, are being overhauled and put into serviceable condition at the cartridge factory, Quebec ; the work on them will be completed early this month.

The harness and saddlery brought back will also be thoroughly overhauled.

A portion of the equipment for the two batteries has been lost on active service and otherwise ; this will be replaced from store.

The horses, and the prairie and light wagons were all sold in Africa to Ordnance Department ; for the former different prices were received—from £36 down to about £18 ; for a few a lower price was realized.

For the wagons £10 each was obtained ; for one the price was £49, or more than was paid for it here.

It is not within my province to discuss what impression, permanent or otherwise, that I may feel has been made upon our national impulses, or whether our national aspirations have been deflected into different or new channels, but no one who has not read the vast amount of correspondence that has come to the department, since September, 1899, in relation to sending troops to assist the Mother Country, can form any adequate conception of the loyalty and patriotism prevailing in every section of Canada.

It is, however, permissible for me to assert that the experience gained by so many Canadians in active service in South Africa, and by the department in connection with the work relating to the contingents has been of inestimable value.

I only express the earnest hope of all Canadians that it will never be necessary to use this experience in the field even in defence of our country ; if we avail ourselves of it in camp, in barrack life, in the organization and equipment of our troops and in the many other ways to which it may be adapted, we will have a fair recompense for all the expenditure incurred on account of the contingents.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

L. F. PINAULT, *Colonel*,
Deputy Minister of Militia and Defence.

APPENDIX A.

SPECIAL SERVICE EXPENDITURE.

From the Accountant to the Deputy Minister of Militia and Defence :

SS. <i>Sardinian</i> —transport of troops and supplies.....	\$160,453 28
SS. <i>Pomeranian</i> " " }	218,202 45
SS. <i>Laurentian</i> " " }	
SS. <i>Milwaukee</i> " "	*256,948 20
SS. <i>Montezuma</i> (condemned after having been fitted up)	60,335 02
<i>Monterey</i> —107 officers, N.C.O. and men.....	12,020 66
Railway transport of troops, horses and supplies, also cartage	108,350 59
Expenses in connection with enlisting men and maintaining them until embarkation.....	46,049 78
Purchase of horses.....	131,660 00
Clothing	290,287 17
Warlike and other stores, including guns, rifles, accoutrements, &c.....	184,427 27
Travelling expenses of officers and others.....	5,463 96
Cablegrams and telegrams.....	9,382 51
Pay of Officers and N.C.O. and men.....	440,465 31
Other expenses.....	29,780 87
Total.....	\$1,953,827 07

J. W. BORDEN,
Accountant.

March 31, 1901.

The foregoing statement shows, under the principal sub-heads, the expenditure in connection with the special service force to March 31, 1901, covering a period of about eighteen months.

Parliament, it will be remembered, voted \$2,000,000 for this service. It will require every cent of this amount to pay all claims and to make good the arms, stores, &c., supplied to the troops. Of this expenditure \$707,960, over one-third, went for transport of troops, horses and supplies in the four troopships chartered and fitted out for that purpose. Transport to ports of embarkation required over \$108,000, bringing the total of transport up to \$815,960, over two-fifths of the total expenditure. Pay of the troops and separation allowance to families of married men used up \$440,000 and will require \$10,000 more before all claims are settled.

Enlisting and maintenance of the troops to the date of embarkation cost \$46,000. About one half of the second contingent, those who went on that ss. *Milwaukee*, had to be maintained several weeks before transport could be arranged for them.

Clothing, under which head is included every article of dress worn by the soldiers, cost \$290,000, or about \$105 per man.

*\$37,118 of this amount is to be repaid by the Imperial Government for transport of Boer prisoners from Cape Town to St. Helena.

For the 1,139 horses purchased it required \$131,660. This does not include those which were transferred from the R.C.A. and the R.C.D. The purchases were made in the different districts as follows :—

Military district No. 1	32 horses	.....	\$ 3,734 00
" 2 & 3	373 "	.....	48,260 00
" 4	80 "	.....	10,595 00
" 5 & 6	44 "	.....	6,655 00
" 7	50 "	.....	6,860 00
" 8	26 "	.....	4,130 00
" 9	65 "	.....	7,782 00
" 10	57 "	.....	7,769 00
" 11	15 "	.....	1,464 00
North-west Mounted Police	396 "	.....	34,411 00

The horses in districts 2 & 3 were purchased by Col. Kitson late commandant of the R.M.C. It is therefore difficult to separate these two districts.

The horses purchased from the police were the cheapest, averaging less than \$90 each, whereas those purchased in the districts averaged from \$115 to \$160 each, the prices in No. 1 District being the lowest and in No. 8 the highest.

In war time telegraph lines and cables have to be freely used particularly where the distances are so great. This service cost the Government \$9,382.

The foregoing figures do not give a correct idea of the large amount of work that has been thrown upon the account branch by the expenditure of this appropriation of \$2,000,000. Unlike most of the other branches of the department in which there was a great deal of work for a short time, this branch during the entire eighteen months has been required to do nearly double its usual amount of work, the only addition to the staff being one junior clerk for a short time.

The additional work has been caused not only by the immense number of accounts and claims that have been audited and paid but also by reason of the branch having to perform all the duties of a pay department.

There were nearly 2,500 troops not including the Strathcona's Horse. There was assigned pay to be issued every month to families and relatives : there were separation allowances monthly to wives and children of married officers, N. C. O's. and men, there being 255 of these families ; and deferred pay to be issued to the men on their return to Canada. This latter is the difference between Imperial and Canadian rates of pay computed from the date of the soldier's arrival in South Africa to his return to Canada. As most of the men were receiving pay from various sources it was necessary to open an account with each individual. This necessitated 2,500 accounts. For the final payment on their return to Canada a special paysheet, prepared by the accountant, was used in which were entered all the details and payments in connection with each soldier's service from the date of his enlistment to date of his discharge. Every pay-sheet in connection with these final payments were prepared in the Accountant's Office in duplicate and in the case of the three largest troopships bringing soldiers home, viz :—the *Idaho*, the *Lake Champlain* and the *Roslin Castle*, carrying about 1,600 troops in all, a cheque in payment was prepared for each soldier to be handed to him as soon as his signature was obtained on the pay-sheet.

In addition to issuing pay for the Canadian Government a great deal has been issued at the request of the War Office for the Imperial Government : the last request being to issue the Special War Gratuity to all Canadian troops including Strathcona's Horse. This has been undertaken. It necessitates looking up the soldier's address, writing out receipts in duplicates and mailing them to him for his signature, the cheque being issued on the return of the receipts. There are about 2,900 of all ranks entitled to this gratuity and as they are scattered all over Canada correspondence has to be opened up with each individual.

J. W. BORDEN,
Accountant.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

APPENDIX B.

CONTINGENTS FOR SOUTH AFRICA.

From the Chief Superintendent of Militia Stores to the Deputy Minister of Militia and Defence.

The probability of a Regiment of Canadian Infantry being enrolled for service in South Africa was communicated October 13, 1899, and the possible date of sailing said to be October 31, 1899.

With the exception of the Arms and Oliver Equipment there was little in Store Charge to meet the special requirements of such a force.

A statement of articles to be provided was made out and the contractors for clothing and merchants likely to be in a position to meet the demands were communicated with.

The material for the clothing had to be made—the contractors had none on hand. Everyone concerned, however, started to work with a will and the equipment, as per the following list, was issued to the regiment. The actual date of sailing was October 30, 1899, one day within the limit given. The work was, consequently, accomplished in 14 days by the Staff of the Branch without extra help.

D. A. MACDONALD, Colonel,
Chief Supt. of Militia Stores.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

RETURN of Stores issued to the Special Service Regiment proceeding to South Africa on board Steamship *Sardinian*.

Arms.		Necessaries.	
Guns, Maxim, with fittings complete....	2	Belts, flannel	1,000
Revolvers, Colt's army.....	50	Blacking, boxes	1,000
Rifles, M.L.E. '303	1,000	Boots, ankle	3,000
Bayonets, sword.....	1,000	" canvas.....	1,000
Scabbards, sword-bayonet.....	1,000	Braces, pairs	1,000
Tubes, aiming, '303	20	Brushes—	
Accoutrements and Equipment.		Blacking	1,000
Belts, waist, for revolvers.....	50	Cloth.....	1,000
Oliver equipment sets.....	1,000	Hair.....	1,000
Slings, rifle, brown leather.....	1,000	Polishing,	1,000
Leggings, pairs	1,000	Shaving.....	1,000
Ammunition.		Caps, woollen	1,000
Cartridges—		Cards, description	1,000
S. A. ball '303 English, Mark II.....	160,600	Combs.....	1,000
S. A. blank.....	1,100	Drawers, pairs.....	2,000
For aiming tube	40,000	Forks, table.. ..	1,000
For Colt's revolver	6,000	Grease, tins.....	1,000
Instruments, Musical.		Handkerchiefs.....	2,000
Birds	16	Holdalls	1,000
Strings, bugle, green	16	Housewives.....	1,000
Camp Equipment and Tools, intrenching.		Jerseys.....	1,000
Axes, pick, helved	78	Knives, table.....	1,000
Blankets, field service.....	2,400	Knives, clasp.....	1,200
Kettles, camp.	53	Laces, boot, pairs.....	2,000
Sheets, waterproof.....	1,200	Razors and cases.....	1,000
Shovels.....	104	Soap, cakes.....	2,000
Tents, circular, complete.	80	Sponges, small.....	1,000
Valises, blanket.....	120	Spoons, table.....	1,000
Hospital Stores.		Shirts—	
Armlets, stretcher bearer	20	Woollen.....	2,000
Bottles, water, surgical.....	1	Grey flannel.....	3,000
Cots, hospital.....	30	Socks, pairs	3,000
Field dressing.....	1,000	Towels	2,000
Instruments, surgical (case).....	1	Miscellaneous.	
Shirts, cotton.....	30	Bricks, bath.....	12
Slippers, pairs	63	Dubbing, lbs.....	10
Stretchers, field service.....	8	Flannelette, yds.....	50
Syringes, hypodermic.....	2	Oil—	
Tuques	30	Rangoon	5
Clothing.		Rifle	5
Caps, field service (from England).....	1,500	Pipeclay, pieces	1,000
Trocks—		Stable Necessaries.	
Khaki.....	2,000	Bags, nose.....	12
Serge.....	2,000	Blankets, stable	12
Trowsers—		Bags, Kit, Stable.. ..	12
Khaki.....	2,740	Brushes—	
Serge	2,000	Dander	12
Great coats	976	Horse.....	12
Helmets, complete	1,000	Brooms, bass	3
Chevrons—		Buckets, stable.....	3
4 bar	2	Chains, head collar.....	12
3 "	148	Collars, head stall ..	12
2 "	140	Combs, curry.....	12
1 "	160	" mane.....	12
Buttons, small	1,960	Forks, stable.....	2
		Pegs, heel.	24
		Ropes, head.....	12
		" heel.....	36
		Rakes, iron.....	2
		Shovels, stable.....	2
		Sponges, stable.....	12

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

SECOND CONTINGENT.

Although, numerically, this contingent was but slightly in excess of the first, about one-fourth larger, much greater difficulty was experienced in making issues, due to the following causes:—

1. Two arms of the service were represented, consequently, different kinds of clothing had to be provided.

2. The many places at which enrolment was made and to which clothing and necessaries had to be forwarded previous to concentration.

3. The fact that nearly everything that was provided passed through the Store Branch.

4. The greater distance of the port of embarkation from head-quarters.

The Artillery was provided with the regulation serge clothing for that arm. The khaki frocks were of special pattern.

The frocks for the Mounted Rifles, both serge and khaki, were of an entirely new pattern and had to be specially made. The serge was blue, with white facings, edged with dark crimson braid, a pad was made diagonally on the back, from shoulder to waist for the rifle to rest against when carried slung. The uniform was completed with pantaloons of both materials, serge and khaki, cowboy hats, putties and ankle boots.

One suit of serge clothing and all the articles of regimental necessaries for the men of the first battalion and the three batteries of artillery were forwarded to the places of enrolment, the remaining articles were issued at Halifax.

The second battalion Mounted Rifles, 371 of all ranks, were armed, equipped and clothed at Halifax, in less than two days after its arrival at the station. No easy task, considering the many other duties which had to be carried on at the same time by a very limited staff. The Officer commanding, Lt.-Colonel Herchmer, expressed his great satisfaction not only with regard to the quick delivery made, but, also, as to the quality of the articles issued.

The Mounted Rifles were armed with Lee-Enfield Rifles, Sword-bayonets and revolvers, and were equipped with bandoliers for carrying ammunition, and with waist-belts of the Oliver equipment pattern for carrying the revolver and sword-bayonet.

The contingent was carried to destination on board three steamers, the *Pomeranian*, the *Laurentian*, and the *Milwaukee*. Each steamer had to be supplied with its quota of stores peculiar to the arm of the service and number of men who embarked on it.

A detail of all stores issued to the troops and placed on board the steamers is given below.

D. A. MACDONALD, *Colonel,*
Chief Supt. of Military Stores.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

RETURN of Issues made from Stores to the 2nd Contingent, consisting of Two Battalions
Mounted Rifles and Three Batteries of Artillery.

Clothing.		Accoutrements.	
Frocks—		Bandoliers.....	730
Serge.....	2,700	Cases, revolver.....	760
Khaki.....	2,675	Frogs, sword, bayonet.....	900
Trousers, serge.....	2,664	Haversacks.....	1,275
Pantaloon—		Knots, sword, cavalry.....	113
Serge.....	1,334	Lanyards, revolver.....	960
Khaki.....	2,675	Pouches.....	
Caps, field service.....	1,275	Ammunition, revolver.....	760
Chicks.....	1,259	" Oliver equip.....	36
Coats, waterproof.....	710	Belts—	
Hats, cow-boy.....	1,340	Waist, cavalry.....	113
		" Oliver equip.....	1,100
		Bottles, water, with straps.....	1,350
		Mess-tins, cavalry ".....	1,000
Necessaries.		Ammunition.	
Bags, kit, knives.....	1,275	Cartridges—	
Belts, flannel.....	1,275	12-pr., B. L. gun, Cordite, 12 $\frac{7}{16}$ ozs....	9,000
Blacking, boxes.....	1,275	S. A., '303.....	575,500
Boots, ankle, pairs.....	3,700	Revolver.....	75,000
Braces, pairs.....	1,275	Aiming tubes.....	75,000
Brushes—		Fuzes, time and percussion.....	9,450
Blacking.....	1,275	Shells, Shrapnel, B.L., 12-pr.....	8,550
Button.....	1,275	Shot, case, ".....	450
Cloth.....	1,275	Tubes, friction, T.....	10,080
Hair.....	1,275		
Polishing.....	1,275		
Shaving.....	1,275		
Brasses, button.....	1,275		
Combs—			
Large.....	1,275		
Small.....	1,275		
Forks, table.....	1,275		
Gloves, woollen, pairs.....	1,275		
Grease, tins.....	1,275		
Handkerchiefs.....	2,550		
Holdalls.....	1,275		
Housewives.....	1,275		
Jerseys.....	1,275		
Knives—			
Table.....	1,275		
Clasp.....	1,000		
Laces, boot, prs., spare.....	4,000		
Putties, prs.—			
Black.....	1,300		
Khaki.....	2,600		
Razors and cases.....	1,275		
Shoes, canvas, prs.....	1,275		
Soap, cakes.....	1,275		
Spurs, jack, prs.....	1,000		
Specimens, table.....	1,275		
Shirts—			
Grey, flannel.....	3,825		
Knitted.....	2,550		
Socks, prs.....	3,825		
Towels.....	2,550		
Tippets.....	1,275		
Drawers, prs.....	2,550		
Arms.		Musical Instruments.	
Rifle, Lee-Enfield.....	722	Bugles with mouthpieces.....	11
Bayonets, sword, L.-E.....	722	Trumpets.....	7
Scabbards.....	722	Mouthpieces—	
Bayonets, sword, Snider.....	186	Spare, bugle.....	10
Scabbards ".....	186	" trumpet.....	8
Bottles, oil.....	722	Strings, green.....	18
Protectors, sight.....	722		
Pull-through.....	722		
Swords, cavalry.....	113		
Scabbards, sword, cavalry.....	113		
Revolvers, Colts.....	960		
		Miscellaneous.	
		Axes, handled—	
		Felling.....	21
		Pick.....	37
		Safety.....	60
		Brushes, water, carriage.....	68
		Blankets.....	6,311
		Books and forms, cases of.....	3
		Beeswax, lbs.....	371

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

RETURN of Issues made from Stores to the 2nd Contingent, &c.—*Continued.*

Miscellaneous— <i>Con.</i>		Miscellaneous— <i>Con.</i>	
Bathbricks	60	Tallow, Russian, lbs.....	50
Buckets, with straps, rifle.....	705	Tow, coarse, lbs.....	20
" leather, cavalry	20	Tailor's outfit	
Bags, saddle	490	Trimnings	3
Clipping machines, with cranks	4	Serge and khaki	3
Cords, forage	1,161	Charcoal, bags of.....	3
Covers, saddle, waterproof.	1,128	Tents, circular	150
Candles, boxes	12	Tubes, aiming	18
Chests, tool, complete—		Brushes, cleaning	30
3F.....	2	Targets, paper, boxes of.....	3
5A	2	Mantlets and fittings.....	9
7.....	2	Tables, folding.....	6
Shoemakers.....	3	Valises, artillery	140
Armourers.....	1	" cavalry, with straps, baggage ..	310
Butchers	3	Wagons, forage	3
Chairs, folding.....	12	" store, artillery.....	3
Cutters, wire	61	Wagons, prairie, heavy.....	24
Cloths, sponge	400	" " light.....	14
Dubbing, lbs.....	450	Harness, heavy, sets	18
Forks, hay.....	72	" light	14
Flannellette, yds.....	1,762	Fittings, case of.....	6
Flags, signalling, with poles	32	Harness, spare parts, sets.....	1
Poles, spare.....	8	Wallets, veterinary.....	3
Grease, Field's, lubricating, lbs	1,166	Waste, bales of	3
" anti-corrosive, lbs.....	75	Clothing, hospital—	
Grindstones—		Tunics.....	40
In frame	3	Gowns	50
In case	3	Vests.....	30
General service	2	Trousers.....	30
Handcuffs, pairs.....	13	Slippers, pairs	30
Hooks, reaping	28	Night-shirts.....	40
Irons, branding, sets.....	8	Armlets, stretcher bearer.....	50
Kettles, camp.....	100	Badges, maple leaf, large	1,200
Lanterns, folding	26	" " small, black.....	5,000
Leather, rolls of.....	3	" " " gilding metal.....	4,000
Lines, hambro	9	Letters, C.M.R., each	2,300
Mallets, wood—		Figures, 1	600
Large.....	24	" 2	600
Small	30	Letters, C.D.E., each	700
Marline, skeins	18	Chevrons	
Mauls	20	Red on white—	
Nets, forage	1,100	3 bar	100
Oats, rolled, boxes	30	2 "	100
Oil, gallons—		Yellow on red—	
Neatsfoot.....	20	4 bar	20
Rangoon	36	3 "	60
Rape or sweet.....	36	2 "	60
Rifle.....	36	1 "	30
Pegs, picketting	1,470	Rifle	
Posts, picket, 2 ft. 6 in	145	3 bar	100
Petrolatum, lbs.....	275	2 "	100
Packsaddlery, sets.....	4	Figures, small stamping, sets..	5
Ropes—		(Other stores were taken from regi-	
Head.....	1,100	mental headquarters by the units and	
Heel	1,455	detachments.)	
Picketting	1,065	Artillery stores	
Reflectors, mirror	3	Axle-trees, 2nd class	3
Stencils, sets	7	Bolts, elevating.....	16
Sacks, corn	74	" stop.....	16
Straps, valise	280	Bracket, sight, telescopic	1
Sponges, small	150	Couples, trace.....	48
Saddlers' repairs, boxes of..	6	Cordage, tarred, $\frac{3}{4}$ -in., fms.....	168
Shovels	62	Chains, drag, shoe	1
Spades	62	Capsquares, left	1
Shoes, horse.....	1,500	" right	1
" nails for, lbs	450	Hammers, rivetting	1
Straps, bed	1,270	Keys, capsquare, No. 16 and 17, each.	1
Sockets, whip.....	36	Locks, spring, ammunition box	9
Soap, hard, bars	1,500	Lashings, 15-ft.....	24
" saddle, lbs.....	500	" 30-ft.....	8
Stationery, boxes	3	Locks, pad, small	1
Scissors, trimming.....	42	Pins, taper, gear, elevating	18
Sheets, waterproof	1,225	Poles, draught	6

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

RETURN of Issues made from Stores to the 2nd Contingent, &c.—*Continued.*

Miscellaneous— <i>Con.</i>		Miscellaneous— <i>Con.</i>	
Artillery stores— <i>Con.</i>		Artillery stores— <i>Con.</i>	
Pins, linch, 2nd class	17	Springs— <i>Con.</i>	
" keep, bolt, elevating	16	Steel retaining, fore-sight	16
" " hinge ring, carrier...	4	Swingletrees, No. 10.....	10
Pins,	12	Stones, rub	1
Springs,	15	Washers, drag.....	1
Springs		(The above in addition to the stores in	
Catch, vent, retaining axial	6	charge of the batteries and transfers made	
Clip, vent, retaining, carrier ring...	6	by the Military Branch without refer-	
Steel catch.....	16	ence to Store Branch.)	

STRATHCONA HORSE.

The Right Honourable Lord Strathcona having offered to raise a Regiment of Mounted Rifles in Canada for service in South Africa, and his patriotic offer having been accepted by Her late Most Gracious Majesty, Queen Victoria, the duty of supplying the necessary equipment was placed in the hands of the Store Branch.

The men were concentrated in Ottawa, and were accommodated in the Central Canada Exhibition Association Buildings, Lansdowne Park.

The equipment supplied differed but slightly from that issued to the Canadian Mounted Rifles, which formed part of the second Contingent. One pair of long boots, with laced insteps, made of brown leather by the Slater Company of Montreal, was issued instead of one pair of ankle boots and the jack spurs were provided with brown leather straps instead of black.

Revolvers, clothing and necessaries were issued in Ottawa. The rifles and other supplies were sent on board the steamer at Halifax.

The expenses of the outfit was borne by Lord Strathcona, who expressed his entire satisfaction as to its completeness, &c.

D. A. MACDONALD, *Colonel,*
Chief Supt. of Military Stores.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

STATEMENT of Clothing, Equipment, &c., of the 'Strathcona Horse,' issued through the Militia Department.

Saddles and bridles	450	40 doz. saddle soap, 25 lbs.	120
Bags, saddle, wallets.	450	Saddle soap, 2 casks	2
Camp tables.	6	3 chests, drugs, &c.	3
" stools.	12	Morris tube outfits.	4
Soap, Comfort, boxes.	15	Saddlers' chest.	1
Candles, boxes	3	Shoemakers' tools, box.	1
Lanterns, folding.	44	Razor straps, doz	14
Swivels for rifles.	520	" "	1
Bed-straps	540	Cap soles "	20
Nose-bags	550	Left soles "	20
Rope shanks.	550	Blacksmith aprons.	7
Halters, head.	550	Saddle bags	450
Surcingles.	550	Wagons and spare parts.	8
Mail bags	3	" "	6
Straps, spur, prs.	262	Water carts.	4
Kit-bags.	512	Orndorff bandoliers for cartridges.	512
Grindstones, complete.	3	Letters, brass, "S," "H"	812
Pick-axes.	12	Spoons	512
" handles	12	Axes, safety.	30
Knives		Cartridges for revolvers, rds.	40,000
Large	2	Razors, in case.	512
Steels.	1	Combs, curry.	550
Cleavers.	1	Knives and forks.	512
Skinning.	1	Revolvers	540
Butchers, small.	5	Combs, mane	550
Meat saws	1	Plyers, (Wire cutter)	100
Chop knives.	1	Rubber coats.	512
Meat hooks.	12	" sheets.	540
Camp kettles.	75	Saddle covers, W. P.	450
Wheelbarrows.	10	Stamps	15
Hay, tons	87 ³ / ₄	Smith's coal, in bags.	17
Straw, tons.	12 ³ / ₄	Handcuffs	2
Oats, bushels.	701	Boots, prs	512
Bags	210	Tan porpoise laces	600
Halter ropes	500	Black "	600
Head ropes.	500	Canvas shoes.	512
Buckets, rifle.	512	Spare laces, shoemaker's chest	500
Cases, revolver	540	Hair brushes	512
Waist belt straps.	512	Polishing brushes	512
Pouches, ammunition.	540	Blacking "	512
Straps, spur, pairs	250	Cloth "	512
Heel-ropes.	600	Shaving "	512
Lanyards.	540	Horse "	550
Bags, stable, kit	550	Button "	512
Holdalls	512	Boots, ankle, prs.	512
Waterproof, large, kit bags	512	Horse blankets.	550
Flags—		Shirts, knitted	1,024
2 x 2	15	Drawers, "	1,024
3 x 3	16	Hats, Cowboy	500
Poles.	8	Leather strings and eyelets	500
Horse shoes, kegs	10	Tuques	512
" nails, boxes	7	Sacks, corn	12
Carpenters' tools, chest	1	Red handkerchiefs.	1,100
Blacking, tins.	512	Gloves.	504
Grease, tins	512	"	8
Combs		Set horse hammocks and halters	20
Large.	512	Braces	512
Small.	512	Housewives.	512
Towels.	1,024	Axes, felling.	12
Jerseys.	512	Brasses button	512
Soap, cakes.	512	Bottles, water and straps.	512
Shirts, grey flannel.	1,536	Blankets, grey	2,160
Socks, pairs	2,048	Bugles, with mouth-pieces	7
Bands, health.	1,024	Brooms, bass.	25
Tailors' tools and trimming chest.	1	Bayonet swords.	520
Plaid service caps.	24	Bottles, oil	520
Stationery for chest SS.	1	Box wood ammunition.	524
" " barracks.	1	Bees wax	25
Identification cards.	2,200	Bath bricks.	6
Horse clipping machines.	3	Caps, field service.	512
Harness for heavy wagon, sets.	16	Cloaks, without cape	512
Concord harness.	2	Chin straps	712
Soldiers belts and cartridge holders.	540	Chevrons	405
Frogs, bayonet.	540	Cartridges, S.A., '303.	366,400

Clothing, &c., issued to 'Strathcona Horse.'—Continued.

Cartridges, aiming tubes	25,000	Petrolatum, lbs.	25
Cords forage	548	Rope pickets, 2 ft. 6 in.	50
Clasp knives and lanyards	512	Pegs, picketting	700
Dressing mud	100	Protectors, sight	520
Frocks, khaki	1,080	Pull-throughs	520
.....	1,080	Putties, black	512
.....	100	..... brown	512
Field panniers, (pair)	1	Pantaloons, khaki	1,080
..... bearer armlets	12	..... serge	1,080
.....	4	Ropes, picketting	700
Grease, field lubricating, tins	250	Rifles, Lee-Enfield	520
Haversacks	512	Sponges, water	550
Hoofpickers	550	Strings, lignin	7
Leather, (1 side), lbs	64	Scabbard, sword bayonets	520
Mess tins, Cavly. and straps	512	Slings, rifle	512
Mouthpieces, bugles	7	Shovels	12
Mauls, (wood)	62	Spades	12
Mallets, large	24	Spurs, pairs	512
..... small	70	Trousers, serge	540
Mantlets, (iron targets on S.S.)	3	Tents, circular	75
Nets, forage	548	Waste, bale	1
Oil, neatsfoot, gall	5	Whitman spring bits	1,000
..... rifle	10	..... screws	500
..... 4000	10	Armourers' chest tools	1

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Clothing, Necessaries, &c., issued to one officer and fifty men of the 'Stathcona Horse.'

Miscellaneous.		Miscellaneous—Con.	
Bags, kit, small, white.....	51	Knives and forks.....	50
" large, w.p.	51	" clasp, with lanyards.....	50
" stable	51	Lanyards, revolver	51
" nose	51	Letters, brass, "S.".....	148
Bed-straps	51	" "H."	148
Blacking, tins.....	50	Laces, pairs.....	100
Bands, health.....	100	Mess tins, with straps.....	50
Belts, waist.....	51	Protectors, sight.....	50
Bandoliers	50	Puli-throughs.....	50
Boots, long.....	50	Pantaloon, serge.....	102
" ankle.....	50	Putties, khaki.....	51
Blankets, gray.....	200	" black	51
" horse	50	Pouches, ammunition.....	51
Braces.....	50	Pantaloon, khaki.....	102
Bottles, oil.....	50	Razors in cases.....	50
" water with straps.. ..	51	Rifles, Lee-Enfield.....	50
Bayonets, sword.....	50	" Swivels.....	50
Brasses, button	50	" Buckets.....	50
Brushes -		Revolvers, Colts.....	51
Blacking.....	50	" Holders.....	51
Brass	50	Ropes, picketting	51
Cloth.....	50	" head.....	51
Hair	50	" heel.....	51
Horse	50	Saddles, &c.....	51
Polishing.....	50	" bags (wallets).....	51
Shaving.....	50	" covers, w.p.....	50
Cartridges, revolver, rounds.....	5,000	Scabbards, bayonet, sword.....	50
Combs		Slings, rifles.....	50
Curry.....	50	Stars, worsted.....	1
Mane.....	50	Shirts, grey, flannel.....	140
Large.....	50	" knitted.....	100
Small	50	Socks, prs.....	200
Coats, waterproof	50	Soap (cakes).....	50
Cloaks, without cape.....	50	Sweaters.....	50
Caps, field service.....	50	Shoes, canvas.....	50
Chevrons	18	Spoons.....	50
Cords, forage.....	51	Sheets, waterproof.....	51
Crowns, worsted.....	8	Spurs.....	50
Drawers, knitted.....	100	" (re-strapping).....	51
Frogs (sword bayonet).....	50	Stamps (stencils), set.....	1
Frocks, serge.....	100	Straps, chin.....	50
" khaki	102	" razor	50
Field dressing.....	51	Strings, trumpet	1
Forage nets.....	51	Sponges, horse.....	50
Grease tins.....	50	Straps, for rifle.....	50
Hats (pony).....	50	Towels.....	100
Holdalls.....	50	Tuques	50
Handkerchiefs	150	Trumpets.....	1
Housewives.....	50	Trousers, serge, prs.....	51
Haversacks.....	51		

APPENDIX C

FROM THE CHIEF ENGINEER MILITIA AND DEFENCE, ON THE FITTING UP OF TRANSPORTS FOR THE CANADIAN CONTINGENTS FOR SOUTH AFRICA, 1899-1900.

The Deputy Minister
Militia and Defence.

I beg to report as follows :—

The first Canadian Contingent for South Africa consisted of a battalion of infantry for which transport was provided by the Allan Line steamship *Sardinian*.

The second Canadian Contingent consisted of two battalions of Mounted Rifles, and a Brigade Division of Field Artillery, for which transport was provided by the Allan Line steamships *Laurentian*, and *Pomeranian*, and the Elder Dempster Co., steamship *Milwaukee*, which was substituted for the Steamship *Monterey* rejected for the reason that typhoid fever broke out among the crew in Halifax, N.S.

The Strathcona's Horse consisted of a regiment of Mounted Infantry, raised in Canada, for which transport was provided on the Elder Dempster Company's steamship *Monterey*.

The transport *Sardinian* was fitted up at Montreal and Quebec in about two weeks for the accommodation of 41 officers, 978 non-commissioned officers and men, and 7 horses.

The officers, and non-commissioned officers were quartered in staterooms, with bath rooms, and a separate mess room for each, all on the main deck.

The men were quartered half in bunks and half in hammocks, and were divided into messes with a table for each mess. The tables were made to unship and stow away when necessary to clear the deck. The men's tables and hammocks were on the main deck, and the men's bunks on the steerage deck.

A galley, and bake house, with steel range, bake ovens and steam cookers were installed on the spar deck, together with a canteen. A large ice room was constructed on this ship.

Latrines and wash houses were also built on the same deck, for the men.

Two miniature rifle ranges, and two revolver ranges were erected on the spar deck for practice in fine weather. A kit and equipment room, baggage room, helmet room, guard room and prison, and rifle racks were built to give accommodation for each man embarked.

A hospital and dispensary was constructed and fitted with berths, etc.

A magazine for 160,000 for small arm ammunition was built below two decks. Stalls for the horses were erected on the spar deck. The life boat accommodation necessary for the number of troops on board, and proper fire hose and appliances were supplied and fitted up. Awnings were made and placed on board for use in the tropics, and air scoops and windsails provided for ventilation. Electric lights and fans were installed, throughout the ship.

The whole ship both inside and outside was painted, and all tables, &c., properly numbered.

The transport was handed over for the embarkation of troops on October 30, 1899.

The transports *Laurentian* and *Pomeranian* were fitted up at Halifax, N.S., in about three weeks each, sailing on January 21 and 27, 1900, respectively.

The transports *Milwaukee* and *Monterey* were also fitted up at Halifax in less than three weeks each, sailing on February 21 and March 17, 1900, respectively.

The *Laurentian* and *Pomeranian* were passenger and freight ships, and small changes only had to be made to accommodate the officers. A mess room had to be constructed on both ships for the non-commissioned officers, and staterooms on the *Pomeranian*.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

The horses were accommodated in stalls patterned on the admiralty regulation stall, on the after part of the *Laurentian* and the forward part of the *Pomeranian*.

The *Milwaukee* and the *Monterey* were freight boats with bare iron decks from end to end, which had to be entirely floored with wood, and had only accommodation for a few cabin passengers.

New staterooms had to be built for the officers, non-commissioned officers and two large saloon mess rooms for same on each ship.

The horses were accommodated on the after part of the *Milwaukee* and on the whole main deck of the *Monterey*. A percentage of spare and large stalls and loose boxes were provided for the horses.

A pharmacy was built on each ship for the veterinary surgeon. A canvas horse hammock was provided for each horse for use in rough weather. The ordinary stall was two by six feet, inside measurements, with side bales, breast board and haunch board. Battens were placed on the floor to give the horses a footing. Detachable feeding troughs were also provided, and large puncheons were placed on the decks for water. Sawdust was spread under the horses' feet, and a percentage of cocoa mats were provided. Horse boxes were made for embarking and disembarking horses when necessary.

The men were all berthed in hammocks and were arranged in messes with a mess table, made to unship and stow away, for each mess.

Accoutrement hooks were provided on the mess decks, and bread rooms and issuing rooms built. Kit boxes were put up for each man's kit bag. Baggage rooms, guard rooms, prisons, saddle and harness rooms, store rooms, hospitals and dispensaries were built and fitted up.

A large galley and bake house, fitted with steel ranges, bake ovens and steam cookers were installed in the *Milwaukee* and *Monterey*, and a large ice room lined with nine inches of sawdust and lead, was put up in each ship except the *Monterey*, which was fitted with a refrigerating plant.

Electric lighting and fans were installed. Water closets and bathrooms for the officers and n.c.o's. were provided, and large canvas baths for the men. Latrines, wash houses and canteens were put up for the men and awnings were made for use in the tropics.

Miniature rifle ranges and revolver ranges were built. Sheep pens for live sheep to supplement the dead meat were built. Air scoops, fans and windsails were supplied on each ship.

Sufficient life boat accommodation was provided and fitted according to the admiralty regulations. Fire hose and appliances were also put on board.

The ships and fitting were painted inside and outside, and designation and number boards provided for each transport.

The second contingent transports were turned over for the embarkation of troops as follows:—*Laurentian*, January 21, 1900; *Pomeranian*, January 27, 1900; *Milwaukee*, February 21, 1900; and *Monterey*, March 16, 1900.

I attach herewith a plan of the SS. *Monterey* as an example of how the transports were fitted.

PAUL WETHERBE, *Capt.*,
Chief Engineer, M. & D.

PART II.

REPORT

OF THE

MAJOR GENERAL

ON THE

SOUTH AFRICAN CONTINGENTS.

The Honourable

The Minister of Militia and Defence.

SIR,—I have the honour to submit, as a supplement to the annual report, the reports of the officers commanding the corps sent from Canada to South Africa, to aid in the war between the Mother Country on the one side and the Transvaal and the Orange Free State on the other.

In submitting these reports, I think the occasion an opportune one to make a resumé of the work of organizing the several contingents so far as the military branch was concerned, and it will, I feel sure, add interest to the subject if I commence with the date of the first despatch from the colonial office intimating that Canadian troops would be accepted for service in South Africa.

1st CONTINGENT.

On October 3, 1899, the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies sent the following telegram to His Excellency the Governor General :—

“Secretary of State for War and Commander-in-Chief desire to express high appreciation of signal exhibition of patriotic spirit of people of Canada shown by offers to serve in South Africa, and to furnish following information to assist organization of force offered into units suitable for military requirements. Firstly, units should consist of about 125 men ; secondly, may be infantry, mounted infantry, or cavalry ; in view of numbers already available infantry most, cavalry least, serviceable ; thirdly, all should be armed with .303 rifles or carbines, which can be supplied by Imperial Government if necessary : fourthly, all must provide own equipment, and mounted troops own horses ; fifthly, not more than one captain and three subalterns each unit. Whole force may be commanded by officer not higher than major. In considering numbers which can be employed, Secretary of State for War guided by nature of offers, by desire that each colony should be fairly represented, and limits necessary if force is to be fully utilized by available staff as integral portion of Imperial forces ; would gladly accept four units. Conditions as follows : Troops to be disembarked at port of landing South Africa fully equipped at cost of Colonial Government or volunteers. From date of disembarkation Imperial Government will provide pay at Imperial rates, supplies and ammunition, and will defray expenses of transport back to Canada, and pay wound pensions and compassionate allowances at Imperial rates. Troops to embark not later than October 31, proceeding direct to Cape Town for orders. Inform accordingly all who have offered to raise volunteers.”

It may be interesting to note that 35 minutes before the despatch of this telegram a similar message was sent to the Governors of South Australia, New South Wales and Victoria, which was preceded, by a few moments only, by telegrams to the Lieut. Governor of Queensland and the Governor of New Zealand to much the same effect.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

On October 13, His Excellency the Governor General sent the following reply to Mr. Chamberlain :—

“ Much pleasure in telling you that my Government offers 1,000 infantry on organization proposed in your telegram of October 3.”

And on October 16, His Excellency received an acknowledgment in the following words :—

“ Her Majesty's Government have received with much pleasure your telegram of October 13, conveying Canada's generous offer of 1,000 troops, which they gratefully accept.”

On October 14, His Excellency approved the following report of the Privy Council :

“ The Committee of the Privy Council have had under consideration a despatch, dated October 3, 1899, from the Right Honourable Mr. Chamberlain.

“ The Right Honourable Sir Wilfrid Laurier, to whom the said despatch was referred, observes that the Colonial Secretary, in answer to the offers which have been sent to him from different parts of Canada expressing the willingness and anxiety of Canadians to serve Her Majesty's Government in the war which for a long time has been threatening with the Transvaal Republic and which, unfortunately, has actually commenced, enunciates the conditions under which such offers may be accepted by the Imperial authorities. Those conditions may be practically summed in the statement that a certain number of volunteers by units of 125 men, with a few officers, will be accepted to serve in the British army now operating in South Africa, the moment they reach the coast, provided the expenses of their equipment and transportation to South Africa are defrayed either by themselves or by the Colonial Government.

“ The Prime Minister, in view of the well known desire of a great many Canadians who are ready to take service under such conditions, is of opinion that the moderate expenditure which would thus be involved for the equipment and transportation of such volunteers may readily be undertaken by the Government of Canada without summoning Parliament, especially as such an expenditure under such circumstances cannot be regarded as a departure from the well known principles of constitutional government and colonial practice, nor construed as a precedent for future action.

“ Already under similar conditions, New Zealand has sent two companies, Queensland is about to send 250 men, and West Australia and Tasmania are sending 125 men each.

“ The Prime Minister, therefore recommends that out of the stores now available in the Militia Department, the Government undertake to equip a certain number of volunteers, not to exceed 1,000 men, and to provide for their transportation from this country to South Africa, and that the Minister of Militia make all necessary arrangements to the above effect.

“ The Committee advise that your Excellency be moved to forward a certified copy of this Minute to the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies.

“ All of which is respectfully submitted for Your Excellency's approval.

JOHN J. MCGEE,

Clerk of the Privy Council.

A Copy of this Minute of Council was transmitted by His Excellency to Mr. Chamberlain, who on November 15, acknowledged the receipt as follows :—

“ MY LORD :

“ I received from you on the 2nd instant a copy of an Approved Minute of the Dominion Privy Council, dated 14th October, 1899, in which your Ministers authorized the equipment and despatch of 1,000 volunteers for service with the Imperial troops in South Africa.”

“ The great enthusiasm and the general eagerness to take an active part in a military expedition, which has unfortunately been found necessary for the maintenance of British rights and interests in South Africa, have afforded much gratification to Her Majesty's Government and the people of this country. The desire thus exhibited to share in the risks and burdens of Empire has been welcomed, not only as a proof of the staunch loyalty of the Dominion, and of its sympathy with the policy pursued by Her

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Majesty's Government in South Africa, but also as an expression of that growing feeling of the unity and solidarity of the Empire which has marked the relations of the Mother Country with the colonies during recent years. The thanks of Her Majesty's Government are specially due to your Ministers for the cordial manner in which they have undertaken and carried through the work of organizing and equipping the Canadian Contingent."

Mr. Chamberlain's despatch of October 3, required that the troops should embark for Cape Town not later than October 31. The decision to send troops was reached on the evening of October 13, thus leaving only 18 days to organize, equip and move the force to point of embarkation.

Major General E. T. H. Hutton, C. B., who was then in Command of the Militia, was in British Columbia, and, in the absence of Colonel the Honourable M. Aylmer, Adjutant General, who was in England, the work of organizing the contingent devolved upon Colonel Hubert Foster, Quarter Master General, the senior officer at Head Quarters.

RECRUITING.

On October 14, orders were issued to all concerned notifying them that the enrolment of 1,000 men in 8 Companies of Infantry had been authorized, and stating the conditions under which men would be accepted.

The following places were decided upon as recruiting centres, viz.:

In British Columbia—Victoria and Vancouver.

Manitoba—Winnipeg.

Ontario—London, Toronto, Ottawa and Kingston.

Quebec—Montreal and Quebec.

New Brunswick—St. John.

Nova Scotia—Halifax.

Prince Edward Island—Charlottetown.

The men were all enrolled as privates. The agreement they were required to sign was as follows:—

OATH TO BE TAKEN IN THE PRESENCE OF THE ATTESTING OFFICER.

I,
swear that I will well and truly serve our Sovereign Lady The Queen in the Canadian Contingent for Active Service, until lawfully discharged, and that I will resist Her Majesty's enemies, and cause Her Majesty's peace to be kept on land and at sea, and that I will in all matters appertaining to my service faithfully discharge my duty, according to law. So help me God.

I,
hereby declare that I am willing to serve wherever Her Majesty The Queen may direct in the Canadian Contingent for Active Service under the provision of the Militia Act of Canada so far as it applies, under the Queen's Regulations and Orders for the Army and the Army Act, for a term of six months, or one year if required, or until sooner lawfully discharged or dismissed, at the rate of pay fixed for the Permanent Corps of Canada, until landed in South Africa, and after disembarkation to serve in Her Majesty's Regular Forces, at the rates of pay fixed by the Royal Warrant for the pay of the British Army.

Signed Volunteer.

..... Attesting Officer.

Place

Date

COMPANIES DESIGNATED.

On October 20, the companies were designated as follows :—

"A"	Company, raised in British Columbia and Manitoba.
"B"	" " at London.
"C"	" " at Toronto.
"D"	" " at Ottawa and Kingston.
"E"	" " at Montreal.
"F"	" " at Quebec.
"G"	" " in New Brunswick and P. E. Island.
"H"	" " in Nova Scotia.

CONCENTRATION AT QUEBEC.

On October 23, orders were issued for the movement of the companies to Quebec, the point of concentration, where several days would be required to clothe and equip them. The British Columbia half of "A" Company left for Quebec the same day.

FORMED INTO A REGIMENT.

On October 18, His Excellency telegraphed Mr. Chamberlain offering a Regiment of Infantry instead of eight independent companies, as follows :—

"After full consideration my Ministers have decided to offer a regiment of infantry, 1,000 strong, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Otter.

My Ministers hope that Canadian contingent will be kept together as much as possible, but realize that this must be left to discretion of War Office and Commander-in-Chief."

On October 23, Mr. Chamberlain replied as follows :—

"Referring to your telegram of October 18, no objection to proposed organization of force, provided each Battalion of Infantry commanded by Major and only one Lieut. Colonel appointed to command whole. Please communicate substance of cypher telegram of October 16 to your Ministers."

By October 27, the Regiment, which received the designation 2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, was formed and the officers gazetted :

ESTABLISHMENT.

The authorized establishment was as follows :—

Lieutenant-Colonel	1
Second in command	1
Major	1
Captains	10
Lieutenants	24
Adjutant	1
Quarter Master	1
Medical Officers	2
Total officers	41
Regimental Sergeant-Major	1
" Quartermaster Sergeant	1
Staff Sergeants	8
Colour Sergeants	8
Sergeants	32
Total Sergeants of Regimental Staff and Sergeants	50

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Corporals	40
Drummers or Buglers	16
Privates	872
<hr/>	
Total rank and file	912
<hr/>	
Total all ranks	1019
<hr/>	
Horses—Officers	7

OFFICERS.

The officers selected for appointment from among the many applicants were as follows :—

To Command :—

Lieut.-Colonel W. D. Otter, Canadian Staff, A.D.C. to His Excellency the Governor General.

To be Major and Second in Command :—

Lieut.-Colonel L. Buchan, R.C.R.I.

To be Major :—

Lieut.-Colonel O. C. C. Pelletier, Canadian Staff.

To be Captains :—

Major H. M. Arnold, 90th Battalion.

“ W. A. Weeks, Charlottetown Engineers.

“ D. Stuart, 26th Battalion.

“ S. M. Rogers, 43rd Battalion.

“ J. E. Peltier, 65th Battalion.

Captain H. B. Stairs, 66th Battalion.

“ R. K. Barker, 2nd Battalion.

“ C. K. Fraser, 53rd Battalion.

To be Lieutenants :—

Captain H. A. Panet, Royal Canadian Artillery.

“ H. E. Burstall, “ “

“ A. H. Macdonell, Royal Canadian Regiment.

“ M. G. Blanchard, 5th Regiment, C.A.

“ J. H. C. Oglivy, Royal Canadian Artillery.

“ W. T. Lawless, The Governor General's Foot Guards.

“ F. C. Jones, 3rd Regiment, C.A.

“ A. E. Hodgins, Nelson Rifle Co.

“ J. M. Ross, 22nd Battalion.

“ J. C. Mason, 10th Battalion.

Lieutenant C. J. Armstrong, 5th Battalion.

“ A. E. Swift, 8th Battalion.

“ R. B. Willis, 66th Battation.

“ W. R. Marshall, 13th Battalion.

“ J. H. Kaye, Royal Canadian Regiment.

“ L. Leduc, “ “

“ C. S. Wilkie, 10th Battalion.

“ A. C. Caldwell, Reserve of Officers.

“ S. P. Layborn, Royal Canadian Regiment.

“ A. Laurie, 1st Battalion.

“ E. A. Pelletier, 55th Battalion.

“ R. G. Stewart, 43rd Battalion.

“ F. D. Lafferty, Royal Canadian Artillery.

2nd Lieutenant J. C. Oland, 63rd Battalion.

“ “ R. H. M. Temple, 48th Battalion.

“ “ C. W. W. McLean, 8th Hussars.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Machine Gun Section : Lieutenant and Captain A. C. Bell, Scots Guards, A.D.C. to the Major General Commanding the Canadian Militia.

To be Adjutant :—

Major J. C. MacDougall, Royal Canadian Regiment.

To be Quartermaster :—

Captain and Brevet Major S. J. A. Denison, Royal Canadian Regiment.

To be Medical Officers :—

Surgeon Major C. W. Wilson, 3rd Field Battery C.A.

“ “ E. Fiset, 89th Battalion.

To be attached for Staff duty :—

Major L. G. Drummond, Scots Guards, Military Secretary to His Excellency the Governor General.

Officers were posted to Companies as follows :—

“ A ” COMPANY.

Capt. H. M. Arnold,
Lieut. M. G. Blanchard,
“ A. E. Hodgins,
“ S. P. Layborn,

“ B ” COMPANY.

Capt. D. Stuart,
Lieut. J. M. Ross,
“ J. C. Mason,
“ R. H. M. Temple.

“ C ” COMPANY.

Capt. R. K. Barker,
Lieut. W. R. Marshall,
“ C. S. Wilkie,
“ F. D. Lafferty,

“ D ” COMPANY.

Capt. S. M. Rogers,
Lieut. W. T. Lawless,
“ R. G. Stewart,
“ A. C. Caldwell.

“ E ” COMPANY.

Capt. C. K. Fraser.
Lieut. A. E. Swift.
“ A. Laurie.
“ C. J. Armstrong.

“ F ” COMPANY.

Capt. J. E. Peltier.
Lieut. H. A. Panet.
“ L. Leduc.
“ E. A. Pelletier.

“ G ” COMPANY.

Capt. W. A. Weeks,
Lieut. F. C. Jones,
“ J. H. Kaye,
“ C. W. W. McLean,

“ H ” COMPANY.

Capt. H. B. Stairs.
Lieut. H. E. Burstall.
“ R. B. Willis.
“ J. C. Oland.

Officers sent out later as reinforcements
were posted as follows :—

Lieut. A. T. Boyd, to “ A ” Company.
“ A. E. Carpenter, to “ B ” Company.
“ C. F. Winter, to “ F ” Company.
“ J. A. MacDonald, to “ G ” Company.

PROMOTIONS AND APPOINTMENTS AFTER ORGANIZATION.

The following appointments and promotions were made in the Battalion after its formation :—

To be Quartermaster :—Capt. W. A. Weeks, vice Denison, seconded for staff duty, from January 31, 1900.

To be Captains :—Lieutenant H. E. Burstall, vice Weeks, appointed Quartermaster, from January 31, 1900, and A. H. Macdonell, vice Arnold, died of wounds received in action, from February 23, 1900.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

To be Lieutenant :—Lieutenant J. A. MacDonald, 82nd Regiment, vice Burstall, promoted.

To be Lieutenants (supernumerary) to be absorbed as vacancies occur :—Captains C. F. Winter, The G. G. F. G., A. J. Boyd, 10th Royal Grenadiers, and Lieut. and Brevet Captain A. E. Carpenter, R. C. R. I., from March 13, 1900.

To be Adjutant :—Lieutenant J. H. C. Ogilvy, vice MacDougall, seconded, from April 5, 1900.

Lieut. Ogilvy was granted the rank of Captain from the same date.

NURSING SISTERS.

On October 19, His Excellency telegraphed Mr. Chamberlain, offering medical officers and nurses, as follows :—

“Many militia medical captains and lieutenants, also trained female nurses, volunteer as auxiliaries to medical staff corps in South Africa, on usual scale of pay given to auxiliary aid. Dominion of Canada will give free transport with contingent if its services would be acceptable. Engagement for six months or twelve months. Two female nurses offered at expense of Canadian Red Cross Society ; shall I send them ?”

On October 23, the following reply was received :—

“Referring to your telegram of October 19, Secretary of State for War would gladly accept medical and surgical equipment, medical personnel, officers and men, and trained female nurses, sufficient for hospital for Canadian contingent. British troops can be legally only attended by surgeons registered United Kingdom and nurses belonging to army reserve.”

The following medical officer and four nurses were accordingly selected from among the many applicants, viz :—

Captain.

A. B. Osborne, A.M.S.

Nurses.

Miss Georgina Fane Pope, Ottawa, Ontario.

Miss Sarah Forbes, Liverpool, Nova Scotia.

Miss Minne Affleck, Middleville, Ontario.

Miss Elizabeth Russell, Hamilton, Ontario.

I submit herewith, a very interesting report from Miss Pope, the senior nurse, (page 65).

OFFICERS FOR INSTRUCTIONAL AND OTHER PURPOSES.

On October 26, the following telegram was received by His Excellency the Governor General from Mr. Chamberlain :—

“In reply to your telegram of October 24, the Secretary of State for War regrets that military requirements preclude the addition of any special service officers to the Imperial staff, but not more than sixteen officers extra to the authorized Imperial regimental establishment may accompany contingent for instruction.”

EXTRA OFFICERS.

The following four officers were specially selected to proceed to South Africa for instructional purposes, viz :—

Lt. Colonel C. W. Drury, A.D.C., Royal Canadian Artillery.

Lt. Colonel F. L. Lessard, Royal Canadian Dragoons.

Major Robert Cartwright, Assistant Adjutant General at Headquarters.

Capt. W. Forester, Royal Canadian Dragoons.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The following officers of the 2nd (S.S.) Battalion, R.C.R., were in excess of the war office establishment of an infantry battalion, viz.:—

Captain A. H. Macdonell, } Battalion Adjutants.
Lieut. J. H. C. Ogilvy, }
Lieut. A. C. Bell, in command machine gun section.

" C. J. Armstrong,
" A. C. Caldwell,
" S. P. Layborn,
" E. A. Pelletier,
" F. D. Lafferty, } One in each Company.
" J. C. Oland,
" R. H. M. Temple, |
" C. W. W. McLean, }

Surgeon Capt. E. Fiset,

The above made the 16 extra officers for whom authority had been received.

Three chaplains, viz.: Rev. J. Almond (Church of England); Rev. J. F. Fullerton, (Presbyterian); Rev. P. M. O'Leary (Roman Catholic): were sent in excess of the authorized strength, and went on the understanding that their services would be retained after the contingent arrived in South Africa only if they were required for duty by the Imperial Government.

Capt. F. J. Dixon, R.O., was sent as Historical Recorder.

Lt. Colonel S. Hughes, 45th Regt., Capt. Todd, Royal Dublin Fusiliers; Messrs. F. Hamilton, Stanley Brown, Wm. Smith and T. Simonski, press representatives, and a representative of the Y.M.C.A. also accompanied the contingent.

On October 27, it was seen that the contingent would be clothed and equipped by October 30, or one day before the date fixed by the Secretary of State for the Colonies, and it was announced accordingly. It may be here stated that, as it was not decided to send the contingent until the evening of October 13, the force was organized and equipped in eleven days less time than allowed by Mr. Chamberlain's despatch of October 3.

On the same date the Major General Commanding, who had returned from British Columbia on the 25th, proceeded to Quebec.

On October 30, the date fixed for the embarkation, the battalion was inspected by the Major General Commanding at 11.30, and afterwards reviewed by His Excellency the Governor General, who was accompanied by the Right Honourable the Premier, the Honourable the Minister of Militia, and several other Ministers.

It then marched to the docks amid great enthusiasm, embarked on the S.S. *Sardinian* in a most creditable manner, and sailed at 3.30 p.m., the send off being one which the citizens of Quebec as well as the departing troops will long remember with feelings of pride.

Following is the marching out state:—

Authorized establishment	1,019	
Troops embarked—		
2nd (S.S.) Battalion R.C.R.:		
Total officers	41	
warrant officers and staff sergeants.	10	
other ranks	988	
	1,039	
Excess		20
	1,039	1,039
Attached for instructional purposes—		
Lt.-Colonels		2
Majors		2
Captains		6
Lieutenant		1

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Attached for passage—

Nurses	4
Special correspondents	4
Y.M.C.A. representative	1
Lt.-Col. S. Hughes	1
Capt. Todd, Royal Dublin Fusiliers	1
<hr/>	
Total on board	1,061

On October 24, His Excellency received the following telegram from Mr. Chamberlain, conveying the thanks of Her Majesty the Queen to her Canadian people, for voluntarily sending troops to South Africa :—

“ Her Majesty the Queen desires to thank the people of Her Dominion of Canada for their striking manifestations of loyalty and patriotism in their voluntary offer to send troops to co-operate with Her Majesty’s Imperial Forces in maintaining her position and the rights of British subjects in South Africa. She wishes the troops God-speed, and a safe return.”

And on October 30, another, which read :—

“ Referring to your telegram of October 29, Her Majesty’s Government offer hearty congratulations to Canadian Government and military authorities, for rapid organization and embarkation of contingent. Enthusiasm displayed by people of Dominion source of much gratification here.”

In the *Canada Gazette* of November 11, 1899, you expressed your appreciation of and satisfaction with the assistance accorded you in the organization of this contingent, by the Civil and Military Officers of your department, in the following words :—

DEPARTMENT OF MILITIA AND DEFENCE.
OTTAWA, November 10, 1899.

The Imperial Government, having offered their hearty congratulations to the Canadian Government and Military Authorities for the rapid organization and embarkation of the contingent sent to South Africa, the Minister of Militia and Defence desires to express his great satisfaction at the prompt response given by every section of the Dominion to the invitation to enlist in the Volunteer Forces for South Africa. The difficulty which he experienced was chiefly one of selection—owing to the large number of officers, non-commissioned officers and men who volunteered their services. He regrets the disappointment which must unavoidably be felt by those who were compelled to remain behind. He further desires to express his warm appreciation of the loyal support accorded to him by the officers of his department—both civil and military—and to congratulate them upon the extraordinary success which attended their efforts,

L F. PINAULT, Lt.-Col.,
Deputy Minister of Militia and Defence.

REINFORCEMENTS.

On March 7, His Excellency sent the following telegram to Mr. Chamberlain offering reinforcements to fill up vacancies in the first contingent :—

“ My Government wishes to know if it is considered expedient by War Office to send forward recruits to fill up ranks of its first contingent. Immediate reply necessary in order to utilize transport now available. (Personal). My ministers would much like answer to-morrow.”

On March 8, orders were issued for the enlistment of 100 men, as follows :—

Toronto	20
Kingston	10

Montreal	10
Ottawa.....	10
St. John, N.B.....	10
Halifax	15
Charlottetown	15
Quebec	10
<hr/>	
Total	100

These men were enlisted under the same conditions as to pay, terms of service, &c., as the men who were then serving in the battalion in South Africa.

The following officers were selected to proceed to South Africa with this detachment :—

Captain C. F. Winter, The G.G.F.G.

Captain A. J. Boyd, 10th Royal Grenadiers.

Lieut. and Brevet Capt. A. E. Carpenter, R.C.R.I., to be absorbed as Lieutenants. as vacancies occurred.

Capt. J. A. MacDonald of the 82nd Regiment, had already proceeded to South Africa to be absorbed when a vacancy occurred.

This detachment embarked on March 16 at Halifax, for Cape Town, on the steamship *Monterey*. The men were enlisted, concentrated at Halifax, some of them having travelled 1,500 miles, and clothed and equipped in eight days.

The history of the 2nd (special service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, from the hour of embarkation at Quebec until its disbandment, can best be told by Colonel Otter, under whose able command the battalion established for itself a reputation which any regiment of the Regular Army would be proud to own. His report has been very carefully prepared, and will be found to be most interesting reading.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

REPORT A.

*From the Officer Commanding 2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment,
to the Adjutant General, Militia Department, Ottawa.*

TORONTO, January 26, 1901.

SIR,—I have the honour to make, as officer commanding the 2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, a general report upon the proceedings of that battalion from its organization until disbanded.

The battalion was mobilized at Quebec on October 28, 1899, and sailed therefrom in the steamship *Sardinian*, for Cape Town, on October 30, at 3.30 p.m., amid the unbounded enthusiasm on the part of the thousands assembled to witness its departure.

On the morning of the 30th, the battalion was inspected by His Excellency the Governor General, the Earl of Minto, G.C.M.G., and addressed by him, as well as by the Right Hon. Sir Wilfrid Laurier, K.C.M.G., the Hon. F. W. Borden, Minister of Militia, His Worship the Mayor of Quebec, and Major General Hutton, C.B., commanding the Militia.

Bad weather was encountered for a couple of days in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, after which the passage, so far as weather was concerned, was a most delightful one. The Cape Verde Islands were passed without touching on November 12, at 7 a.m., and we anchored in Table Bay at noon on the 29th, making a voyage of practically thirty days.

The *Sardinian* proved a very slow ship, and greatly lacking in room and accommodation for the numbers on board. The sanitary arrangements were particularly bad, and so crowded was the ship that parades or drills were matters of extreme difficulty, although they were most regularly maintained.

Immediately on our arrival at Cape Town, an officer of the staff of His Excellency the High Commissioner of South Africa, came on board with a message of welcome from His Excellency, and was followed shortly after by His Worship the Mayor of Cape Town, and several members of its corporation with similar messages. On the 30th the battalion disembarked at 7 a.m., and marched to Green Point Common, where it encamped, awaiting orders.

OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND MEN.

By the time of our arrival at Cape Town, I was able to form an estimate of the material of which the battalion was composed, and which opinion I have not since had reason to change. With the exception of the permanent corps, and a few others, none had much idea of duties, interior economy or discipline. In drill there were many well qualified, but I was astonished to find a very large number of the men ignorant of the first principles.

However, the spirit of all ranks was of the best, and by a course of lectures to officers and non-commissioned officers, and as much practical work as the crowded state of the ship would admit, it became possible, before reaching Cape Town, to effect a very great improvement in the efficiency of the battalion, though a great deal still remained to be done before it was fitted for the field.

Of the physique and high intelligence of all ranks of the Battalion I could not but form the very highest opinion, and it was in a great measure due to these qualities that ultimate success accrued.

DRILL, DUTIES AND DISCIPLINE.

In the matter of drill, I have already referred to the lack of knowledge of that military necessity which existed upon the part of very many of the men, and while on board ship every effort was made to correct this deficiency; yet you can easily imagine on a crowded troop-ship such was restricted to the very elements of squad-drill, the manual and firing exercises and target practice. Movements and formations could not be thought of, and it was only when we reached Belmont that such could be practised.

Every advantage, during our two months tour of lines of communication duty, was made the most of, and before our advance with the main army the battalion had become very smart in its field movements.

A great deal was also learned there of the duties necessary in the camp and field, and particularly those connected with outposts, of which work we had a very great deal to do. Route marching and target shooting were also constantly practised.

The creation of the discipline, so imperative in a military body, was a more difficult matter than either that of drill or duties.

PAY.

By the regulations under which the battalion was organized, officers and men drew pay at Canadian permanent corps rates in the field, up to time of landing in South Africa: after that the rates of pay issued in the Imperial service were to be received.

ARMS.

I shall now take up the question of arms, equipment and clothing. In the matter of arms the battalion was as well equipped as any other in the Imperial service, and, I think, considering the rough usage and wear and tear which fell to the lot of both the Lee-Enfield rifle and bayonet, no fault can be found with either.

EQUIPMENT.

In the matter of equipment, I consider the brown leather accoutrements very satisfactory. The valise was never worn in the field, but left by order at Cape Town, and I cannot therefore report upon it with any degree of accuracy. The braces and straps of the Oliver equipment, which we wore, were the subject of a good deal of diversity of opinion as compared with those worn by the Imperial service troops; but, personally, I am of the opinion that the main brace was not altogether satisfactory, it being inclined to rest too low from the shoulders, and apt to gall, or pinch, under the arms. The ball bag seemed to answer well with its load, generally 80 rounds.

WATER BOTTLE.

The water bottle issued us proved simply useless, it being much too small for the purpose, and had to be changed at once for the Imperial service pattern.

BANDOLIER.

A bandolier I consider a very necessary article of equipment in the field; but the pattern issued to us did not prove equal to the occasion, as the divisions soon stretched, allowing the cartridges to fall out, and the loss of such was constant and out of all proportion, while the rows of brass heads in the front made a distinct and easy mark for the enemy's fire. I would advocate a bandolier made of webbing, as were ours, but provided with a cover to confine the cartridges and hide the sheen.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

KIT BAGS.

I must also report that the kit-bags belonging to the Oliver equipment proved too small. It is an article that would never be carried by the men in the field, and as a receptacle for extra kit to be left at the base is not half large enough.

CLOTHING, JACKETS AND TROUSERS.

The khaki jackets and trousers of Canadian issue, and made of brown canvas, certainly stood as much wear as the Imperial issue of brown drill, but had the fault of being very stiff and harsh on the man's person, which in the case of the trousers made them most uncomfortable to wear on account of excessive chafing. They also have the disadvantage that when washed the brown gradually disappears, and the clothing becomes almost white.

BOOTS.

We had experience of both Canadian and British made boots, and while hitherto a great advocate for the latter, I am strongly now of the belief that the Canadian boot, with heavy nails in the sole, is very much easier, lighter, and in a hot, dry country, more lasting than the English.

HELMET.

I am not an advocate of the helmet on active service, and I think my opinion will be borne out by the majority of those who had to wear them. They are heavy and cumbersome. A felt hat is by far and away the most comfortable and serviceable head dress, and was adopted by every corps in South Africa that could possibly obtain them. This hat should have a soft brim of moderate width, as well as the soft crown, and be of a gray or brown shade.

GREAT COAT.

I cannot speak very favourably of the Canadian great coat. It is too light in texture ; not sufficiently full in the body and skirt ; requires pockets in front and would be better with an adjustable back band for infantry, instead of the all round belt, which is constantly being lost.

BATTLES AND MARCHES

The battalion was not allowed to remain long at Cape Town, for on the evening of November 30, orders were received to proceed to the front the next day. On the morning of December 1, tents were struck, and preparations made for marching out from Green Point Common. At noon the Battalion paraded with forty officers, 933 N.C.O's and men in light marching order, *i.e.*, without valises, which were left in store ; but with great coats and one blanket per man, any spare kit being rolled in the great coat, the officers being restricted to thirty-five pounds of baggage each, and this order of march was to continue for the next eleven months.

Moving to the railway station, headed by the pipers of the Cape Garrison Artillery, we found the streets lined with people, who cheered us most enthusiastically. On arrival at the station the battalion entrained by half battalions in two trains there waiting, and at two p.m. His Excellency the High Commissioner, Sir Alfred Milner, drove upon the platform with the object of saying "good-bye" to the regiment. All the officers were presented to His Excellency, and to them he expressed his pleasure and satisfaction at meeting the first Canadian contingent.

The first train, containing the headquarters and right half battalion, left Cape Town at 2.30 p.m., destination unknown, followed by the second train with the left half battalion some twenty minutes later. For the next two days we continued our journey northwards, arriving at DeAar at 4.30 a.m. on December 3, where we detrained and encamped. A fearful sand storm raged the whole day, giving us our first real taste of the discomforts of campaigning in South Africa. DeAar was then a large supply depot, and we remained there four days, during which period we were equipped with our first and second line transport, the draft being mules.

Leaving DeAar at five a.m. on December 7, by train, we reached Orange River in a few hours, and went into camp there. Another unpleasant experience overtook us here in the form of a terrific rain storm, which came on before our tents were fully pitched.

It was here that we first met the 1st Gordon Highlanders, with whom we were to be subsequently so closely and pleasantly connected. This battalion had reached Cape Town on the same day as ourselves, and preceded us up the country. On reaching Orange River, we found it lying there, and as troops were urgently needed by Lord Methuen, who was at Modder river, it became, I understand, a question as to whether we should be pushed on, or detained, and allow the Gordons to proceed.

The question was decided in favour of the Gordons, who took over our train, and through this became engaged in Magersfontein on December 11, when they lost somewhat heavily.

This incident was, I think, greatly to the advantage of the Royal Canadians, as they were not at that time so well prepared to go into action as they ultimately became.

At Orange river we only remained a couple of days, but during that time earned some little credit for the smart and effectual manner in which we built a long platform at the railway station.

At 8 a.m. on December 9, the Headquarters and Right Half Battalion moved by rail some 40 miles to Belmont, followed the next day by the Left Half Battalion, where we relieved the Royal Munster Fusiliers, who proceeded higher up the line, and we then found ourselves relegated to the line of communication, Orange river-Modder river, under Colonel Miles, C.B., and later on Major General Wood, R.E.

We were now enabled to settle down under canvas and devote some time to drill, although the duties of outposts, &c., were very heavy. We found at Belmont a part of the Mounted Infantry Company, Royal Munster Fusiliers, which remained with us, and in a day or two were joined by one section of 'P' Battery, Royal Horse Artillery; the Queensland Mounted Infantry, and two companies of the Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry, making a garrison of about 1,600 officers and men.

As no commandant had been named at that time, I found myself in command of the station, and so continued until the 25th instant, when Lieut.-Col. Pilcher arrived and took it over.

On January 1, 1900, a part of the battalion had its first experience under fire, as 'C' Company, Captain Barker, formed a part of a small flying column which, under Col. Pilcher, attacked a force of the enemy at Sunnyside. Fortunately no casualties were sustained by 'C' Company, although it took an active part in the engagement and had a trying experience in the march to Douglas. The flying column returned to Belmont on January 4. On two other occasions during January 'A,' 'B,' 'G' and 'H' companies of the battalion formed parts of similar flying columns sent to reconnoitre in the neighbourhood. These small expeditions proved of great value to the companies engaged in them, being experience in marching and gaining a knowledge of the country.

After some five weeks' sojourn at Belmont, officers and men began to grow weary of the monotony of their duties, and to long for something more exciting. This soon came, for on February 8, the Field Marshal, Lord Roberts, Commander-in-Chief, with Lord Kitchener, passed through on their way to the front. The Commander-in-Chief stayed for a few moments at Belmont and spoke to me respecting the regiment, and, a day or two after, rumours reached us as to its probable movement. Then several of the companies were moved to Gras-Pan, a few miles north, for a day or two, but were again

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

brought back to Belmont, and finally, on the 10th instant, definite orders were received for the whole battalion to proceed to Gras-Pan and there become a part of the newly formed 19th Brigade, under Major General Smith-Dorrien, C.B., D.S.O. On the evening of February 12, the battalion moved by train to Gras-Pan and joined the 19th Brigade, which was composed of :—

- 1st Battalion—Duke Cornwall's Light Infantry.
- 2nd " King's Own Shropshire Light Infantry.
- 1st " Gordon Highlanders.
- 2nd " Royal Canadian Regiment.

This Brigade with the Highland Brigade, under Major General Hector S. Macdonald, formed the 9th Division, commanded by Lieut. General Sir Henry Colville, K.C.M.G.

Tents were left at Belmont, and at Gras-Pan that night we had our first experience as a battalion in bivouac.

Now was to begin the celebrated march of Lord Roberts from the railway on the west to Bloemfontein, a march which changed the whole phase of the war; was the means of relieving Kimberley and Ladysmith, and caused the withdrawal of the Boer armies from their points of vantage in Natal and Cape Colony.

Lord Roberts' army was of a strength of about 35,000 men, with 5,000 native drivers and 25,000 animals. This force was cutting itself adrift from its base for an unknown period, and therefore all supplies were to be carried with it. This, of course, made the number of wagons and transport animals very large; and everything superfluous, or not absolutely necessary, was ordered to be left behind.

The composition of Lord Roberts' force was as under :—

- Cavalry Division, Major-General French.
- Corps Artillery, Major-General Marshall.
- 6th Division, Major-General Kelly-Kenny.
- 7th Division, Major-General Tucker.
- 9th Division, Lt.-General Sir H. Colville.
- Naval Guns, Captain Bearcroft, R.N.

The 9th Division being a part of the main army under Field Marshal Lord Roberts, which was to march to the east into the Orange Free State, moved on the 13th of February; the Highland Brigade leaving Enslin on that day, while the 19th Brigade left Gras Pan at 5 a.m. on the same morning. Our first march was a most trying one, as it was not only excessively hot, but the delays were many and vexatious owing to the transport wagons, which were in many cases either over, or badly, loaded, and constantly broke down.

We arrived at Ram-Dam at 2.30 p.m., with a loss of over (50) fifty stragglers, having marched twelve miles, every one being very tired. Our strength on marching out of Gras-Pan was 31 officers, 865 N.C.O's and men. On the following day we reached Waterval on the Reit river, some 13 miles. This march was quite as trying as the previous day, added to which we had no sooner arrived at the Drift than heavy fatigue parties had to be furnished by the battalion in order to assist the naval guns over. This duty was admirably done, and a good deal of credit was given to our parties by the naval officers. It was here that on the next morning, after the departure of the division, some 200 supply wagons were captured by the enemy, which resulted in short rations to the force for the next four weeks. As on marching that morning, we had left at Waterval some 10 men unfit to proceed, it was with considerable anxiety we heard of the capture of this convoy, and for some time afterwards we were under the impression that they had become prisoners. I did not, however, report the matter until certain of the casualty, and was, therefore, very glad to ultimately learn that they had escaped. The following day brought us to Wegdraai. Our advance troops had become engaged that afternoon with the enemy at Jacobsdal, and succeeded in capturing the place; our brigade following up, halted for the night within three miles of Jacobsdal, where we took up our first turn of outpost duty in the brigade.

On the morning of the 16th, we moved into Jacobsdal and remained there during the day. At 9 p.m. that evening we marched for Klip Drift on the Modder river, forming the advance guard to the division, arriving there at 4 p.m. the next morning—

having done 16 miles. This change in the time of our marching was a great relief from the hot sun, the nights being generally cool; although, unless with a good moon, the veldt becomes very trying, owing to its unevenness. We rested through the day at Klip Drift, and at 6 p.m. were on the move again, forming the rear guard to the division.

This was a very long and excessively tedious march. The interruptions in the front were many, and the night was dark, whilst the distance traversed was more than ordinarily long, being 23 miles. We arrived at Paardeberg Drift at 6 a.m. of the 18th, and preparations were immediately made for breakfast. This meal had barely been taken when firing was heard, and we received orders to parade at once, as the enemy, under General Cronje, had taken up a position in the bed of the Modder river, from which we were to dislodge or capture them.

At 7.20 a.m. we left our temporary lines and moved a few hundred yards to some high ground, from behind where we could see the Highland Brigade already engaged with the enemy. We were immediately ordered to practically retrace our steps and cross the Modder river, nearly five feet deep, at the Paardeberg Drift, which we did, and at 9.30 a.m. our share of the first of the nine days fighting at Paardeberg began. The special report upon which, with plan, is now attached as appendix 'A 1.'

On the 19th February we buried our unfortunate comrades who had fallen the day before, and I sent a cablegram by special messenger to Kimberley giving a full list of the killed and wounded, which I have since learned never reached you. In the afternoon we took up a line of outposts some three miles up the river and within 3,500 yards of the Boer laager. The next morning, the 20th, the brigade was sent still further forward and during the whole day was engaged with the enemy, with the loss to the Royal Canadians of four wounded. The report of this action was duly sent you and is now attached, with plan, as appendix 'A 2.'

On the 21st, the battalion was detailed for the support of the naval guns on Artillery Hill, which were all day shelling the Boer's laager with lyddite, and during the night did its share of outpost duty. On the 22nd the arrival of a relieving force to the enemy caused the battalion to be sent some two miles to the west of Artillery Hill to occupy, in conjunction with the rest of the brigade, a line of kopjes, and for nearly three days it was engaged in this duty, during the whole of which time it rained heavily and incessantly, and as a consequence officers and men were continually wet through.

On the afternoon of the 24th, the battalion was, for the first time during this arduous week, relieved from duty and sent back to Paardeberg Drift (some four miles distant) for a rest. As, however, it rained heavily through the whole of that night, making our bivouac a perfect quagmire, and though fine on the following day (25th) the time of the greater part of the men was taken up by poling off the dead bodies of animals and human beings which drifted down the river immediately alongside our lines from the enemy's laager and threatened to form a dam. The time spent there was a rest in name only. During this day (25th) a moderate calculation was made of the number of dead animals and men which passed our bivouac, and was found to be one in every two minutes of the twenty-four hours, or a total of 720, to say nothing of the filth from the Boer laager above.

As it was from this river, the Modder, that the only supply of water was available during the nine days we occupied the locality, to it may safely be attributed in a large measure the epidemic of enteric and typhoid which later on developed in the battalion, and which numbered in the aggregate some 350 cases.

On the morning of the 26th February, the battalion was ordered to relieve the Cornwall's in the trenches, which were being gradually pushed up to the enemy's position, still on the north side of the river. By noon that day this was done, and we found ourselves occupying a line of trenches within 600 yards of the enemy. All the rest of the day we engaged the enemy from these trenches, and during the afternoon were informed that it was proposed to make an attack at 2 a.m. the next morning. Preparations were then made for this attack, which took place as ordered on the morning of the 27th February, and the nineteenth anniversary of Majuba Hill.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

My official report, with the plan of this action was sent you shortly afterwards, and is now made Appendix 'A' 3. After the fire had ceased, an evacuation of the laager was made by the enemy, when we buried those who had fallen, and the battalion marched into the laager at 9.30 a.m., and there received orders to await the arrival of the Field Marshal, Lord Roberts, Commander-in-Chief, who desired to see the corps. It was, however, nearly 4 p.m. before he arrived, when he thanked us for the morning's work and gave us credit for being instrumental in the capture of General Cronje and his forces. That night our bivouac was made on the north side of the laager, and the following day our brigade was moved to Kodoes Rand, some five miles higher up the river, in the neighbourhood of which the whole army was concentrated. Here we remained until the 7th of March, and had a fairly good rest. Orders were here received on the 6th for a movement to attack a position strongly held by the enemy, to the east of Poplar Grove, and which covered a frontage of some thirteen miles. At 4 a.m. on the 7th, or an hour before daybreak, the brigade was moving to the right of the enemy's position. The order of movement by the brigade was Shropshire L. I., leading, followed by the Cornwalls, the Gordons and Royal Canadians. To the right of us was the Highland Brigade, while our left was protected by a strong force of mounted infantry. Advancing in this order for about two hours, a halt was made for half an hour, when we again moved forward, the Shropshires covering the front, supported by the Cornwalls, with the Gordons and Royal Canadians in reserve. Our immediate objective was a large table-topped kopje, approaching which to within 4,000 or 5,000 yards, we came to a halt, and awaited the development of the attack by the other portions of the army. About 9 a.m. our naval guns, which had come up to the right of us, opened on the large kopje, and immediately drew the fire of two Creusot guns, which were posted on it. This artillery duel lasted for some two hours to the disadvantage of our guns, which were forced to retire out of range, and we were sent as an escort for their protection. We had hardly complied with this, which entailed a couple of miles marching to the right rear, when we received an order to join the Highland Brigade, which was moving rapidly to the right front in support of the 7th Division, then moving against the centre of the enemy in conjunction with the 6th Division and the cavalry, who were supposed to be by that time on the left flank of the enemy and his rear. After joining the Highland Brigade, we had a very stiff march of some ten miles to Poplar Grove, where we found the 7th Division engaged, and advancing on the left flank of the Highland Brigade for another mile; we were suddenly ordered to move directly across to the left, and take possession of a line of small kopjes, thought to be occupied by the Boers. Advancing against these with every precaution, we reached them without opposition, and from the top of one, Slags Kraal, saw a large part of the Boer force in hasty retreat. This was at 4 p.m. The result of this action was the evacuation of the whole of the enemy's position, and its possession by our forces. The losses were comparatively small; although the work was exceedingly hard and the results most important. An interesting feature of the day was the presence in the enemy's line of the presidents of both the Orange Free State, and the Transvaal, who by the way, narrowly escaped capture. As orders had been given in the morning to move as light as possible, great coats and blankets had been left at our last bivouac, as well as all supplies, and consequently it was not until 2 a.m. the next morning that these reached us. In the meantime we were without food, and the night turned out to be one of the coldest experienced in the whole of our eleven months campaigning. We had marched fully twenty miles in the hot sun, and though hungry and tired out, could get no rest, owing to the intense cold. The remainder of our brigade had continued on the enemy's right, with whom it became lightly engaged at intervals during the day, until the general retreat of the Boers took place. It was 9 p.m. that night before the brigade was brought together again.

On the 8th March, we had a much needed opportunity of washing, which was taken advantage of, and on the afternoon of the 9th, our division was brought back about three miles to the Poplar Grove drift, and there crossed to the south side of the Modder. Our turn for crossing did not arrive until 7 p.m., and after two hours hard work, we reached the opposite bank. The men had to be taken over on ponts, and it required a large fatigue with ropes, to assist the wagons up a very steep embankment.

On the morning of the 10th of March Lord Roberts began the last stage of the march to Bloemfontein in three columns, of which our division formed a part of the centre, and with which was the Commander-in-Chief himself. The 6th Division, which formed the northern column, became engaged early in the day with our enemy of the 7th inst., in a running fight, beginning at Abraham's Kraal. The original direction of this column had, through this, to become somewhat changed in a southerly direction, and in the afternoon our column came in contact with these opposing forces, and thus took a small part in what is known as the battle of Driefontein. The Boers in this action lost very heavily in guns and men.

For the next three days no incident of note occurred, the march of the three columns being unopposed. On the afternoon of the last (13th March) the advanced troops of the army reached Bloemfontein. Our division went into bivouac that night at Ferreira Spruit Siding, a station on the railway, some six miles south of the city. Here it remained for a day, and on the morning of the 15th March, we marched into Bloemfontein, and formed a bivouac on the south-west side of it. Here it was understood that the army would remain for some time to rest and refit, as men and animals were pretty well tired out, the losses in the latter having been extraordinarily great, and supplies of all kinds were much needed, particularly food.

The Royal Canadian Regiment had suffered equally with the others in the matter of short rations; all having been for the last three weeks upon half rations at the most, and at odd times not even that. As to clothing and boots, the battalion was in a pitiable condition.

With the seizure of the Orange Free State railway, it was expected that all necessary supplies would soon be forthcoming, but owing to the destruction of the bridge over the Orange river at Norvals Pont by the enemy, this hope was only partially realized, and stores were very slow indeed in reaching Bloemfontein.

The duties which now fell to the lot of the 9th division were not excessive, and time was found in which to resume to a limited extent, the drilling of the battalion. Owing to the casualties caused by death, wounds, and troubles incident to the line of march, our strength on reaching Bloemfontein was reduced to 28 officers and 712 N.C.O.'s and men.

A few days after our arrival enteric and typhoid made its appearance amongst us, and before the end of the month, we had upwards of 100 cases in hospital, with fresh ones appearing daily.

On the afternoon of the 30th March, we suddenly received an order to march with the division early next morning, and at 5.30 a.m., of the 31st of March, we were moving as a column in an easterly direction from Bloemfontein. About noon that day we were met by small parties of cavalry and mounted infantry who informed us hurriedly of the disaster that evening at Koorn Spruit, or Sannah's Post. We were pushed rapidly on, and at 1 p.m. reached Boesman Kop, a commanding point 18 miles to the east of Bloemfontein. Here I was ordered to remain with four companies of the battalion, and hold the Kop, while the rest of the battalion moved some six miles further on to the Waterval drift, Modder river. The division that afternoon became slightly engaged with the enemy along the river between Waterval drift and the waterworks, but no casualties occurred in the 19th Brigade. On the following day, 1st April, the division was concentrated at Boesman Kop, and on the 1st of April began its return march to Bloemfontein, arriving there the morning of the 3rd. We had hardly taken up our old bivouac, when orders were received for the division to march again the following day, and at 1.30 p.m. we began our march in a south-easterly direction, reaching Reitfontein at 8.30 p.m. This was a most tedious march, the latter part of it being over a very rough country, and in the dark. At 5.30 a.m., of the 5th of April, we again moved off, and shortly afterwards our mounted troops and guns became engaged. The enemy, however, did not offer any serious resistance, and the position we had by this time taken up on Leeuw Kop, became unnecessary, so that after a rest of a couple of hours we returned to Reitfontein. Shortly after reaching this place it began to rain heavily, and so continued through the whole night. Our bivouac became a mud hole, and nothing could be more uncomfortable than we were.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

The next morning, the 6th, we gladly left this camp and returned to Bloemfontein. On this day our tents arrived from the south, and were immediately pitched on the ground of our original bivouac.

For the next two weeks all were very much more comfortable than for the past two months, and had it not been for the many serious casualties from fever, we might have felt quite happy, as an issue of clothing had also arrived and food was plentiful : while a good many of our comforts, so kindly sent us by friends from Canada and England, also found their way into our hands.

On the 20th April, the 19th Brigade received orders to march to Springfield, a farm some eight miles to the east of Bloemfontein, and there take over the duties of the 18th Brigade. We were, at the same time, instructed to take the least possible quantity of baggage, as it was not likely that we should be absent for more than three days. Consequently, when we marched on the next morning, we left our camp standing, with a large quantity of personal baggage, and other stores, which had been accumulated during the last two weeks. We had also to leave in camp three officers and about 150 men, who were unable to stand the fatigue of marching, besides those in hospital. Our marching out strength was 27 officers, 584 non-commissioned officers and men.

We took over the duties of the 18th Brigade that afternoon (21st), and at 8 a.m. of the 23rd, orders were received for the Brigade to move, on half an hour's notice, to Boesman Kop, and this was the beginning of our second series of long and arduous marches and fighting, which did not cease until our arrival in Pretoria on the 5th June.

The Brigade moved at 11 a.m., and in place of halting at Boesman Kop, we passed it, and moved on towards the waterworks. As we approached, firing was heard in front, and we soon learned that the mounted infantry which preceded us, had become engaged with the enemy, and had forced their retirement from the position they held on Modder river. We camped that night about two miles short of the waterworks, at Klip Kraal, and the next morning moved early, in fighting formation, over the river, on to the heights of Momema mountain, which the battalion scaled about 1 p.m. These heights had been held in the morning by the enemy, who had retired on our approach. Our bivouac that night was a most pleasant one, at the foot of the heights, and we learned that we had become a part of the column under the command of General Ian Hamilton, consisting of 'P' Battery, Royal Horse Artillery, Marshall's Mounted Infantry, two Cow guns, the 19th and 21st Brigades. Major General Smith-Dorrien now assumed command of the two infantry brigades, while Colonel Speirs, Shropshire Light Infantry, took charge of the 19th Brigade. This arrangement meant the dissolution of the 9th Division, the Highland Brigade being left at the Waterworks.

On the 25th April, the column moved at 9 a.m., the Royal Canadians forming the advance guard. About noon considerable firing was heard on our left front, and it was soon apparent that the mounted infantry was engaged. The infantry column was halted, and the guns pushed forward, opening fire. The further details of this engagement will be found in Appendix 'A 4.' As it was on this day I was wounded and sent back to Bloemfontein, the command of the battalion devolved upon Lt.-Col. Buchan, until I was able to rejoin, on 26th May.

The wound I received was classified as slight, and by the 12th of May I was fit for duty. During the last four or five days of my convalescence at Bloemfontein, I made arrangements for a store house in which to place the regimental and personal property, which up to this time had been in our old camp in charge of details left there on the 21st April. In the store-room I had everything properly sorted, labelled and left in charge of a N. C. O. and two men. I left Bloemfontein on the 12th May, proceeding northward to rail head at Welgelegen siding, and the rest of the journey I made with ox convoys of supplies. This journey was most tedious and slow, as on the railway we had several times long stoppages, while the ox convoys were even worse, so that it was not until the morning of the 26th May that I was able to rejoin, and assumed command of the battalion at Wonderheuval.

During my absence much hard work was endured by the officers and men of the battalion, and several actions had been taken part in, but not being myself present, I must ask permission to insert herein as Appendix 'A 5' the diary of Lt.-Col. Buchan.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The day I resumed command our column crossed the Vaal, at Boschbank, at 3.10 p.m.; the crossing was an easy one, and as the battalion was the advance guard of the infantry that day it had the honour of being the first battalion of infantry of the main army to enter the Transvaal, as Lord Roberts' own column did not effect a crossing until the 28th. Our strength on that day was 25 officers and 418 N.C.O. and men.

We halted for the night on the northern side of the Vaal, and the next day, the 27th, made a march of some fifteen miles.

On the 28th May we had a further march of ten miles to Cyferfontein. During this march we could distinctly hear the guns of General French's force, which was closely engaged all day with the enemy.

On the morning of the 29th, we began our march at 7.15 a.m., reaching Klipriversberg about 11 a.m. Here we came up to General French's force, and found that although fighting for the last 24 hours, it had not been able to make any impression upon the enemy, who occupied a very strong position at Doorn-Kop, celebrated as the site of the surrender of Dr. Jameson and his force. Our column was at once given orders to take up the fighting and the 19th and 21st Brigades were told off to their respective lines of attack. For particulars of this action I must refer you to my report at the time, with map, and now attached as Appendix 'A 6.'

The night following this engagement was a miserable one. Our transport did not reach us until midnight, and in the meantime officers and men suffered very severely from hunger, thirst and cold. We were also very much grieved at the heavy loss sustained by our good comrades the Gordon Highlanders; many among the casualties being well known to us.

We were ordered to parade next morning, 30th May, ready to march at 4.30 a.m., and remained so until the order to move came at 10 a.m. As we momentarily expected the order to march, no breakfast could be prepared.

Leaving our bivouac at 10.30 a.m., we marched into Florida, a suburb of Johannesburg, on the west side, where we went into bivouac, and remained until the 1st of June, when we moved some six miles to Braamfontein, another suburb, to the north-east of Johannesburg, and here we stayed until the 3rd of June.

On the last named date we left Braamfontein at 6 a.m. and made a march of sixteen miles to Jacksie river. While the column with Lord Roberts moved the same day in a northerly direction by the main road, ours took a north-westerly one.

On the 4th we began our march at 7 a.m., our brigade being in the rear. A change in the direction was made soon after starting from north-west to north-east, and at about noon firing was heard to our front. This was the beginning of the engagement called Six-mile Spruit to the south of Pretoria. By 3 p.m. the firing having increased, it soon became evident that an action was being fought, and it was not long before the 21st brigade with the Cornwalls and Gordons of our brigade were pushed forward into the fighting line, having to climb the Schwartz Kopjes, while we were held in reserve at the foot of these, and the Shropshires remained as a baggage guard. The action lasted until five p.m., and resulted in the retirement of the Boers through Pretoria. Our bivouac was made that night where we lay, and the next morning (June 5) the triumphant march into Pretoria began. It was the turn of the 19th Brigade to lead, and of the Royal Canadians to lead in that brigade, so that we have the honour of leading the infantry of our column into the city. At eleven a.m. we reached Skinner's Court on the west side of the city, and the brigade there made its bivouac for the night.

On the afternoon of this day at 2 p.m. the whole army marched past the Field Marshal, Lord Roberts, Commander-in-Chief, who took his position in the Market Square. The spirit of all ranks of the regiment was excellent, and its movements on this occasion was remarked upon as being most smart and soldierly.

The strength of the battalion marching into Pretoria was twenty-seven officers and 411 men.

In that day's orders the dissolution of the 19th Brigade was announced, and in connection with this, a valedictory order of Major-General Smith-Dorrien was promulgated, which will be found under the heading of 'Commendatory messages' accompan

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

ing this report. We were notified that for the present we should remain with the Gordons at Pretoria ; the Cornwalls and Shropshires being detailed for duties down the line of railway, the Shropshires moving away during the night. On the 6th, we were moved to Arcadia, a suburb in the east end of the city, and attached to the 7th Division, Major General Tucker.

On the morning of June 7, however, we received orders to be ready to move that afternoon to the south, and on reaching the rendezvous at five p.m., found that the 19th Brigade was again reformed under Major General Smith-Dorrien ; the Suffolks taking the place of the Shropshires.

The brigade marched at six p.m. to the south-east to a bivouac, two and a half miles east of Irene Station, there to take our place with the 21st Brigade in practically the old column under General Ian Hamilton.

Before nine a.m., the next morning, this arrangement was changed, and while General Ian Hamilton, with the 21st brigade, moved to the north-east, our brigade with the 74th Field Battery, and a half company of Royal Engineers marched southwards under Major General Smith-Dorrien, being detailed for the line of communication.

We halted that night at Kaalfontein and continued our march the next morning the (9th) leaving strong detachments of the Cornwalls and the Suffolks at different railway stations along the line.

On the 10th June, what was then left of the brigade viz.:—the Gordons and Royal Canadians, with the Artillery, and Engineers, reached Elandsfontein Junction, and there formed a bivouac.

On the following day, I received orders to take five companies, and occupy Springs, a coal mining centre, some eighteen miles east of Johannesburg ; at the end of the branch railway line. I marched out at 2 p.m. of the 12th of June with 'A', 'B,' 'C,' 'F' and 'G' companies, reaching Boksburg, five miles, at 5 p.m., where I was joined by a squadron of Loch's Horse under Captain Brown.

At 7.30 a.m. of the 13th, I resumed my march on Springs, which, contrary to expectations, I found unoccupied by the enemy, and took possession of the railway station and village. In the railway yard I found three very good engines, less the connecting rods, which had been removed, and some forty trucks and railway carriages.

In the village were some five coal mines, employing about three thousand natives. These mines had not, however, been working for some time, and only the natives connected with one, viz.: the Great Eastern, were at hand. This mine began working in a few days after our arrival, supplying coal to Johannesburg and Pretoria, and the Imperial Military Railway. Immediately on taking possession of the village, we took precautions for the defence of the place by establishing picquets on the coal dumps, which afforded excellent points for observation, and by digging trenches at these and other points of advantage, so that the place was soon rendered fairly safe, while a regular system of patrols by the mounted infantry was also arranged. These dispositions were inspected by Major General Smith-Dorrien, on the 21st June, and fully approved by him. We soon became aware of the presence of a force of the enemy hovering in the neighbourhood, which continued during the whole time of our occupation of the station, and varied in numbers from 150 to 800 at different times.

On the 14th of June, the remaining three companies of the regiment arrived under Lieut. Col. Buchan, and one section of the 74th Field Battery under Lieut. Julian, thus making the garrison up to a strength of 600 all told.

Having been detailed by Major General Smith-Dorrien as commandant of this station, and the line Springs—Elandsfontein, which included Boksburg, I appointed the following as station staff officers: Staff and Intelligence Officer, Capt. J. H. C. Ogilvy ; Railway Staff Officer, Lt. F. D. Lafferty ; Assistant District Commissioner—Capt. W. A. Weeks.

On the 14th June, one of our patrols encountered a small party of the enemy, and were driven in, several shots being exchanged. The duties necessary for the proper protection of the place became very heavy, as in order to render it secure all the coal mine dumps had to be taken into its defences, and these covering a large area, required not only strong parties, but also entailed a good deal of time in reaching and returning from

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

them. As much as one half the effective force being at one time required for the duties of outpost guards, etc. Much work was also required in preparing the dumps for the defence, and making the trenches, while every morning the whole garrison had to be under arms before daybreak, and remain so for at least an hour. All the inhabitants of the neighbourhood had to be visited, their names registered, arms taken from them, and the oath of neutrality administered and passes granted to such as were considered fit to be trusted with them. Cattle and stock had also to be collected from the farms, whose owners were absent from them. Railway communication was established at once to Johannesburg, and trains run regularly to and from that place. This line as far as Boksburg had to be regularly patrolled through the night by parties of infantry on hand trolleys, and on the 18th, I was instructed to augment a force of mounted infantry that was stationed at Boksburg, by a company of infantry. I detailed 'H' Company, under Capt. Stairs, for the duty, and that officer to the command of the station.

For the first day or two following our arrival at Springs, the battalion was in bivouac, but finding many houses and a couple of large buildings vacant, these were turned into barracks and quarters, and soon had the whole force under cover in the immediate neighbourhood of the railway station, thus ensuring protection from the cold nights, the season being that of winter in South Africa. On the 19th of June, a large supply depot was established here, under the charge of an officer in the Army Service Corps, and the object of which was soon seen, it being largely used for operations that were subsequently carried on to the north of us. In the meantime it was rather a source of anxiety, as the enemy in the neighbourhood, it was well known, were very short of food.

On the 21st of June General Ian Hamilton's column arrived on its way to Heidelberg and the Orange Free State, remaining over the night at Springs. On the 23rd the detachment of Loch's Horse was relieved by one of the N. Staff Mounted Infantry, under Lieut. Ewing.

On the morning of the 28th of June, the enemy to the number of about 600 made an attack upon our lines. It was not a very determined one, as with the exception of a comparatively few of them who worked up under cover to within 500 to 600 yards of one of our posts, they contented themselves with remaining at long range rifle and gun fire. For half an hour, we kept up a desultory fire by volleys at 1,600 yards, and threw a half dozen shells into their ranks at about 3,000 yards. The latter fire had the effect of causing them to retire with a loss of one man, and a couple of horses. Our casualties were nil. The battalion was most prompt in proceeding to its respective stations on the alarm being given.

On the following day (29th), information was received of a second attack, which was to be made on the following morning, and notified the general officer commanding lines of communication and asked for reinforcements. These came early on the morning of the 30th in the form of an armoured train with pom-pom and machine guns. A 6 inch gun mounted on a railway truck, and 200 of the Gordons under Lt.-Col. Macbean. Later on in the morning, a strong company of mounted infantry under Capt. Harris also arrived, but no attack being made early in the morning as expected, three strong patrols of mounted infantry were sent to the east and north; one or two of these patrols became engaged, losing one horse, and capturing two men and two horses, when the enemy retired quite too far for us to pursue. Considering from all information that could be obtained, all danger was over for the present, the reinforcements were returned to their stations the next day.

On the 6th of July, I had, in accordance with instructions, to relieve the detachment of the Gordons with the armoured train, stationed at Elandsfontein, by two officers and sixty men; as the 19th Brigade was being reformed again for services in the field, and the above named regiment was to form part of it, 'G' company under Lieut. Jones was detailed for the duty. In connection with the return of the 19th Brigade to the field again; it was at first intended that the Royal Canadians should remain in it, but as troops were not available to relieve the latter, the brigade was sent out with only 3 battalions.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

About July 5, Major General Hutton, with a force of Artillery and M.I., which included the Royal Canadian Dragoons, Canadian Mounted Rifles and Naval Guns, reached Reitvlei, some ten miles to the north of the Springs, with a view of operating against a large force of Boers, formed from those who had been operating against Springs, and a portion of General Botha's Army from Middleburg. On the day following, I was ordered to move with a flying column of Artillery, Mounted Infantry and Infantry, from Springs, to assist in a proposed attack to be made by Major General Hutton, should he drive the enemy southwards. The same day Lt. Col. Ross, in command of the 8th M. I. with Lumsden's Horse, reported to me in connection with this duty, and two companies of Gordons also reported to temporarily relieve the Royal Canadian Regiment while absent from Springs.

On the 7th July, according to instructions received the evening before, the whole available force, some 650 officers and men, with the exception of the two companies of the Gordons above alluded to, moved out under my command at 6.30 a.m. to the northward, with the object of cutting off the retreat of the enemy, should he be driven back by General Hutton's force. About noon communication was established between our advance parties and the right of General Hutton's force at Olifantsfontein, and considerable firing of big guns was heard some five miles further north, which proved to be in connection with an action fought on his left flank, and in which the Royal Canadian Dragoons were engaged and had seven casualties. As this action ceased about 1 p.m., and there being no appearance of the enemy any where, I returned to Springs with my force, in accordance with instructions should such a contingency arise.

On the 8th and 9th July, it was evident that General Hutton's force to the north of us was engaged, as the guns could be heard from that direction, and information reached me that the movement of a part of General Botha's force had begun from Balmoral on the Lorenzo Marquez railway to the south.

On the 9th July, a change was made in the command of the Pretoria-Kroonstadt line of communication, Major General Sir H. Chermiside, R.E., relieving Major General Smith-Dorrien.

The following day a force of 250 mounted infantry under Lieut.-Colonel Ross was added to the garrison at Springs, from which large convoys of supplies were now daily moving, and many sick and several wounded from General Hutton's force arrived en route to the hospital in Johannesburg.

From the 11th to the 22nd July, our own and the enemy's forces still occupied the country in the vicinity and to the north of Springs, engaged in desultory fighting, and on the 18th news reached us of the gallant deaths of Lieuts. Borden and Burch of the Royal Canadian Dragoons. Large convoys of supplies were being sent from Springs to the commands of Generals French and Hutton, while numbers of sick arrived from these forces on the way to the hospital.

A large 'sick horse' depot was established, made up of the unfortunate animals found incapable of service for the time.

The enemy also kept hovering about Springs, and on several occasions fired on our patrols, with the loss to us of one man killed, one wounded and two horses killed.

About the 24th July, a forward movement north-east was made by Generals French and Hutton, which caused the enemy to retire. This relieved the strain upon Springs, as but few Boers remained, and with the departure of our own troops the strain on the supply depot ceased and also the necessity for the occupation of Springs.

During the time we were at Springs the strength of the battalion came up to 25 officers and 523 non-commissioned officers and men, owing to the return of convalescents.

On the 2nd of August, orders were received for the evacuation of the place at once, and at 9 p.m. we moved out by train taking the supply depot with us. The mounted infantry and 'sick horse' depot moved by route march.

Moving southward we crossed the Vaal and reached Wolvehoek at 9 a.m., the morning of the 3rd, and there detrained. During the afternoon orders arrived for us to join Major General Ridley's mounted infantry column, which formed a part of General Lord Kitchener's force, engaging a strong body of the enemy under General DeWet, in the neighbourhood of Vredefort.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

At 9 a.m., of the 4th, seven companies of the battalion (leaving 'G' company still on the armoured train on line of communication, Pretoria-Kroonstadt), with the 8th Mounted Infantry, under Lt. Col. Ross, marched from Wolvehoek, south-west, to join General Ridley. We mustered 23 officers and 463 non-commissioned officers and men.

On the afternoon of the 5th, after two marches of 12 miles each, we opened helio communication with that officer from a point of nearly midway between Vredefort and Parijs. That afternoon Ross's M.I. became slightly engaged with the enemy for a couple of hours, but without loss, and during the evening Lt.-Cols. Delisle and Legge joined us with their commands of M.I., followed the next morning (6th August) by General Ridley and the remainder of his force. We were now with a column some 2,500 strong, composed of one battery R.H.A. (P), several pom-poms, five battalions of M.I., and the Royal Canadian Regiment.

During the forenoon of the 7th, heavy firing from guns was heard from the west, where Lord Methuen's column was evidently attacking the enemy from that side. In the afternoon large parties of the latter could be seen in the distance, moving very quickly northwards.

On the morning of the 8th of August General Ridley's column resumed its pursuit of the enemy, moving northward to Lindeque Drift, where it arrived on the afternoon of the 9th. A slight action took place here with the rear guard of the enemy and our advance troops.

On the 10th of August we suddenly received orders to join General Hart's column, which had reached Lindeque through the night, and consisted of:—

- Marshall's Horse.
- 84th Battery, R.F.A.
- 2 Naval Guns, 4.7.
- Northumberland Fusiliers.
- Somerset Light Infantry.
- The Derbyshire Regiment.
- The Royal Dublin Fusiliers.

With this column we crossed the Vaal at 7.30 a.m. at the Lindeque Drift, a very bad crossing, and continued the pursuit of the enemy, reaching Losberg in the afternoon, having made eleven miles against a very heavy wind, which was most trying.

On the 11th, we had to contend against a similar wind blowing over the burnt veldt, and made fifteen miles, under what were, perhaps, the most trying circumstances in our experience of South Africa. Continuing north, we crossed the railway at Welverdiend on the 12th August, making 20 miles on the 13th. On the 14th and 15th of August we marched steadily, much difficulty being experienced in obtaining water. On the latter day we reached "Zandfontein" and went into bivouac with the columns of General Ian Hamilton, and Brigadier General Mahon. Here we learned that the enemy had got through Olifants Nek, which was supposed to have been held by our troops, thus rendering pursuit impossible, and also that a small force under Colonel Hore was surrounded and in danger of capture at Zeerust, some 60 miles to the north-west of us, and which force our column was to move at once to relieve.

On August 16, we changed our direction towards Zeerust, but had proceeded only some three miles, when we learned of the relief of Col. Hore's force, and received orders for return of General Hart's column to Pretoria. Subsequent orders of same day, however, required our movements to Elands river to join Lord Kitchener. We moved in a westerly direction at 1 a.m. on the 17th to Tootefontein, and covered fully 20 miles before a chance was given for breakfast. Half-past one in the afternoon again saw us on the march, but an hour after starting, we had instructions to return to Tootefontein, where we remained the night. Orders here again reached us to return to Pretoria, via Krugersdorp, in order that General Hart's column might refit, and replenish supplies.

On August 18, we began our return march, and reached Krugersdorp by noon of the 23rd. Here we were detached from General Hart's force, and sent by rail to

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Pretoria, where we received orders on the 24th to take up line of communication duties at Silverton and Eerste Fabricken, two stations just east of Pretoria.

Before leaving the subject of our service with General Ridley's and General Hart's forces, I think that I should place on record the severity of these marches and strain to which officers and men were subjected. Not only were the marches long, averaging seventeen miles a day, but they were continuous; the roads very dusty; water scarce, and rest most irregular. Never, however, in the South African experience were the duties, entailed upon all ranks, more cheerfully performed or more pluck and endurance shown by all ranks of the regiment.

A feature of these marches was a system adopted of organized singing, which greatly relieved the monotony of them, and I might state that over 1,000 miles of honest marching had now been covered by the battalion.

On the morning of August 25 we marched from Pretoria, and in accordance with instructions, three companies ("E," "F" and "H") under Major Pelletier, were left at Silverton, to relieve a like number of men of the Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry, which was ordered to move further eastward on the line.

In addition to these three companies, one troop of Roberts' Horse, and one section of 18th Battery, R.F.A., formed the garrison.

With the remaining four companies, "A," "B," "C" and "D," I moved on to Eerste Fabricken, and here I took over command of that station, and relieved the remainder of the D.C.L.I. I found here one troop of Roberts' Horse.

"G" Company, R.C.R., was still doing duty on the armoured train.

Eerste Fabricken, I found, was a village of some importance, and the site of the Hatherley Distillery. The enemy was in small parties hovering about in the vicinity to the northward, threatening to cut the railway line—Pretoria-Middleberg—over which large numbers of troops and supplies were passing to the headquarters of the army.

Brigadier General Barker, R.E., was in command of this line with headquarters at that time at Bronkhurst Spruit.

The defences of Eerste Fabricken, I found already made, consequently the duties entailed upon officers and men were not heavy, nor was the enemy very energetic, although on the 30th of August, one of the M.I. patrol was killed, and two horses shot.

On the 2nd of September, "F" was ordered to relieve the troops at Olifants River with three companies from the Royal Canadians, and did so with "C," "E." and "I" Companies under Major Pelletier, sending "D" Company to Silverton, which station was placed under the command of Capt. Stairs.

On the 7th September, I received a telegram from Field Marshal Commander-in-Chief, asking if the Regiment would prolong its service in South Africa, but as I am treating of this subject under another heading, I shall not here enter into any of the details.

On the 24th of September, the officers and men who had decided to return to Canada on completion of their engagement, left their several stations for Pretoria, and there entrained on the 26th for Cape Town.

Previous to their departure, Lord Roberts inspected them, and expressed his great satisfaction with the services they had rendered during the past ten months.

These details, numbering 16 officers and 413 N.C.O's and men, sailed from Cape Town for Halifax under Major Pelletier on the ss. *Idaho* on the 1st October, 1900.

There now remained only 12 officers and 250 men of the regiment in South Africa doing regimental duty, composing 'A and B' Companies, N.C.O's and men of the permanent corps and of the draft, together with some few men of various companies who had elected to remain. Of the three latter classes, I formed a third, or Provisional Company termed 'I,' and placed it under the command of Capt. A. H. Macdonell.

Having on the departure of the time-expired details, received orders to furnish garrisons for Eerste Fabricken and Silverton only; I sent 'I' Company to the latter station, placing the station under the command of Capt. Weeks, while I retained 'A' and 'B' Companies at the former station. On October 6, three companies, King's Own Scottish Borderers, relieved us at Eerste Fabricken, the two companies there, with myself, being ordered to Silverton, and to which place we marched on the 8th instant. I

64 VICTORIA, N. 1901

assumed command of that station on the same day, and we remained there until October 24, without any incident of importance.

On October 24, the Royal Canadians were relieved at Silverton by the volunteer company of the West Riding Regiment, and marched into Pretoria to take part in the annexation ceremony of the 25th, going into camp at Arcadia. On the 25th, the celebration of the annexation of the Transvaal took place, and for the purpose representative units of the army, such as the Composite Regiment of Household Cavalry, 'A' Battery, R.H.A.; Grenadier Guards, Coldstream Guards, 2nd Gordon Highlanders, Royal Irish Regiment, King's Royal Rifles, Australian Mounted Infantry, two battalions of English volunteers, Brabant's Horse and Royal Canadian Regiment, joined the Pretoria garrison.

The ceremonies consisted of reading the Proclamation of Annexation and a march past before the Field Marshal, Commander-in-Chief, Lord Roberts. In the march past I am glad to be able to report the Battalion as having done remarkably well, and to have fully held its own with the best regiments present. For the next few days the Battalion remained idle in the camp, and on October 30 received orders to entrain that night and the following morning in three parties, for the purpose of moving to Cape Town and there embarking for home via England.

By 1 p.m. of the 31st instant the last of the Battalion ('I' Company and Headquarters) had left Pretoria.

The journey to Cape Town was a most uncomfortable and tedious one; the non-commissioned officers and men being closely packed in open cattle trucks, while the trains were only permitted to run through by daylight, owing to the danger of the line being broken, until we reached Cape Colony. During the first three nights of the journey it rained heavily, and all ranks were more or less cold and wet. It was not until 6 a.m. on the morning of the 7th that we reached Cape Town, and were at once transferred to the transport *Hawarden Castle*, the strength being 12 officers and 246 non-commissioned officers and men.

The transport sailed at 5 p.m. the same day, previous to which, however, the Mayor of Cape Town, Col. Hanbury Williams, representing the High Commissioner, and three members of the Cape Colony Government, came on board to wish us *bon voyage*, and express appreciation of the services rendered by the Royal Canadian Regiment during the past twelve months.

Besides the Royal Canadians, the following troops were returning to England by the *Hawarden Castle* :—

The Composite Regiment of Household Cavalry : Consisting of one squadron each from the 1st Life Guards ; 2nd Life Guards, and Royal Horse Guards, under Lt. Col. Napier Miles.

The 'A' Battery Royal Horse Artillery, Maj. Paget, R.H.A.

The 3rd Ammunition Column—Major Findlay, R.F.A.

Before leaving Cape Town, I had been detailed to the command of the troops on board, and made the following appointments for the voyage.

Staff Officer—Capt. Ferguson, 2nd Life Guards.

Quarter Master, Lieut. Stubbs, R. H. Guards.

Principal Medical Officer, Maj. Fiset, Royal Can. Regt.

Chaplain, Capt. Knox Little, lately attached to Coldstream Guards.

The voyage to England was without any notable incident, but a most pleasant one, our association with the other troops on board being marked by the greatest possible cordiality and good feeling.

CASUALTIES.

It is with much regret that I have to refer to the casualties sustained by the battalion during its late service in South Africa. See Appendix A 7, A 8, A 9.

The large majority of these casualties occurred during the early part of what might be termed the second phase of the war, viz. :—during the months of February, March and April, 1900, and arose from the many actions at Paardeberg, and the filthy water

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

of the river Modder which had to be used by officers and men during the nine days they were in that vicinity.

Although the majority of cases of enteric and typhoid which afterwards developed can easily be traced to the use of this water, yet the marvel is that many more were not stricken from the same cause.

Of prisoners to the enemy the battalion only had six during its service.

PROLONGATION OF SERVICE.

A very important question presented itself to me in July last, viz., that of the continuation of the service of officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the battalion, should such be asked for by the Imperial authorities.

By the terms of their enlistment, the non-commissioned officers and men were to serve for six, or, if required, for twelve months, from dates varying from the 18th to the 30th October, 1899, and as their services had been required beyond the six months (18th-30th April), the conquest of the Transvaal having still to be made, I deemed it advisable, in July, to ask our Government for instructions as to the further enlistment of the non-commissioned officers and men, at the end of the twelve months, should they agree, and the Imperial authorities desire such.

On the 13th July, I accordingly wrote you, asking for a reply, and to this I received no answer until long after the matter was settled.

Learning of the strong desire of many officers and men to return to Canada by the end of twelve months, I wrote Major General Hart, under whose command the battalion then was, on the 13th August, informing him of the terms of engagement under which officers and men were serving, and that owing to the fact of many of these having business and civil employment to attend to, it was desirable arrangements should be made for their being relieved from duty and at their homes, if possible, by the 15th October.

I also, at the same time, saw Major General Hart personally upon the subject, fully explaining the position, and asking him to forward my letter to the proper authorities at once, which he promised to do.

On the 22nd August, I again saw Major General Hart upon the subject, and learned that he had not yet forwarded my letter, so I obtained it from him and sent it on myself to the Military Secretary of the Commander-in-Chief, at the same time, telegraphing a precis of it to the same officer.

No further intimation reached me in connection with the matter until early of the morning of September 8, when I received the following telegraph from the C. in C. :—

BELFAST, September 7, 1900.

‘From Lord Roberts to Col. Otter, Royal Canadian Regiment, Eerste Fabricken C 4371.—I trust that as many as possible of the Royal Canadians will prolong their service until the end of the war. They have done such gallant service, it would be a great pity for any of them to leave now that the end seems near—acknowledge.’

At this time the battalion was broken up into four distinct detachments, but I at once called those officers together who were with me at Bn. H. Qrs., read Lord Roberts’ telegram and asked for their views.

They were of unanimous opinion that the request of the Commander-in-Chief should be complied with and answered for their men remaining. I need scarcely say that such were my own views as well.

My reply to Lord Roberts’ telegram was as follows :—

EERSTE FABRICKEN, September 8, 1900.

From Lt.-Col. Otter, Commanding Royal Canadian Regiment,
To Lord Roberts, Belfast.

‘Reply to your telegram C 4371 of yesterday, your wishes will gladly be complied with,—would ask permission for one or two officers and a few men whose cases are urgent to be given leave to return at once.’

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Following the despatch of this last telegram I at once issued a regimental order embodying both telegrams, which was despatched without delay to the different stations occupied by the battalion, and promulgated on parade to the two companies ('A' and 'B') then at battalion headquarters.

Lord Roberts replied to mine of September 8, as follows :—

BELFAST, 11.15 a.m., September 9, 1900.

From Lord Roberts to Col. Otter, Eestse Fabricken.

'C 4437. Many thanks for your very satisfactory reply. By all means give leave to one or two officers and few men whose cases are urgent to return at once.'

About 9.30 p.m., of the same day (September 9) the following reached me from the O. C. L. of C. Pretoria-Middleburg.

MIDDLEBURG, 4.30 p.m., Sept. 9, 1900.

From Col. Barker to O. C. Royal Canadians, Eerste Fabricken.

'416 War Office wires all men of Canadian regiment engaged to serve one year' whose services expire in October, and who do not voluntarily extend their services, are to be sent to Canada as soon as possible. Please ascertain and report to me by telegraph number of officers and number of men of your regiment who wish to proceed to Canada under this order, and, secondly, the number who desire to remain for further service in South Africa. Information required under both heads for the regiment under your command now at Elandsfontein, Silverton, Eerste Fabricken and Olifants River. Repeated—Elandsfontein, Silverton, Eerste Fabricken and Olifants river.'

This last telegram you will notice was sent direct to the several stations at which the battalion was distributed, and would arrive about the same time that the regimental orders previously alluded to.

In the face of Lord Roberts' message of Sept. 7 to me, I could not understand that from the O. C. L. of C. just quoted.

At noon on Sept. 10, Lord Roberts himself arrived on his way to Pretoria and again expressed his gratification with the action of the regiment, at the same time adding that different action on its part would likely have caused other Colonial corps to withdraw.

I then showed him the telegram I had just received from the O. C. L. of C., which I feared was likely to confuse and upset his wishes.

To this he replied that the telegram should never have been sent us, and at once directed an A.D.C. to go and cancel it, which was done.

On Sept. 11, I cabled you the action I had taken in reply to Lord Roberts' request and asked if there were any orders, and to this received your reply on Sept. 18, that there was no objection to all, or part, of the battalion continuing its services.

On Sept. 11 and 12, I received strong representations from the O. C., 'C' 'E' 'F' 'G', and 'H' Companies stationed at Silverton, Olifants river, and the Armoured train, that their men were decidedly adverse to prolonging their services and claimed their discharge in Canada at the end of the period of their enlistment.

In the face of such facts there seemed nothing left for me but to withdraw my telegram of Sept. 8 to Lord Roberts, which I accordingly did on Sept. 13 as given below :—

EERSTE FABRICKEN, Sept. 13, 1900.

From Lt.-Col. Otter, Commanding Royal Canadian Regiment, to Lord Roberts, Commander-in-Chief, Mafeking.

"Referring to your C 4371 of 7th inst., regret to inform you that owing to fear of loss of employment, or business, the large majority of officers and men of Royal Canadian Regiment feel they cannot, with justice to themselves or families, re-engage for further service in this country, and desire their discharge in Canada on Oct. 15

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

next, in accordance with terms of engagement, and I must therefore ask that such may be done if possible. In replying to your request on 8th inst., I fear my own zeal led me to judge too hurriedly of that of my officers and men under the peculiar circumstances of their cases, and I deeply regret having misled you."

On the same day I received the following:—

MACHADADORP, 9.50 p.m., Sept. 13, 1900.

From Lord Roberts to Lt.-Col. Otter, Commanding R. C. Regiment.

"C 4593. I much regret the decision which the officers and men of the R. C. Regt. have come to. It is unlikely that their services would be required much longer, and their going away now will prevent them taking part in the annexation ceremony I hope to hold at Pretoria, and being present at the parade I understand Her Majesty contemplates honouring by her presence on the return of the troops that have taken part in this war. If on receipt of this you inform me that the officers and men still wish to return to Canada, the necessary transport arrangements will be made."

This telegram I at once promulgated by wire to the different stations, asking for a reply as soon as possible, and by the 15th, I had received information from the several companies of their determination, which I chronicle below:—

Eerste Fabricken	{	"A" Coy., Captain Burstall.	{	will prolong service.
		"B" " Lieut. Mason.		
Olifants River	{	"C" " Captain Barker.	{	Unanimous desire to return
" "		"E" " " Fraser.		to Canada.
		"F" " Lieut. Le Duc.		
Armoured Train	{	"G" " " Jones.	{	Men will not enlist for longer
				service.
Silverton.	{	"D" " " Lawless.	{	Ten men will prolong service,
				remainder desire to return.
"	{	"H" " Captain Stairs.	{	Only three men will agree
				to prolong their service.

On September 15, I wired the Commander in Chief as under:—

"EESTRE FABRICKEN, September 15, 1900.

"From Lt.-Col. Otter Commanding Royal Canadian Regiment to Lord Roberts, Machadadorp."

"Reply to your C 4593 of 13th inst., about 300 N.C.O. and men R. C. Regiment with proportion of Officers under my command will gladly prolong service till end of war. The remainder regret that for reasons already stated must ask for return to Canada in shortest time possible."

I should in connection with this last telegram state that A. & B. Co.'s. alone did not make up 300, but I did not think it advisable to include the N.C.O. and men of the Permanent Corps, or the draft, in the list of those returning, as their term of service did not expire for some time.

I should also report that many of the Officers belonging to the Companies returning to Canada wished to remain, but this I could not allow, as their services were required with those leaving South Africa, and there were not sufficient N.C.O. and men remaining to need them.

On September 16, I received the following telegram:—

"MACHADADORP, September 16, 1900."

"From Lord Roberts to Lt.-Col. Otter, Eerste Fabricken."

"C 4693,—I am very glad to see that 300 of the R. C. Regiment under your own command will continue service to end of war. Early arrangements will be made for

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

despatching those who have decided to return to Canada. Telegraph to D.A.G. Pretoria full particulars and numbers by ranks of those returning."

The arrangements above referred to were duly made and on October 1, 17 officers and 385 N.C.O. and men of the battalion sailed from Cape Town for Canada on ss. Idaho.

CONTRIBUTIONS.

Of the intense interest taken in the battalion by friends and the public generally, ample evidence was given from its very inception, as a large sum of money was placed in my hands for the comforts and necessities before sailing from Quebec, and these were largely augmented from time to time during our service.

Besides money, numerous consignments of underclothing, beef tea, tobacco, &c., were continually being forwarded to us from different parts of Canada, as well as from England, Scotland and Germany. Of the donors many were known to us, yet not a few were total strangers, who desired, as they expressed it, to show their appreciation of Canada's action in sending troops to the assistance of the mother country.

All the money received was expended for the benefit of officers and men, and I attach, as appendix "A 10," an abstract of the cash statement, rendered by me to the donors on my return to Canada.

Of the articles sent, many, I regret to say, failed to reach us, through the exigencies of war, but those that fortunately came into our hands, were at once distributed, gratefully received, and fully appreciated.

I attach as appendix "A 11," a list of the donors, whose consignments I was apprised of as having been despatched to us.

POSTAL AND TELEGRAPHIC COMMUNICATION.

Considerable difficulty and inconvenience was experienced throughout the campaign in connection with the postal and telegraphic services, but to anyone on the spot with a knowledge of the difficulties that arose in keeping open the long lines of communication, surprise at the inefficiency of these services does not present itself.

One heard of confusion in the general post office at Cape Town, but such did not in any way affect Canadians, as owing to the very efficient staff sent to South Africa by the Post Office Department of Canada under Capt. Ecclestone, all mail matter for the Royal Canadian Regiment was at once got together at Cape Town by this staff, sorted into companies, and sent up the country specially labelled, and rendered easy of distribution.

Efficient clerks from this same staff were located at Bloemfontein, Pretoria, and other points, having local knowledge of the distribution of the battalion, and thus ensuring as early and accurate delivery as was possible.

BASE STOREHOUSE.

The want of a proper storehouse at the base was very much felt, and though late in the campaign we were enabled to arrange for such at Bloemfontein and Cape Town, yet it was a case of "shutting the door after the steed was stolen," as by that time both officers and men had lost many articles of value from the places named.

On landing at Cape Town, the battalion had to leave the second day following its arrival, and therefore the officers' baggage, and valises and kit-bags of N.C.O.'s and men, which were ordered to be left there, had to be placed in one large storehouse with those of other corps, and to which almost indiscriminate admission appears to have been given with the result already stated.

STAFF EMPLOY OF OFFICERS.

It may be interesting to record in connection with the services of the battalion in South Africa, the fact that many of its officers were selected for staff employment,

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

which is evidence of the intelligence and capability possessed by them. Below I submit a tabulated list of those obtaining such appointments :—

- Lt.-Col. Lawrence Buchan—Commandant of Convalescents, at Elandsfontein for three months, from August 1 to October 31.
- Major J. C. MacDougall—D. A. A. C. for railways at Cape Town for seven months from April 15 to November 15.
- Major S. A. Denison—A. D. C. to F. M. Roberts C. in C. for ten months, from February 1 to November 30.
- Capt. W. A. Weeks—Commissioner and Station Commandant L. of C. for six weeks, from June 15.
- Capt. D. Stuart—Commandant base depots at Cape Town and Bloemfontein for three months, January, February and April and still employed.
- Capt. S. M. Rogers—Commandant Canadian Depot at Cape Town for one month—September.
- Capt. H. B. Stairs—Station Commandant, L. of C. at Boksburgh and Silverton, for three months, from June 17 to August 2, and September 1 to 20.
- Lieut. H. A. Panet—Station S. O., L. of C., Belmont, for two weeks, from January 13.
- " J. H. C. Ogilvy—Staff and Intelligence Officer, L. of C., June 15 to August 1, and September 1 to 30. Remained in South Africa as D. A. A. G. to General Smith-Dorrien's column, from November 1 ; still employed.
- " A. E. Hodgins—In charge of Construction Imperial Mil. Railway, from June 10, 1900, and still employed.
- " C. J. Armstrong—In charge of Construction Imperial Military Railway, June 10, 1900, and still employed.
- " A. C. Caldwell—In charge of maps, Cape Town, for seven months, from April 1 to Oct. 31.
- " S. P. Layborn—Supply Officer to Cavalry Division in the Field, from February 1 to August.
- " F. D. Lafferty—Railway Staff Officer, L. of C. at Springs and Eerste Fabricken for three months, from June 15 to August 2, and August 25 to October 10.
- " C. W. W. McLean—A. D. C. to General Sir Henry Colville for two months, February and March.
- Surg. Major C. W. Wilson—Medical Officer, L. of C. at Belmont for December, 1899, and January, 1900.
- Surg. Capt. E. Fiset—Medical Officer, L. of C., Klip River and Myerton, July 15 to September 15.

COMMISSIONS IN IMPERIAL ARMY.

During the month of April, 1900, it was notified through Army Orders that a number of Commissions in the Imperial Army would be granted to officers, N. C. officers and men of Colonial Corps, upon the recommendation of Field Marshal Lord Roberts, and officers commanding were asked to forward applications for such, at once.

Many applications were made from the Royal Canadians, some of which were ultimately withdrawn, but the following have been actually notified to me as appointed, with instructions to join the corps named.

There are I believe, one or two others, but official notice of their appointment never reached me.

No.	Rank.	Name.	Corps transferred to.	Date.
	Lieut.	McLean, C. W. W.	Ryl. Fld. Artillery	9, 4, 1900
	"	Pelletier, E. A.	6th Emmiskillen Dragoons	23, 6, 1900
7345	Pte.	Hendrie, M.	2nd Dragoon Guards	6, 1900
7090	"	Patterson, W. O.	East Lancashire	12, 9, 1900
7540	Sergt.	Ross, A. L.	2nd Lan. Fusiliers	9, 1900
7037	Pte.	Crooke, M.	4th Ryl. Warwicks	15, 10, 1900
7364	Cpl.	McGee, G. K.	Royal Field Artillery	17, 10, 1900
7253	Pte.	Whigham, R. D.	1st Lan. Fusiliers	10, 1900
7027	L. Cpl.	Campbell, R. B.	2nd Duke of Cornwall L. I.	31, 10, 1900

DISCHARGES.

The following Non Com. Officers and men applied for, and obtained their discharges in South Africa in accordance with the authority that had been given me for so doing.

No.	Rank.	Name.	Where Discharged.	Date.
7685	Pte.	Robarts, G. P.	Silverton, Transvaal	22, 10, 1900
7076	"	Moodie, W. H.	"	22, 10, 1900
7719	"	Doucet, R. P.	"	22, 10, 1900
7876	L. Cpl.	McNeill, J. D.	"	23, 10, 1900
8179	Pte.	Tierney, G. Y.	"	23, 10, 1900
7566	"	Dalberg, R. P.	Pretoria,	31, 10, 1900
7415	"	Playfair, S. B.	"	31, 10, 1900
7017	"	Andrews, H.	"	31, 10, 1900
7005	Cpl.	Fowle, W. T.	Capetown, to remain in S. A.	7, 11, 1900
7525	Pte.	Mallock, E., St. J.	"	7, 11, 1900
7519	"	Morrison, C. R.	"	7, 11, 1900
7414	"	Wallbridge, G.	"	7, 11, 1900
7706	"	Walters, J. H.	"	7, 11, 1900

MISSING.

I am glad to say that there are no ‘missing’ to report. Every Officer, N. C. O. and man that joined the Battalion being accounted for.

COMMENDATORY MESSAGES.

It may not be amiss in this report to refer to the many messages received in South Africa by the Battalion during its recent campaign, as evidence of the commendation with which its services were viewed by those in authority, and the public generally.

From The Right Hon. Sir Wilfred Laurier, K.C.M.G.,
Premier of the Dominion of Canada,
Dated February 22, 1900.

‘To Lt. Col. Otter’
‘Royal Canadian Regiment,’
‘South Africa.’

“I desire to convey to you and your men the grateful thanks of the Government
“and Parliament of the Dominion for the gallantry displayed on the battlefield.
“Canada warmly appreciates the sacrifice made by Her sons for the honour of the Em-

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

“pire. The wounded have our sympathy, and our prayers for speedy recovery.
“Those who have given up their lives will ever be held in remembrance by a grateful
“people.”

From Lord Strathcona, High Commissioner of Canada.

Received March 1, 1900.

“Hearty congratulations on having nobly maintained Canadian reputation for gallantry; deep sympathy.”

Messages published in Army Orders, March 1, 1900, as having been received by F. M. Lord Roberts, C. in C., after surrender of General Cronje.

From Her Majesty the Queen.

“Congratulations upon splendid news.”

From Her Majesty's Government.

“Congratulations upon great and opportune achievement.”

From H.R.H. the Prince of Wales.

“Sincerest congratulations.”

From F.M. Viscount Wolseley, C. in C.

“Congratulations with all my heart.”

From H.R.H. the Duke of Connaught.

“Heartiest congratulations to you and your gallant troops.”

From Colonel Ivor Herbert, C.B., late G.O.C., Canadian Militia.

Received March 1, 1900.

“Accept heartiest congratulations of your old C.O., on the brilliant achievement of Royal Canadians, which is what he expected.”

From the Mayor of St. John, N.B.

Received March 1, 1900.

“St. John proud of her boys and Royal Canadian Regiment; sympathy for wounded; regret the dead.”

From the Mayor of Rossland, B.C.

Received March 1, 1900.

“Heartiest congratulations; sympathy for losses.”

From F.M. Lord Wolseley, Commander-in-Chief, London.

Received March 3, 1900.

“Please convey to Royal Canadian Regiment, of which I am Colonel, my high appreciation of their gallant conduct in the operations which have led to General Cronje's surrender.”

From the Montreal Stock Exchange.

Received March 3, 1900.

“Our hearty congratulations to the gallant Canadians.”

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

From High Schools, Montreal.

Received March 3, 1900.

“Warmest congratulations to Royal Canadians.”

From President, Legislative Council and the Speaker, House of Assembly on behalf of the Legislature of Nova Scotia.

Received March 3, 1900.

“We convey to you, and the bravest sons of Canada under your command, our admiration for distinguished gallantry displayed, reflecting as it does, high honour upon the country. Canada is proud of her sons, while she deeply mourns the brave who have fallen.”

From the Secretary of State for the Colonies.

Received March 6, 1900.

“Canada and the Empire have cause for pride in the achievement of the Royal Canadian Regiment. The announcement of their gallantry has been enthusiastically received in parliament and everywhere. We send hearty congratulations while deploring casualties.”

From the Mayor of Petrolia, Ontario.

Received March 6, 1900.

“Petrolia congratulates Royal Canadian Regiment. Great deed has thrilled Empire. Canada glories in you.”

From the Mayor of Vancouver, B.C.

Received March 6, 1900.

“Vancouver rejoices.”

From Chairman, Canadian School Board, Toronto.

Received March 6, 1900.

“School Board, representing 30,000 children, teachers and officials, are proud of Canadian soldiers.”

From Toronto Stock Exchange.

Received March 6, 1900.

“Heartiest appreciation Canadian pluck and success : ” sympathy with wounded.

From Brigade Orders by G. O. C. 19th Brigade, 9th Division.

Dated March 8, at Poplar Grove.

“The Major General Commanding, wishes all ranks of the Brigade he has the honour to command, to understand how thoroughly he appreciates the spirit and zeal shown by them since the brigade assembled at Gras Pan on February 12. All have been called upon for extraordinary exertion, and have had to undergo forced marches, short rations, great wettings, lack of water and sleep, as well as severe and trying fighting, concluding with an extremely arduous flank march yesterday of some twenty miles.

“It will be gratifying to them to know that yesterday’s march turned the Boer positions, enables the Highland Brigade to advance direct on the enemy’s trenches with-

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

out opposition, and further caused the retirement of a large force of mounted men and guns from the Black Kopje which force had held the Mounted Infantry at bay on the left flank of the Brigade in check throughout the morning.

"It will be gratifying to all to know that, thanks to the untiring energy shown by every one, the 19th Brigade has established a high name for itself, which the Major General feels sure, all will do their utmost to maintain.

From H. E. the Governor General of Canada.

Received March 6, 1900.

"Please give regiment my sincere congratulations on its success and gallantry. Deeply deplore losses."

From Ladies Red Cross Society of Toronto.

Received March 9, 1900.

"Proud of Canadians."

From Royal Military College Club, Ottawa.

Received March 9, 1900.

"Extend hearty congratulations to Canadians."

From Montreal Amateur Athletic Association.

Received March 9, 1900.

"Thousand members assembled to-night ; congratulate Canadian comrades."

From Montreal Board of Trade.

Received March 10, 1900.

"Public meeting, Montreal Board of Trade sends greetings to your command."

From Board of Directors and Staff Toronto Globe.

Received March 10, 1900.

"Congratulate you on splendid work ; sympathy for losses."

From the United Societies of St George, St. Andrew, and Irish Protestant Benevolent of Toronto.

Dated March 9, 1900.

"The Englishmen, Scotchmen and Irishmen of the above societies of Toronto have read with pride of the gallantry, bravery and heroism, displayed by the Royal Canadian Regiment in recent engagements in South Africa.

"At the same time, we deeply regret that so many of our brave soldiers have lost their lives, or been wounded. We heartily congratulate you with your officers and men upon your glorious victory, and with the rest of the British Empire, expressing our admiration for the work of the first Canadian contingent."

From Major General Smith-Dorrien to Major General Ian Hamilton.

April 25, 1900.

"I never yet asked Otter and his Canadians to do anything that was not satisfactorily performed."

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

From F. M. Lord Roberts, C. in C.

May 5, 1900.

"Lord Roberts desires to express his high appreciation of the work recently performed by all ranks in the Winburg Column." (Major General Ian Hamilton C.B., and of which the Royal Canadian Regiment formed a part.)

From Batoche Column, (N.W.F.F.) Association.

Received May 16, 1900.

"Congratulations gallantry of Canadians."

From F. M. Lord Roberts, C. in C. to Major General Ian Hamilton, C.B.

May 31, 1900.

"I am delighted at your successes, and grieved beyond measure at your poor fellows being without rations. A train full shall go to you to-morrow. I expect to get notice that Johannesburg surrendered this morning, and we shall then march into town. I wish your column, which has done so much to gain possession of it, could be with us."

From Brigade Orders of 19th Brigade at Pretoria.

June 5, 1900.

"The 19th Brigade has achieved a record of which any infantry might be proud. Since the date it was formed, (Feb. 12, 1900) it has marched 620 miles, often on half rations, and seldom on full. It has taken part in the capture of ten towns. Fought in ten general engagements, and on 27 other days. In one period of 30 days, it fought on 21 of them, and marched 327 miles."

From Major General Smith-Dorrien, Koomatipoort,

October 5, 1900.

"No words can express my disappointment at not seeing you and your gallant corps again before you leave. Please say 'good bye' to all ranks. Wish them from me great good luck, and tell them I feel any credit I may have gained in this war, I shall owe largely to the splendid way the Royal Canadians served me.

I shall always hope for the time when I may have the honor of commanding them again. There are no finer or more gallant troops in all the world."

From F. M. Lord Roberts, C. in C., Johannesburg.

November 4, 1900.

"I much regret not having an opportunity of seeing the Royal Canadian Regiment before it left Pretoria. Please say 'good bye' for me to all Officers, N.C. O's and men.

I am very proud to have had the Regiment under my command, and I shall always remember the good service it did in South Africa, especially at Paardeberg on February 27, 1900. I wish I could be in London to join you in the warm welcome I am sure the regiment will receive from the grateful English nation."

VISIT TO ENGLAND.

On Nov. 29 we reached Southampton at 9.30 a.m., some 24 hours later than expected. At 11.30 a.m. the same day the battalion disembarked, and was met by Maj.-Gen. Stewart, commanding the southern district, who welcomed us in a very spirited and stirring speech, after which we entrained at the dock, and were steaming out of the

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

station for London by noon. A quick run of two hours brought us to the Addison Road Station, Kensington at 2 p.m., and we found there waiting us His Grace the Duke of Abercorn, and Earl Grey, chairman and vice-chairman respectively of the Colonial Entertainment Committee, Lord Onslow, Under Secretary of State for the Colonies; Lord Strathcona, High Commissioner for Canada; J. G. Colmer, Esq., C. M. G., Secretary to High Commissioner for Canada; Colonel Lake, late Quarter Master General, Canada, Major General Trotter, commanding Home district, and many others who extended to us the most kindly and hearty welcome. His Grace then informed me that we were to be the guests of the Colonial Troops Entertainment Committee, the non-commissioned officers and men being provided for at the Kensington Barracks, which had been vacated for the time by the Coldstream Guards, and the officers at the Royal Palace Hotel, Kensington, closely adjoining. He also gave me a schedule of the proposed inspections and entertainments, which had been arranged for the ten days of our stay in London, a copy of which I beg to attach. The battalion having detrained, marched to the Kensington Barracks, accompanied by an escort of the Royal Horse Guards, and headed by the band of the Coldstream Guards. The streets through which we passed were packed with people, who cheered us in the most enthusiastic manner.

Arriving at the barracks, Major General Trotter officially welcomed us to his command, and referred in the kindest terms to the services of the regiment.

The men were then told off to their rooms, and we found that every care had been taken for our comfort, even to the provision of a staff of cooks and waiters, etc., leaving us with no duties to perform, save that of a small regimental guard. That evening, the non-commissioned officers and men were kept in barracks, in order that they might clean their things ready for next day's parade, of which I had been given notice.

A decided change in the weather from cloud and rain to a bright sun took place on Friday, the 30th November, when the battalion paraded at 9.30 a.m., and marched to Addison Road Station, where it entrained for Windsor, arriving there at 11 a.m. We were met by the Mayor and corporation of the borough at the station, and heartily welcomed. Headed by the band of the Grenadier Guards, we marched to Windsor Castle, amid the hearty cheers of the citizens, and at 11.45 a.m. we received Her Majesty in the quadrangle with a royal salute. I was then sent for by Her Majesty, who in a few words expressed her pleasure at seeing us, and asked most kindly after the sick and wounded. The battalion then marched past in fours, and formed quarter column in front of the royal carriage with the officers in review order. Her Majesty then spoke to the battalion, expressing her thanks for their services in South Africa, and regret for the losses sustained in that campaign. I replied in a few words expressive of our delight at being permitted to serve the Empire in such a way, and then called for "three cheers" for Her Majesty the Queen, which you can easily imagine were given in the most hearty and enthusiastic manner possible. I then took the opportunity, at Her Majesty's request, of presenting the officers of the battalion and Private Armstrong, Royal Canadian Dragoons, who had lost his leg in action, and who had accompanied us to Windsor. Her Majesty then drove to the entrance gate of the quadrangle, and witnessed the battalion again march past in fours, on their way to the Riding School, where arms were piled. All ranks were then taken through the State apartments by Lord Edward Clinton, Comptroller of the Household, and Lieutenant-Colonel Legge, the Equerry in Waiting. A photograph was then taken of the officers and men on the east terrace. At 1.30 the non-commissioned officers and men were given dinner in the Riding School, while the officers were entertained to luncheon in the Castle, at which Lord Edward Clinton, Lady Downe, lady-in-waiting, Lieutenant-Colonel Legge and several ladies of the household were present. I should also mention that Her Majesty gave permission for us to visit the Mausoleum at Frogmore, but unfortunately time did not admit of our taking advantage of this, which was a special privilege. At 3 p.m. the Guards band played the battalion to the station through even more enthusiastic crowds of people than had received us, and we returned by train to London, and marched into the barracks. In the evening brakes were provided, which took officers and men to and from various theatres, and myself, with Lieutenant Colonel Buchan and Captain Maedonell, Acting Adjutant, had the honour of dining with Her Majesty at Windsor Castle.

I do not propose to give in detail our movements each day during the remainder of our visit to England, as you will find that specified in my diary, and the programme which accompanies this report, but will simply refer to a few of the more important events.

On Saturday, December 1, amongst the many other things provided for us was an official reception by the Lord Mayor and Sheriffs of London at the Guild-Hall in state, when the former delivered an address to us embodying his pleasure, as Chief Magistrate of the city, in giving us welcome, and referring at length to our services in conjunction with the other colonies during the late campaign. To this I replied, and the proceedings ended.

On Sunday, December 4, the battalion was taken to the morning service at Westminster Abbey, where Canon Wilberforce preached a most eloquent and patriotic sermon in connection with the services rendered by the colonies in South Africa.

The special feature on Monday, December 3, was the inspection of the battalion by H. R. H. the Prince of Wales, at Albany Street Barracks, in conjunction with the service squadrons of the Household Cavalry. At this inspection were present H. R. H. the Prince of Wales, their R. H. the Duke and Duchess of York, H. R. H. Prince Edward of Saxe-Weimar, H. R. H. the Duke of Cambridge, Field Marshal Lord Wolseley, General Sir Evelyn Wood, General Lord Chelmsford, the Secretary of State for War, General Sir Richard Harrison, and many other prominent people. His Royal Highness first inspected the Household Cavalry, and then the Royal Canadian Regiment. The latter he addressed after his inspection in a most kind and hearty manner, giving them a cordial welcome to England, and expressing the appreciation of the nation with their services. Previous to the inspection, the officers of the corps were presented to His Royal Highness, and had luncheon with him at the invitation of Lt.-Col. Sir A. Nield, and officers of the 2nd Life Guards.

On Tuesday, December 5, the battalion went to Portsmouth under Lieut.-Col. Buchan, and there received a most hearty welcome from the Mayor and corporation of that place, as well as by Admiral Sir A. Hotham, K.C.B., commanding the station, and many officers of the Royal Navy.

A tour was made through the dockyard, and over one of each of the several classes of war vessels lying in the harbour. A visit was also made to the Whale Island, where the sailors and marines there quartered, turned out for inspection, and cheered us enthusiastically.

On Wednesday, the 6th, the Houses of the Parliament were visited, and addresses of welcome and appreciation made by the Marquis of Lansdowne, Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, formerly Governor General of Canada; the Earl of Aberdeen, also a former Governor General; the Right Hon. Joseph Chamberlain, Secretary of State for the Colonies, and Colonel Sir Howard Vincent, M.P., and to which I felt it incumbent to make short replies. Officers and men were conducted through both Houses. In the House of Peers, Lord Lansdowne, acting as guide, while in the Commons, Mr. Chamberlain performed a similar duty.

Proceeding from the Houses of Parliament, the officers and men were taken to Kensington Palace, and there entertained by Her Royal Highness the Princess Louise and the Duke of Argyll, to luncheon. All sat down to table in the Banqueting Hall of this old palace, and after luncheon the Duke of Argyll addressed the battalion, expressing the delight of Her Royal Highness and himself at seeing the officers and men present. He also referred with great pleasure to his former connections with Canada. I made a short reply, and called for "three cheers" for our hosts, which were loyally given. The Duke expressing his desire to hear a Canadian song, Sergeant McHarg of "A" Company sang "The Land of the Maple," in capital form, the remainder of us giving a hearty chorus. We were then taken over the palace, Her Royal Highness taking great pains in showing us its many objects of interest. In the evening the officers were entertained at dinner by the Canada Club, which was presided over by Lord Strathcona. This dinner was a most pleasant one, being attended by most of the Canadians in London, and many others having connection with Canada. Lord Strathcona, after

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

dinner, proposed the health of the Royal Canadian Regiment in a most full and comprehensive manner; this was most enthusiastically toasted, and I replied.

On Thursday a few went to Brighton on invitation, and Friday, the 7th, a large proportion of officers and men were taken to Woolwich, and there shown over the Arsenal. The band of the Royal Artillery heading the battalion in its march to and from that place. Luncheon was served to those taking advantage of the trip. In the evening a dinner was given to officers and men by the Mayor and Corporation of the Borough of Kensington in its town hall, after which followed a most enjoyable "sing-song." The special feature of this entertainment was the interest shown in the battalion, not only by our hosts, but also by the Major-General Trotter, and the officers of the first Grenadier Guards who attended it in a body.

On Saturday, 8th inst., two very interesting and pleasant functions fell to our lot. The first an "At Home" given by Lord and Lady Strathcona at the Imperial Institute, and to which the officers and men of the battalion were invited, together with Canadians from all parts of the Kingdom. Fully a thousand people were present, and the afternoon was spent most pleasantly amongst our own particular people. Our astonishment was great in finding so many Canadians present, many of whom were known to us, either in person or by name, while our pleasure was increased by learning of the satisfaction with which they, as Canadians, one and all, looked upon the services that we have been able to render the Empire in South Africa. Lord Strathcona, himself, addressed those present, expressing his delight at being able to bring about such a happy re-union, to which I replied.

The second—a dinner given to the officers by the Earl and Countess of Aberdeen, at which nothing could exceed the kindness and attention of our hosts on this occasion.

On Sunday, the 9th, the officers and a number of the men were taken to St. Paul's Cathedral, after which officers and men paraded at the barracks, at the request of the Earl and Countess of Aberdeen in order that they might personally see and speak to us. Lord Aberdeen expressed his great delight with the course taken by Canada in the South African war, and his appreciation of the services rendered by the corps. He also referred to his happy period of administration in Canada, and fervently wished us "God speed," and a happy return to that country.

On Monday, 10th, the battalion paraded at 7 a.m., marched to the Addison Road Station and entrained for Liverpool, leaving at 8.10 a.m. Lord Strathcona, Mr. Colmer and many other Canadians seeing us off. Having many matters to attend to in connection with the pay, clothing, etc., of the men, I was unable to leave London with the battalion, which went under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Buchan. That officer informs me that the reception received in the streets of Liverpool was simply marvellous in its enthusiasm and expression of good feeling. The Court of Assize adjourned in order to welcome the battalion as it passed St. George's Hall. The Lord Mayor and Aldermen officially received it at the town hall. It was entertained at a banquet at which the Lord Mayor presided at the city hall, and the climax was reached in the "Exchange," where the members of which seemed to have gone wild with enthusiasm.

The steamer "Lake Champlain," having arrived late from Canada was not ready to receive the battalion, and consequently it was embarked on "The Ems," another vessel of the same line for the night and following day.

Leaving London on the 11th, I arrived at Liverpool early on the morning of the 12th, and finding the "Lake Champlain" now ready, the battalion was transferred to her from the "Ems" at 10 a.m. The Lord Mayor and Lord Bishop of Liverpool, with numbers of our friends came down to the steamer at 11 a.m., when the two former addressed the officers and men, expressive of their pleasure at having been able to demonstrate the feeling of the city of Liverpool towards Canada and Canadians, and wishing them a safe and happy return to their homes. Cheers were given by us for all our friends in Liverpool, and at 12 noon the steamer left the landing stage. Thousands of people filled the stages and lined the docks, cheering vociferously as the steamer moved down the river.

In connection with our visit to England, I should like to add a few more words. First, to enlarge upon the extreme kindness, in fact, I might say, heartfelt gratitude and

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

pleasure exhibited by all people in the United Kingdom, with whom we came in contact. Words cannot express the kindness and enthusiasm with which we were everywhere received. Her Majesty, and the members of the Royal Family were profuse in their acknowledgments of the stand taken by Canada in support of the Empire, while the President and members of the 'Colonial Troops Entertainment Committee,' the Lord Mayors of London and Liverpool, the Mayors of Kensington, Portsmouth and Brighton, with their respective Corporations, together with all the individuals we met, were lavish in their desire to do us honour, and make our visit pleasant and profitable.

Similar were the efforts of the Parliamentary and Military Authorities, the Duke of Argyll, the Marquis of Lansdowne and the Earl and Countess of Aberdeen. The Rt. Hon. Joseph Chamberlain, M.P., Earl Grey, Lord Onslow, Lord Tweedmouth, Col. Sir Howard Vincent, M.P., Gilbert Parker, Esq., M.P., Lt.-Col. Lee, M.P., Col. Mackinnon, late Grenadier Guards, and C.I.V.; while the High Commissioner for Canada, Lord Strathcona, the Secretary, Mr. Colmer, Mr. Duff-Miller, Agent-General for New Brunswick, and hosts of other Canadian friends were in constant association with us in their endeavour to supply our wants, and assist in our enjoyment.

Secondly, I should like to bear testimony to the conduct of the Officers, N.C.O.'s, and men of the Battalion, upon which must have been the most trying moment of their lives. Amid the hundreds of temptations that were thrust upon us by our enthusiastically kind friends, it became a most difficult matter to refuse without offence the invitations to conviviality, which naturally seemed a part of such demonstrations. I am glad to record, however, that with one or two exceptions, all ranks had the strength of mind to resist—remembering that they were representatives of Canada, and as such, had a reputation at stake. The consensus of opinion many times expressed to me by those who saw a great deal of us, was that the appearance and behaviour of all ranks in public, was most creditable.

VOYAGE TO CANADA.

The SS. *Lake Champlain*, of the Beaver line, left Liverpool at noon of the 12th December, and soon after officers and men had settled into their quarters. These were found to be most comfortable, the officers having first class, and the N. C. O.'s and men second class accommodation, while in the matter of food nothing was left to be desired. The passage out was rather slow, owing to head winds and a heavy sea, and it was not till the morning of the 23rd that we reached Halifax.

The N. C. O.'s and men were at once paid off, received their discharges, and entrained for their respective homes.

CONCLUDING REMARKS.

In closing this report, I should like to refer briefly to two more subjects, viz:—1st Our relations with other corps. 2nd. The services of officers, N. C. officers and men.

During our many months of service we naturally came into contact, and often close relations, with many corps, both of the regular army, and Colonial units like ourselves, and such associations, I am glad to say, were always of the most pleasant description.

Of our comrades in the 19th brigade every one of us retain the most affectionate remembrance, and it is a curious fact that the first three battalions that we met during our initial week at the front were destined to become closely and intimately connected with us for months afterwards.

On reaching DeAar, on December 3, we there found the Cornwalls, who at once placed their transport at our disposal, and assisted us to make our first camp.

At Orange River, a few days afterwards, we came upon the Shropshires, who were equally kind to us during our stay there, and very soon we met the Gordons, with whom a friendship began that is not likely ever to be forgotten.

For months the Gordons and Royal Canadians lay night after night in adjoining bivouacs, and day after day trudged over the veldt next one another, the result of which was a mutual bond of confidence and sympathy.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

In my special reports of battles I have referred by name to officers, N. C. O.'s and men, who at the time came prominently under my own notice, or were specially reported to me for conspicuous conduct, but it must not be thought that such only rendered good and gallant service to the battalion or to the Empire. These were only the lucky ones who happened to be in prominent places, while hundreds of others, not so fortunate, did their duty, and often more, silently and quietly, but none the less efficiently and courageously. Numberless cases of this description are personally known to me, such as the indomitable pluck of Lieut. Mason, who, still suffering from a severe wound, forced his way to the front and took part in the battalion's last series of marches: Lieut. Lafferty, in the dull drudgery of transport officer, who, through his untiring energy and intelligence, coupled with the good care of his mules, always had his wagons into bivouac before any others; and No. 7552, Private R. R. Thompson, whose bravery on February 18 and 27, earned him the distinction of receiving one of the four Queen's scarfs, presented by Her Majesty to Colonial corps.

To add more would entail a list so long as to render the distinction commonplace, so I refrain, yet desire to emphasize in the strongest possible manner, the courage, enthusiasm and endurance displayed by those under my command throughout the campaign, feeling assured that my humble opinion will be fully endorsed by all under whom, or with whom, the Second Royal Canadian Regiment served in South Africa.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. D. OTTER, *Colonel,*

Late Commanding 2nd Royal Canadian Regiment.



PAARDEBERG

ACTION OF 20th FEBRUARY 1900

SHOWING DISPOSITION OF XIX BRIGADE

SCALE 6 IN TO 1 MILE
1 IN = 10 FEET

From

batta

19th
batta

left,
office
and
This
river
here
rema
the
tjnu
reser
to th

occu
Shro

on t
bay
carr
furth
wood

15 p

of tl
of tl

a te
the
selv
in t
ope
wou
tren
'D
tion

rear

ene

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

APPENDIX A 2.

From the Officer Commanding 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, to the Chief Staff Officer of Militia, Ottawa, Canada.

PAARDEBERG, February 27, 1900.

SIR,—I have the honour to report upon the operations upon which the battalion under my command was engaged on the 20th inst., on which occasion four men of the corps were wounded.

Following the retirement of the enemy from the position, which he withdrew from on the evening of the 18th inst., the battalion was at 6 A.M. of the 20th inst. detached from the outpost line, and advanced to within 1,000 yards of the trenches in front of the Boer laager, the Shropshire Light Infantry being on our right, the Gordon Highlanders on our left.

The ground occupied by the battalion was quite open, and slightly rolling, but fairly covered with ant hills.

The men were served with tea and biscuits about 10 A.M.; the cook wagon and water cart being brought up to within 200 yards in rear of reserve.

An intermittent rifle fire was kept up all day until about 4 p.m., when that of the enemy increased, and their celebrated Vickers-Maxim gun (Pom-pom) was turned upon us no less than five different times, but fortunately without loss to us. The moral effect of the gun, however, is very great and infinitely more disastrous in that direction than any other arm we have experienced.

The wounds received were entirely among men in the reserve, and from long range rifle fire—about 1,700 yards.

The day was a trying one, being very hot, while owing to the enemy's fire it was almost impossible to get water forward to the men. It was the attempt to bring the water cart forward that first brought the 'pom-pom' to bear upon us.

At 6 p.m. the battalion was withdrawn to its bivouac thoroughly done out. The position occupied I have denoted on the sketch accompanying this report, and a list of the wounded included in the general list.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. D. OTTER, *Lt.-Col.*,

Commanding 2nd. Batt., Royal Canadian Regiment.

APPENDIX A 3.

From the Officer Commanding 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, to the Chief Staff Officer of Militia, Ottawa, Canada.

OSSFONTEIN, S. A., March 2, 1900.

SIR,—I have the honour to report on the action of the 27th ult., in which the battalion, under my command, was engaged.

In accordance with instructions received from the General Officer Commanding the 19th Brigade, 9th Division, on the previous evening, the following disposition of the battalion was made by 10 p.m. of the 26th inst.

In the main trench running north and south from the river, and beginning on the left, were placed "C," "D," "E," "F," "G," and "H" Companies, under the following officers, viz.:—Capt. Barker, Capt. Rogers, Capt. Fraser, Lt. LeDuc, Lt. Macdonnell, and Capt. Stairs, respectively; while on the extreme right was a party of 30 Engineers. This trench was about 350 yards long, the right of it resting within 25 yards of the river, and 550 yards from the nearest Boer trench. The force placed in this trench numbered 500 officers and men of the battalion: "A" Company, under Lieut. Blanchard, remained on the south side of the river, where it had been detailed for special duty on the morning of the 26th and was posted just opposite the line of the main trench continued southwards, while "B" Company, under Lieut. Ross, and a few details formed a reserve at the bivouac, some 300 yards to the rear, and the wagons were fully 1000 yds. to the rear again.

The continuation of the main trench from where it turned to the north-east was occupied by 200 of the Gordon Highlanders, and about 1500 yds on our left was the Shropshire Light Infantry.

The plan of attack was, that our six companies in the main trench should advance on the Boer trenches at 2 a.m.; the front rank of each company to move with fixed bayonets, and orders not to fire until fired upon by the enemy, while the rear rank carried shovels and picks with which to entrench. When the advance could go no further, the engineers on the right were to give a base and trench from the cover of the wood on the river.

At 2.15 a.m. the six companies with the engineers moved forward; a distance of 15 paces being placed between the ranks, and an interval of one pace between men.

The Brigadier was on the right, Lt.-Col. Buchan and Major Pelletier in charge of the attacking line, the former on the left, the latter on the right; the O.C. in rear of the attack on the left.

The line advanced without interruption for about 450 yards, when it was met by a terrific fire from the enemy. The premature discharge of a couple of shots just before the general fusillade served as a warning to many of our men, who instantly threw themselves on the ground, but the effect of the fire was disastrous to us; "H" company being in the wood on the river bank did not suffer, but "G" and "F" companies, being in the open, lost heavily, the former having 4 killed and 12 wounded, the latter 2 killed and 9 wounded. "G" company was within 65 yards (actual measurement) of the advanced trench of the enemy when fire was opened on them. The companies on the left, "E," "D" and "C" being from 75 to 100 yards distant from a subsidiary trench in prolongation of the enemy's line.

On receiving the enemy's fire the line at once laid down and returned it, while the rear rank generally began to entrench; the time was about 3 a.m.

The trench on the right, begun by the party of the R.E., was 100 yards from the enemy's trench, and covered by "G" and "H" companies, made rapid progress, but those



PAARDEBERG

ACTION OF 20th FEBRUARY 1900

SHOWING DISPOSITION OF XIX BRIGADE

SCALE 6 in to 1 mile
1 in = 10 feet

From

batta

19th
batta

left,
office
and
This
river
here
rema
the
tjnu
reser
to th

occu
Shro

on t
bay
carr
furth
wood

15 p

of tl
of tl

a te
the
selv
in t
ope
wou
tren
'D
tion

rear

ene

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

begun by the other companies did not advance very rapidly, and after the battalion had been for some minutes under fire, someone unknown, called in an authoritative tone, 'to retire and bring back your wounded,' in consequence of which the companies on the left failed to establish themselves in the new trenches, and retired to the main trench they had recently occupied, leaving 'G' and 'H' holding the ground on the right, Lt.-Col. Buzhan being the last to retire, which he did by the right.

Daylight found "G" and "H" Companies well entrenched, with the R. E. still pushing the work on.

Firing continued on the right until about 5.15 a.m., when the enemy in their advanced trench made proposals to surrender. Our men being doubtful of the genuineness of the proposition, continued their work and firing for nearly an hour. At about 6 a.m. one of the enemy advanced with a white flag, when firing ceased, and the enemy began to come in by batches to the number of 200.

General Sir Hy. Colville, commanding the division, had come up about 6.15 and directed the disposal of the prisoners, sending forward an officer into the nearest part of the Boer laager to make terms of surrender, the result of which was the unconditional capitulation of General Cronje and his whole force, numbering upwards of 4,000.

Capt. Stairs and Lieut Macdonell, with their companies, deserve the greatest credit for their pertinacity in holding on as they did, the result of which undoubtedly had a material effect in hastening the final result achieved.

The supporting companies of the Gordon Highlanders were not engaged, although the trench which protected them was subjected to a fairly heavy fire from the enemy.

The battalion of the Shropshire Light Infantry, on our left, fired volleys at long ranges for some time after our attack developed, and materially assisted us.

All the wounded were brought in before daylight and sent back to the collecting station by our men, and the Bearers of the N. S. W. Company, and Naval Brigade (H. M. S. *Barrossa*), who rendered us every assistance possible in the arduous service.

The dead were buried close to where they fell at 7 a.m. by the Rev. Father O'Leary, R. C. chaplain to the battalion.

That the duty entailed on the Royal Canadian Regiment was most difficult and dangerous no one will deny, and though the advance was not so successful at all points as was hoped for, yet the final result was a complete success, and credit can fairly be claimed by the battalion for such, as it was practically acting alone.

I attach a sketch of the positions occupied, and a list of those killed and wounded in the day's operations. The night was starlight, with the moon in the last quarter at 4 a.m.

The various actions beginning on 18th, and concluding on 27th February have been denominated Paardeberg.

I have the honour to be, sir,

• Your obedient servant,

W. D. OTTER, *Lt.-Col.*

Commanding 2nd Battalion Royal Canadian Regiment.

APPENDIX A 4.

From the Officer Commanding 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, to Chief Staff Officer, Ottawa, Canada.

BLOEMFONTEIN, April, 28, 1900.

SIR,—I have the honour to report upon the action at Israels Poort on Wednesday, April 25, in which the battalion took part, in conjunction with a brigade of mounted infantry and the 19th brigade, under Gen. Smith-Dorrien, the whole force being under the immediate command of Gen. Ian Hamilton.

Leaving Momena Kopje, which is two miles to the east of the Bloemfontein water-works, on the Modder River, at 9 a.m., of the 25th, the battalion formed the advance guard to the 19th brigade. After moving about six miles the progress of the infantry was stopped for over two hours, while the mounted infantry and artillery reconnoitered and shelled several kopjes on our front and flanks occupied by the enemy. At about 2:30 p.m. instructions were given me for the battalion to move forward, with an extended front of about 1,200 yards, and obtain possession, if possible, of a small kopje and the lower slopes of two others on either side of it, which lay immediately to our front, while the mounted infantry and the remainder of the 19th brigade were to make a detour to our left and threaten the right flank of the enemy, who it was found were occupying all the kopjes in the neighbourhood.

Forming the battalion into four double companies in extended order, with intervals of twelve paces, and 150 yards distance between double companies, the advance was made at 3 p.m.

1st line on the left,	G Co.,	Lieut. Jones ;	on the right,	H Co.,	Capt. Stairs.
2nd	"	E Co.,	Capt. Fraser	"	F Co.,
3rd	"	C Co.,	Capt. Barker	"	D Co.,
4th	"	D Co.,	Capt. Burstall	"	A Co.,
					Lieut. Blanchard.

The first line was in charge of Major Pelletier, I being with him ; the 3rd and 4th lines under supervision of Lt.-Col. Buchan.

After advancing about a mile, and just as we reached a wire fence extending across our front, about 600 yards from the centre kopje, a hot fire was opened upon us, and everyone took the best cover available at hand. A ditch running near to the fence for a short distance gave good cover to a part of the first line, while the rest of it was on the open veldt.

In directing the disposition of the first line I was obliged to remain standing for a few seconds, and immediately on sitting down I was struck with a bullet on the right side of my chin, which also passed through the right side of my neck, causing a slight flesh wound, while another passed through the badge on my right shoulder, but the wound was not sufficiently severe to prevent my remaining in command for the rest of the day.

I regret to announce three other casualties, which occurred about the same time, of a more serious nature, viz :—

No. 8,074, Private J. Defoe, H. Co., killed, being shot through the head.

No. 7,835, Private Culver, (enlisted as 'Raymond,' as already reported) F. Co., wounded severely in the leg.

No. 7,454, Lance-Corp. Burns, D. Co., wounded slightly in the arm.

All of which casualties I reported by cable on my arrival here yesterday.

For three quarters of an hour the battalion lay thus, under fire, to which its first line kept up a well controlled response. Finding the enemy's fire abating, and hearing the remainder of the brigade engaged on our left, I determined to advance, so reinforce-

Y.N.S. - THE CHIEF

PAARDEBERG - CHIEF'S LAAGER

Showing disposition of XIX Brigade with Royal Canadian Regt

Morning of Surrender Feb 27th 1900

Scale 1 inch = 1 mile



at
a
f
c

f
s
fl
w
th

of

lin
the

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

ing the first line, we moved forward, under a spluttering and weak attempt of the enemy to check us and which soon ceased, until we occupied the ground originally designated, and where the battalion ultimately went into bivouac for the night.

In connection with this small engagement, which did not occupy more than three hours from first to last, I am glad to report the excellent conduct of all ranks, and would specially beg to bring before your notice, the great assistance rendered me by Lieut. J. H. C. Ogilvy, my acting adjutant, whose energy and coolness was most conspicuous.

I am also glad to report that during the evening Major General Smith-Dorrien came to our bivouac, and expressed his entire approval and great satisfaction with the manner in which his instructions had been carried out ; while on the following morning previous to my being sent back here, General Ian Hamilton visited me at the field hospital, and reiterated and confirmed the expressions made by Major General Smith-Dorrien the previous evening.

I have the honour to be, Sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. D. OTTER, *Lt.-Col.*

Commanding 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment

APPENDIX A 5.

REPORT OF COLONEL OTTER, COMMANDING ROYAL CANADIAN
REGIMENT OF INFANTRY, (2ND BATTALION).

Extracts from Diary of Lt. Col. Buchan, April 26-May 25, 1900.

On the 26th April the battalion reached Thabanchu Village, a march of six miles, and was detailed to hold Thaba Mountain, some three miles to the south, with one section of R.H.A. and a company of Mounted Infantry. This latter force entrenched itself strongly for the night.

Returning to the village the next afternoon, two companies, ('B' and 'D') had to be detailed for special duty with the Gordon Highlanders to rescue a body of Kitchener's Horse which was reported as being surrounded on a kopje about five miles N.E. while, the remainder of the brigade was ordered to be ready to move out to the support of this force if necessary.

On the 28th April, the battalion (6 Companies), marched N.E. in the dark at 5 a.m., joining the Cornwalls and Shropshires with artillery and mounted infantry.

After marching about six miles, reached a very large kopje and were met with a good deal of firing.

Gradually advanced with remainder of force and cleared the kopje about 10 a.m. The enemy were in large force all about the neighbouring hills on Eden Mountain where they had large guns playing on our force.

At 4 p.m. the battalion was ordered to scale the Eden Mountain and hold it against a force of 3,000 Boers, who were reported on the far side of it.

Two companies of Cornwalls did likewise on our left.

At 5.40 p.m. reached, after very hard climbing, a sort of plateau about half way up to the top. It was by that time dark but proceeded to build 'scances' and prepare to hold the position on a front of about half a mile. Whilst doing this it became dark and very cold. At about 7 p.m. received orders to gradually withdraw quietly and return to Thabanchu. This was a very difficult operation owing to complete darkness, and exceedingly precipitous and rugged character of the mountain.

About 8.30 p.m. all were collected and formed up at the foot, and after a long and circuitous march, in the darkness, the battalion (6 companies) reached bivouac at Thabanchu at 11 p.m.

In arranging for and in effecting the descent of the mountain and in collecting the several companies and finding the way back to Thabanchu in the dark, I was very ably and successfully assisted by Lieuts. Hodgins and Ogilvy, and so reported to the G. O. C. Brigade.

On return to bivouac found 'B' and 'D' Companies, they having, with the Gordons, been led in the wrong direction the previous night and returned to Thabanchu during the day.

The day following was one of rest.

On Monday 30th April the battalion marched at 6 a.m. for Hout Nek being third battalion in the brigade. Our mounted screen was stopped by the enemy about ten miles out at the Nek.

Detailed 'E' and 'F' Companies as escort for guns (field). The Gordons were sent to take Thaba Mountain on our left front. The Shropshires to hill on right front. Very heavy firing all round. At about 1 p.m. the Boer shells reached transport, which was lagged about two miles in our rear, and as it moved off the shell fire was directed at the battalion and the first line transport and the battery where we lay.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

All had to shift at once and whilst doing so the Gordons were reported as requiring assistance in their attack on Thaba. 'A' and 'C' Companies were detailed to support the Gordons, and 'B' Company to cover our right flank, from which direction the Boer shell fire was coming.

Shortly after, two more companies were required to help in the attack on Thaba, and 'G' and 'H' Companies were sent. Again two more companies were required and 'E' and 'F' were withdrawn from gun escort and sent.

About 4 p.m. two more companies were required in this attack, and I proceeded with 'B' and 'D' Companies, the only two left, which had been held in reserve.

On approaching the Thaba Mountain, which is from 300 to 400 feet high, all the companies had to pass through a zone of about 600 yards in width which was swept by a directly enfilading shell fire from a heavy Boer gun about three quarters of a mile to our right, as well as a rifle fire from the mountain to our front.

This was a very trying experience for all, but fortunately the Boers were using segment shells, apparently with mostly percussion fuse, and the effect of the burst was almost entirely lost. It was in the advance of 'D' Company across this zone that Pte. Cotton was killed, as previously reported by cable.

The shell fire swept the face of the mountain we had to climb, but the nature of the ground there gave opportunities for cover the plain had not afforded. On reaching the crest of the mountain, the rifle fire from the far side of the sort of table land top was very heavy but the cover was good.

We found the Gordons and some few Shropshires hanging on to the crest. I at once set about getting our companies sorted out and building 'scances' and by dark, about 6 p.m., had them fairly well arranged, orders being to hold the mountain at any cost.

Rifle fire kept up till late in the night, and finally all settled down to pass the night as best we could without food, water or blankets or coats in the bitter cold. We lay with magazines charged and bayonets fixed till morning.

At sunrise of the 1st May, having arranged our companies on the left of the Gordons, I advanced our line to clear the top of the mountain towards the south-western extremity, a company of the Gordons advancing about 200 yards to their front.

By about 9.30 a.m. we had cleared the mountain, with furthest extremity about three quarters of a mile distant.

'B' Company, under Captain Burstall, receiving the heaviest fire and doing the hardest fighting. It was in this work that Lt. Ross and five men were wounded, as reported by cable. At 2.30 p.m. received orders to join the force on the plain, and having done so, marched into bivouac at Jacobrust, about five miles, reaching there at 6.15 p.m., where all ranks got their first meal since 4 a.m. previous day. Specially mentioned Captain Burstall for his plucky conduct on this occasion in my report to G. O. C. Brigade.

The 2nd of May was a day of rest and on it a change was made in the formation and name of the force with which the battalion was operating. This force was still to remain under the command of Major General Ian Hamilton, but to be augmented and named the Winburg Column. Its composition as such became as follows:—

Two Batteries of Horse Artillery. 2nd Cavalry Brigade. Four Corps of Mounted Infantry. Five Batteries of Field Artillery. Two five-inch guns. 19th Brigade. 21st Brigade.

On the 3rd of May we marched fifteen miles, and on the day following continued our march at 8 a.m.

At 10 a.m. of this day the enemy was met and an artillery duel of some four hours was fought. In this engagement the infantry took no part, save that it was kept moving about while it lasted. The march was resumed in the afternoon and bivouac was made at Welkom, some twelve miles from the point of starting in the morning.

Winburg was reached about 4 p.m. of the 5th, and on the day following a further march of 8 miles brought the battalion to Taailboschkoil, where the draft of 100 men which left Bloemfontein on the 1st of May, joined.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

For the next two days the battalion rested, moving on to Bloemplaats, 11 miles, on the 9th May.

Here we heard a good deal of artillery firing going on in the direction of Zand River, some 3 miles to the front of us, and orders were received for an attack the next morning. 'A' and 'H' Companies were detailed as escort to 5-in. guns.

On the 10th May four companies (B, D, E, F) paraded at 5.45 a.m. as advanced guard to brigade, and were sent off to hold extreme right flank of position at Zand River.

Getting to top of rise about half a mile from river met by heavy fire from river bushes and dongas. Sent Captain Burstall forward with half of 'B' Company to scout and feel the way, remainder following slowly.

About 250 yards from river Captain Burstall was forced to stop by the very heavy fire. The remaining half of his company was at once sent to reinforce his line, and 'D' Company, under Lt. Lawless, was sent to prolong his line to the right, the other two companies being held in support.

All the remainder of the brigade was by this time one and a half miles to our left assisting the 21st Brigade in the main attack. The firing at us from the river bed grew rapidly in strength, and it was only by the pluck and determination of our men that we were able to hold on to our position and keep down the enemy's fire as much as possible. The moment anyone, an officer, a stretcher bearer or an ammunition carrier, showed himself above the ground the enemy's fire developed in great strength.

About noon 'C' and 'G' Companies came up from escort duty with the guns, and were held in reserve. At about 1.30 p.m. I went over to Major General Smith Dorrien, who, I heard, was near by, and explained our situation and asked for a section of a battery to be sent to shell the river bed and bushes and dongas. In about an hour these were sent from a position they had been to our right rear, where they had been firing since about 2 p.m., assisting some mounted infantry. The battery fire, with that of our men, soon cleared the river in our front, and about 4 p.m. we were enabled to remove our wounded and bury the one man killed, Pte. Lloyd (cabled from Kroonstadt about 12th May). The six companies were marched into the drift about dusk, two of them, 'C' and 'F,' having meantime and until then been on river picquet.

We bivouacked at the drift that night. 'A' and 'H' Companies have gone on with the 5-in. guns to Petersburg.

Specially mentioned Captain Burstall and Lieut. Lawless in my report to the G. O. C. Brigade (19th) for their gallant and determined conduct in action.

The G. O. C. subsequently informed me that we had over 800 Boers opposed to us all day. We had only 100 men in our firing line.

On the 11th of May we had a long march of 22 miles, reaching our bivouac at Tevistriet at 8.30 p.m., and on the following day did 21 miles, which brought us to Kroonspuit, within 4 miles of Kroonstadt, where the main army under Lord Roberts lay.

On the 14th and 15th of May we remained at Kroonspuit, Lord Roberts, the Commander-in-Chief, inspecting the battalion on the latter day.

Our march was resumed on the 15th in the direction of Lindley, and a bad drift over the Valsch River detained us so long as to keep our march down to 6 miles for that day.

On the 16th we made 12 miles and on the 17th 16 miles. On the 18th of May the 21st Brigade went on to Lindley, while the 19th Brigade stopped short of it, and I was ordered, with a half battalion of Royal Canadians, two guns and some mounted infantry, to attack a farmhouse near by, from which there had been some 'sniping.'

On our approach the enemy fled, but large quantities of food and fodder were collected from the farm.

The march on the 19th was 9 miles to Quagga Spruit, in the vicinity of which the enemy was seen in the hills. This march was made by the 19th Brigade alone.

Sunday, the 20th was a fatiguing day, as we chased the enemy all day and did not get into bivouac until dark at Boschran. Here the 21st Brigade joined us.

On the 21st May we marched 11 miles to Witpoort.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

We began our march on 22nd May at 6.30 a.m., the battalion being advanced guard, and reached the neighbourhood of Heilbron about 10 a.m. Firing began in front and the battalion formed for attack, advancing toward the town. The enemy retired west followed by the mounted troops, and the battalion entered the town unopposed. Picquets and guards were at once placed upon the town hall, post office and stores, and General Hamilton entered and took formal possession. At 9.30 a.m. of the 23rd the column left the town, the enemy at once taking possession of it again and capturing Surgeon Captain Fiset and servant, who had been left ill in the German hospital. Brigade halted at Elands Spruit for the night, having marched 11 miles.

On the 24th (Queen's birthday) we met the main army under Lord Roberts near Prospect, on the railway, and then, turning north, moved to Vredeport Station where we went into bivouac at 1 p.m., having marched 14 miles.

A ration of rum was issued to the troops and with it the battalion drank Her Majesty's health, gave three cheers and sang the National Anthem.

The 25th found us again on the march, and after crossing the railway track we stopped to wait for a supply convoy. In the afternoon we moved on again in a N.W. direction and went into bivouac at Zwartbank at 7.30 p.m., having done only 9 miles.

On the 26th May Lt.-Col. Otter rejoined the battalion and I handed it over to him.

APPENDIX A 6.

From Officer Commanding 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, to Chief Staff Officer, Militia Department, Ottawa, Canada.

FLORIDA, JOHANNESBURG, May 31, 1900.

SIR.—I have the honour to report upon the action at Doornkop, which took place on the 29th inst., and in which the battalion took part.

Leaving the bivouac at Cyferfontein at 7.15 a.m. on the morning of the 29th inst., the 19th Brigade followed the 21st Brigade in the order named, viz. :—

Gordon Highlanders.

Royal Canadians.

Duke of Cornwall's L. I.

King's Shropshire L. I., Rear Guard.

Moving northward for nearly four hours, and then somewhat to the east, the whole infantry force was halted about noon at Klipriversberg, the enemy being found strongly posted on a line of heights, and holding the cavalry of General French from a further advance on the west side of Johannesburg. At 1.45 p.m. orders were received for the battalion to form a line of attack in conjunction with the Gordon Highlanders, on that part of the ridge occupied by the left flank of the enemy, while the 21st Brigade moved against his right. At 2.30 p.m., the battalion moved forward in four lines, with intervals of 25 paces between men, and 150 yards distance between lines; the Gordon Highlanders being in a similar formation on our left. Our first two lines were placed under charge of Lt.-Col. Buchan, while Major Pelletier had immediate supervision of the third and fourth lines. Our advance began at a distance of about 3000 yards from the enemy's position, and was made over rolling ground, the entire part of which nearest the enemy had already been burned over, and was quite black; while that part nearest us was still on fire and burning fiercely towards us. The effect of this burnt grass was, of course, to render our Khaki uniform particularly distinct and an easy mark.

We had no sooner begun to move forward than fire was opened upon us by the enemy from two 5-inch guns, and though their projectiles went over our heads, the effect in the transport wagons, amongst which they fell, was very demoralizing. This fire was returned by two similar guns on our side, as well as by the guns of one of our field batteries, while we continued our movement forward.

At about 2,000 yards the enemy opened upon us with rifle fire, and one of our men in the third line was severely wounded. Continuing the advance, the fire became hotter, particularly as we entered the 'burnt zone,' in doing which most of the men were scorched from the blazing grass, but fortunately escaped further injury from bullets, until the foot of the ridge, which gradually ascended for fully 1,000 yards to the summit occupied by the Boers, was reached. A Kafir hut surrounded by a stone wall on the face of the hill, offered good cover for our men, and a rush was made by fully one-third of the battalion for its occupation, which was effected, though, with a loss of three or four men wounded from a heavy frontal, as well as enfilading fire which was concentrated upon them. Here, however, they were comparatively safe, and made good use of the cover thus obtained. It now became apparent that an attempt was being made to outflank us on our right, and I detailed one of the Maxim guns to open in this direction. This was most effectively done under Lieutenant Hodgins' supervision, and in half an hour our flank was safe.

The Gordon Highlanders on our left evidently came into contact at the strongest part of the enemy's position, and met with a most stubborn resistance, as their very heavy losses testify, but finally succeeding, they moved to the crest of a hill, and simul-

LINE OF HIGH IRREGULAR MOUNTAINS

RIGHT OF XXI BRIGADE

TO FLORIDA AND JOHANNESBURG

BAGGAGE AND TRANSPORT

SHROPSHIRE

DUKE OF

CORNWALL'S

SUPPORTING

GREEN HIGHLANDERS

IN FOUR LINES

MAIN

POSITION

CARRIED

BY

GORDONS

WITH

BAYONET

(3 CHARGES)

DOORN-KOP

BRIDGE

CRISTON

WINDMILL VEELEY
(BURNING PERCELY)

ROEP LONG
RANGE 400

KATIE
N. I. K. PHAA

FROM CYFERFONTEIN
BIVOUAC OF MAY 28TH 1900

74 FB

BATTLE OF
DOORN-KOP

MAY 29TH 1900

SHOWING

XXI BRIGADE WITH REINFORCEMENTS

SCALE 1 INCH TO 1 MILE

10 FEET

APPENDIX TO

THE OTTER'S REPORT A 6

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

taneously we also went forward, clearing the enemy from their position just before 5 p. m., and the battalion being concentrated occupied the ridge for the night.

I regret to report the following casualties, although when compared with those of the Gordon Highlanders, sincerely congratulate myself that they were not very much worse.

No. 7038,	Private J. E. Davies,	Severe.
" 7235,	" J. B. Robinson,	"
" 7355,	" J. Jordan,	"
" 7688,	" F. Richardson,	"
" 7888,	" A. Y. Evans,	Slight.
" 7838,	" E. Hill,	"
" 7938,	" A. Haydon,	"

The enemy evidently considered the retention of this point as most important, and made every preparation to hold it ; while its possession by our forces, no doubt, cleared the way for the peaceful entry of Johannesburg by Lord Roberts on the following day with the main army.

I cannot speak too highly of the conduct of all ranks of the battalion at this engagement, it being most quiet, steady and intelligent. Very little time was occupied, it taking less than three hours from beginning to end, owing to the spirited and determined way in which the attack was carried out.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. D. OTTER, Lieutenant-Colonel,
Commanding Second Royal Canadian Regiment.

APPENDIX A 7.

2ND BATTALION—ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT.

NOMINAL ROLL of N.C.O.'s and men, who have died of disease and been accidentally killed.

No.	Rank.	Name.	Casualties.	Place.	Date.	Where buried.
7452	Pte.	DesLauriers, E	Heart failure	At Sea.	3-11-1899	At sea.
7914	"	Chappell, M. C.	Tonsilitus	Belmont	13-12-1899	Belmont, 500 yds.S.E.of st'n.
7157	"	Farley, J. E	Enteric	Orange River.	5- 2-1900	Orange River cemetery.
3264	"	Purcell, J. J	"	"	11- 2-1900	" "
7089	"	Moore, D. L.	"	"	14- 2-1900	" "
7013	"	Adams, J.	"	Jacobsdal	1- 3-1900	Jacobsdal.
7541	"	Ross, W. J. H.	"	Wynberg, C.C.	6- 3-1900	Wynberg.
7811	"	Forrest, H.	"	Bloemfontein.	31- 3-1900	Bloemfontein cemetery.
7802	"	Harrison, R.	"	"	14- 4-1900	"
7301	Sergt.	Beattie, A.	"	"	14- 4-1900	" No.9, Lot 6.
7319	Pte.	Blight, W. S.	"	"	15- 4-1900	" No.20, Lot 6.
7160	"	Adams, W. G.	"	"	16- 4-1900	" No. 12.
7806	"	Curphy, J.	"	"	18- 4-1900	" No.21, Lot 6.
8140	"	Purcell, E.	"	"	22- 4-1900	"
7165	"	Barr, H. B.	"	Naaupport	30- 4-1900	Naaupport.
8176	"	Zong, E.	"	Bloemfontein.	1- 5-1900	Bloemfontein cemetery, No. 207, Lot 11.
7068	"	Liston, R.	"	"	2- 5-1900	" No.219 " 11.
4272	"	Haines, W.	"	Johannesburg.	6- 6-1900	Johannesburg cemetery.
7118	"	Whitley, W. F.	"	"	19- 6-1900	" "
7610	"	Bolt, G. H.	"	Naaupport	1- 6-1900	Naaupport cemetery.
4263	"	Vanornam, A. F.	"	Bloemfontein.	7- 6-1900	Bloemfontein cemetery.
7377	"	Rasberry, J.	"	"	24 5 1900	" "
3676	"	Mullins, E.	"	Kroonstadt	11- 6-1900	Kroonstadt.
7818	"	LaRue, L.	"	Wynberg, C.C.	24- 6-1900	R. C. cemetery, Wynberg, No. 28-B.
7865	"	Duhamel, W.	"	Norvals Pont.	27- 6-1900	Norval's Pont cemetery.
7204	"	Irwin, R.	"	Bloemfontein.	1- 7-1900	Bloemfontein "
7464	Sergt.	Clunie, P.	"	England	6- 7-1900	Woolwich.
8088	Pte.	Farrell, G. P.	"	"	6- 9-1900	Not known.
7655	"	Lecouteur, R.	Accidentally killed (Fell from train.)	Worcester, C.C	30- 9-1900	Worcester C. C.
						Total..... 29

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

APPENDIX A 8.

2ND BATTALION—ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT.

NOMINAL ROLL of Officers, N.C.O.'s and men killed in action and died of wounds received in action.

No.	Rank.	Name.	Casualty.	Place.	Date.	Where Buried.
7004	Sergt.	Scott, W. I.	Killed	Paardeburg . . .	18-2-1900	Paardeberg on battle field of 18-2-1900, N. of river in small clump of trees.
7059	Pte.	Jackson, W. E.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7074	"	Maundrell, A. A. . .	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7113	"	Todd, J.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7105	"	Somers, J. H.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7236	"	Smith, R.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7188	"	Donegan, J. A.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7255	"	White, W.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7339	"	Findlay, J. H.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7371	"	Manion, W. T.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7506	"	Lewis, Z. R. E.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7455	"	Burns, O. T.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7500	"	Jackson, C. E. E.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7608	"	Barry, C. H.	"	"	18-2-1900	Paardeberg, S. side river 150 yds. S.W. of ford, 200 yds. west of house used as hospital.
7654	"	Lester, C.	"	"	18-2-1900	Paardeberg on battle field of 18-2-1900, N. of river, in small clump of trees.
7670	"	McQueen, A.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7636	Corpl.	Goodfellow, R. C.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7993	Pte.	Taylor, R. D.	"	"	18-2-1900	"
7960	"	McCreary, P. H.	Died of wounds	"	19-2-1900	Paardeberg, S. side of river, 150 yds. S.W. of ford, 200 yds. west of house used as hospital.
.....	Capt.	Arnold, H. M.	"	"	23-2-1900	"
7376	Pte.	Page, F. C.	Killed	"	27-2-1900	N. of Modder River, 1 mile from Cronje's laager, 50 yds. from river bank opposite pontoon crossing.
7869	Corpl.	Withey, A.	"	"	27-2-1900	60 yds. W. of Cronje's laager, 100 yds. N. of Modder River, under a thorn tree.
7775	Pte.	Orman, G.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7979	"	Riggs, W. A.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
6582	"	Scott, Jacob B.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
8004	Corpl.	Withers, F. W.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7944	Pte.	Johnston, J. M.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7463	Corpl.	Brady, W. S.	Died of wounds	"	27-2-1900	N.S.W., F. H. burial ground S. of Modder River, and 2 miles W. of Cronje's laager.
7553	"	Thomas, C. T.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7502	"	Living, F. J.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7708	Pte.	Wasdell, F.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
7854	"	Roy, A.	"	"	27-2-1900	"
8105	"	Johnstone, G.	"	"	27-2-1900	Paardeberg, S. of Modder River, 150 yds. S.W. of ford, 200 yds. west of house used as hospital.
7778	"	Sievert, J. G.	"	Klip Drift	2-3-1900	Klip Drift, Modder River.

APPENDIX A8.— 2nd Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment—Nominal Roll of Officers, N.C.O.'s and men killed in action, &c.—*Continued.*

No. Rank.	Name.	Casualty.	Place.	Date.	Where Buried.
8074 Pte...	Defoe, J	Killed	Israels Poort..	25-4-1900	Israels Poort, S. of main road, Thaba N'chu, between Kaffir hut and main road, 500 yds. from each.
7468 " ..	Cotton, H.....	" ..	Hout Nek...	30-4-1900	At foot of Tobah Mountain, 650 yds. from base of hill, S.E. peak.
7193 " ..	Floyd, F. G. W...	" ..	Zand River...	10-5-1900	Zand River, 2 miles S. and 1 mile E. of main road, Kroonstadt, Winburg.
7208 " ..	Leonard, G. W...	Died of wounds...	" ..	11-5-1900	Boemplatz.
Lt....	Blanchard, M.....	" ..	Rhenoster	15-6-1900	Kroonstadt grave No. 7, lot No. 7.
					Total, 39.

APPENDIX A 9.

ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT (S.S.).

LIST OF WOUNDED.

Date.	Co.	No.	Name.	Place.	Where hit.	Nature.
1900.						
Feb.	18	'A'	7017 Pte. Andrews, H. J. D.	Paardeberg	Left thigh	Serious.
"	18	"	7021 " Beech, A. C.	"	Throat	"
"	18	"	7043 " Duncafe, C. W.	"	Wrist	Slight.
"	18	"	7046 " Finch-Smiles, F.	"	Thigh	Serious.
"	18	"	7070 Corpl. Lohman, A. O.	"	9 wounds, face and chest	"
"	18	"	7082 Pte. MacKenzie, H.	"	Leg	Slight.
"	18	"	7084 " Niebergall, H. E.	"	"	"
"	18	"	7111 " Thompson, C. C.	"	Shoulder	Serious.
"	18	"	7041 " Dixon, J. H.	"	"	Very slight.
"	18	"	Capt. Arnold, H. M.	"	Head	Mortally.
"	18	'B'	7152 Sergt. Sippi, G. R. B.	"	Foot	Slight.
"	18	"	5062 " Shreeve, J.	"	Right arm	Serious.
"	18	"	7156 Corpl. Smith, J.	"	Knee and hip	"
"	18	"	2500 " Power, L.	"	Back	"
"	18	"	7211 Pte. McLaren, C. D.	"	Hip	Slight.
"	18	"	7252 " Wheatcroft, A. H.	"	"	"
"	18	"	7225 " Paddon, A. E.	"	Arm and side	Serious.
"	18	"	7218 " Marentette, V. F.	"	Arm	Slight.
"	18	"	7197 " Green, W. J.	"	Foot	"
"	18	"	3206 " Kingwell, Jno.	"	Breast	Serious.
"	18	"	3115 " Baugh, E.	"	Thigh	Slight.
"	18	"	7180 " Corley, J. B.	"	Arm	"
"	18	"	7182 " Day, J.	"	Shoulder	"
"	18	"	Lt. Mason, J. C.	"	" and lung	Serious.
"	18	'C'	7393 Corpl. Stewart, M. M.	"	"	Slight.
"	18	"	7356 Pte. Kennedy, J.	"	Arm and body	Serious.
"	18	"	7406 " Ward, S. M.	"	Throat	"
"	18	"	4105 " McLaughlin, R. H.	"	Shoulder and lung	"
"	18	"	7397 " Ussher, J. F. H.	"	Back	Not serious.
"	18	"	7398 " Vander Water, W.	"	Finger	Slight.
"	18	"	7360 " McGiverin, W. L.	"	Foot	"
"	18	"	7392 " Sutton, J. H.	"	"	Very slight.
"	18	"	7336 " Day, E. C.	"	"	"
"	18	'D'	4111 Col. Sergt. Thompson, C. H.	"	Right arm	Serious.
"	18	"	7462 Pte. Bradshaw, J. L. H.	"	Back and throat	"
"	18	"	7510 " Laird, A.	"	Leg	Slight.
"	18	"	7493 " Gibson, C. A.	"	"	Very slight.
"	18	"	7475 " Clarke, C. P.	"	5 wounds	Serious.
"	18	"	7527 " Macaulay, A.	"	Knee	"
"	18	"	7474 " Coleman, J. D.	"	"	Slight.
"	18	"	7542 " Ritchie, W. J.	"	"	Very slight.
"	18	'E'	5094 " McGill, D. R.	"	"	"
"	18	"	7671 " McIver, W.	"	Shoulder	Slight.
"	18	"	7697 " Thomas, A. P.	"	"	"
"	18	"	7689 " Shaw, A. C.	"	Groin	Serious.
"	18	"	7702 " Turner, A. J.	"	Arm	Slight.
"	18	"	7637 " Gorman, J. F.	"	Back	Not serious.
"	18	"	7685 " Robarts, G. P.	"	Arm	Slight.
"	18	"	7659 Corpl. Moore, T. D.	"	Forearm	"
"	18	'F'	6559 Sergt. Utton, F. W.	"	Foot	Serious.
"	18	"	7829 Pte. Hunter, W. L.	"	Shoulder	Slight.
"	18	"	7777 " Scott, J. A.	"	Hip	Serious.
"	18	"	7818 " LaRue, L.	"	Shoulder	Slight.
"	18	"	7861 " Hudon, J. A. A.	"	Foot	"
"	18	"	6579 " McLaughlin, H. P.	"	Leg	"
"	18	'G'	7931 " Gifford, B.	"	Shoulder	Not serious.
"	18	"	7943 " Johnston, J. N.	"	Leg	"

ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT (S.S.).

LIST OF WOUNDED.

Date.	Co.	No.	Name.	Place.	Where Hit.	Nature.
1900.						
Feb.	18	'G' 8001	Pte. Waye, J. F.	Paardeberg	Leg and foot.	Not serious.
"	18	" 7960	" McCready, P. H.	"	Head	Mortal. Dead.
"	18	'H' 8054	" Adams, W. F.	"	Shoulder.	Slight.
"	18	" 8105	" Johnstone, G.	"	Head	Mortal. Dead.
"	18	" 8128	" McCollum, G. D.	"	"	Serious.
"	18	" 8151	" Regan, W. J.	"	Arm and leg.	Not serious.
"	20	'C' 7357	" Kidner, R. W.	"	"	Slight.
"	20	" 7412	Bugler Holland, J. B.	"	Body.	Very slight.
"	20	'F' 7827	Pte. Downing, W.	"	Back.	Serious.
"	20	'H' 8142	" Parker, A.	"	"	Very slight.
"	27	'C' 7399	" Vickers, J. R.	Cronje's Laager.	Thigh	Serious.
"	27	" 7326	" Cozzens, H.	"	"	Very slight.
"	27	" 7342	" Gray, N. F.	"	"	"
"	27	" 7313	" Allen, C. W.	"	"	"
"	27	'D' 7463	Corpl. Brady, W. S.	"	Spine.	Mortal. Dead.
"	27	" 7553	" Thomas, C. T.	"	Abdomen	"
"	27	" 7502	" Living, F. J.	"	Shoulder and lung.	"
"	27	" 7498	" Hulme, G. G.	"	"	Very slight.
"	27	" 7497	Pte. Holland	"	Left arm.	Slight.
"	27	" 7531	" McConnell, J. F.	"	Right calf	"
"	27	'E' 5136	Corpl. Baugh, T. E.	"	Right knee.	"
"	27	" 7708	Pte. Wasdell, F.	"	Abdomen	Mortal. Dead.
"	27	"	Lieut. Armstrong, C. J.	"	Right thigh.	Slight.
"	27	'F' 7782	Pte. Matheson, O.	"	Left leg	"
"	27	" 7803	" Sutherland, A.	"	Buttock	Not serious.
"	27	" 7868	Sgt. Peppiatt, W.	"	Left foot.	Slight.
"	27	" 7871	Corpl. Macdonald, J. A.	"	Right thigh.	Serious.
"	27	" 7822	Pte. Harrison, Chas.	"	Left forearm.	Slight.
"	27	" 7841	" Bajot, A.	"	Right shoulder.	Serious.
"	27	" 7852	" Proulx, H.	"	Left forearm.	Not serious.
"	27	" 7854	" Roy, A.	"	10 wds. head & body.	Mortal. Dead.
"	27	" 7778	" Sievert, J. G.	"	Abdomen	Mortal. Dead.
"	26	'E' 7815	" Theriault, J. A.	"	Foot	Slight.
"	27	'G' 7935	" Harris, J. A.	"	Left arm.	Not serious.
"	27	" 7923	" Durant, H. E.	"	Left hip	Serious.
"	27	" 7972	" Pelkey, A.	"	Elbow.	"
"	27	" 2929	" Fradsham, H.	"	Thigh	Slight.
"	27	" 6363	" Quinn, M. J.	"	9 wds chest, abdomen	Serious.
"	27	" 7915	Corpl. Coombs, F. W.	"	left shoulder.	"
"	27	" 7985	Pte. Simpson, A.	"	Neck	"
"	27	" 7959	" Leavitt, H.	"	Hip and back	"
"	27	" 7996	" Unkauf, W. C.	"	"	Very slight.
"	27	" 7920	" Donohoe, W. W.	"	Left leg	Amputation.
"	27	" 7987	" Sprague, F. W.	"	Left arm.	Not serious.
"	27	" 7909	" Brace, N. T.	"	Left arm.	Very slight.
"	27	"	Major Pelletier, O.C.C.	"	Shoulder.	Slight.
Apl.	25	"	Lt.-Col. Otter, W. D.	Israel Poort	Chin and neck	"
"	25	'G' 7833	Pte. Culver, J. W.	"	Leg	Serious.
"	25	'D' 7454	Corpl. Burns, R.	"	Forearm.	Slight.
May	1	'B' —	Lt. Ross, J. M.	Hoot Nek	Right side.	"
"	1	'G' 7955	Pte. Lutz, J. A.	"	Leg	Very slight.
"	1	" 7952	" Letson, J.	"	Leg	Slight.
"	1	'D' 7486	Bugler Foster, P. R.	"	Leg	"
"	1	'B' 7204	Pte. Irwin, R.	"	Face	"
"	1	" 7234	" Rorison, C. K.	"	Leg	"
"	10	" 7221	" McLean, A.	Zand River	3 wds. thigh.	Serious.
"	10	" 7208	" Leonard, G. W.	"	Shoulder and back	Mortal. Dead.
"	10	'A' 7018	" Armstrong, E.	"	Foot.	Slight.
"	20	" 7038	" Davies, J. E.	Doornkop	3 wds shoulder & legs.	Serious.
"	20	'B' 7235	" Robinson, J. B.	"	Thigh.	"
"	20	'C' 7355	" Jordan, J.	"	Shoulder.	"
"	20	'F' 7888	" Evans, A. V.	"	Left leg	Slight.
"	20	" 7838	" Hill, J.	"	Arm	"
"	20	'G' 7938	" Haydon, A.	"	Arm	"
"	20	'E' 7688	" Richardson, F. S.	"	Right forearm	Serious.
Sept.	30	" 7722	" Lamden, J.	Pan Station	Shoulder.	Slight.
						Total, 123.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

APPENDIX A 10.

BALANCE SHEET.

RECEIPTS.

AMOUNTS received by O. C. 2nd Royal Canadian Regiment.

From whom.	£.	s.	d.
Ladies Red Cross Society.—Toronto.	£.	s.	d.
Nov. 30, 1899, 1st instalment	329	0	0
" " 2nd "	62	0	0
Dec. 22, 1899, 3rd "	83	0	0
Jan. 26, 1900, 4th "	150	0	0
Apr. 20, 1900, 5th "	61	0	0
		684	13 0
May 22nd, 1900—			
Special grant from Toronto, per D. R. Wilkie.....	150	0	0
Red Cross Society—Toronto.			
Nov. 30, 1900, 1st instalment....	100	0	0
" 30, 1900, 2nd "	100	0	0
		200	0 0
Nov. 30th, 1899—Hamilton Ladies Fund.....	174	13	1
March 3rd, 1900—Ladies of Ingersoll, per Lt.-Col. Hegler.....	22	10	0
" 28th, 1900—County of Carleton, Ottawa ..	20	9	6
April 9th, 1900—H. R. H. Princess Louise Committee.....	66	13	4
July 5th, 1900—Red Cross Society, Windsor.....	27	0	0
Children of Niagara, for sick and wounded.....	2	8	9
July 10th, 1900—From members of "A" Company, voted from a fund received by them from Mr. C. Magee, Ottawa.....	50	0	0
July 23rd, 1900—Ladies of Revelstoke, B. C., per Mrs. Thompson.....	10	3	1
Aug. 23rd, 1900—Tutti-frutti grant from Mrs. Fitzgibbon, Toronto.....	20	6	10
Dec. 31st, 1900—Transferred profits from sale of article in dry canteen.....	12	3	0
Gross amount received.....	1,441	0	7

DISBURSEMENTS.

AMOUNTS expended by O.C. 2nd Royal Canadian Regiment.

For what.	£.	s.	d.
For hospital drugs, comforts and necessities, as statement marked "A"	250	3	9
For additional food, tobacco and supplies, as statement marked "B".....	521	11	2
For additional clothing and boots, as statement marked "C"	222	12	5
For grants of money to men left in hospital, as statement marked "D".....	185	12	0
For cables and telegrams, as statement marked "E".....	40	18	9
For transport of supplies, mail, etc., and travelling expenses in connection with the same as statement marked "F"	77	16	4
For expenses connected with the representation of contingent in London from November 29th, December 13th, as statement marked "G".....	49	17	6
For various items, as statement marked "H".....	92	8	8
Total expenses.....	1,441	0	7

APPENDIX A 11.

2nd ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT.

LIST OF DONORS AND DONATIONS.

Ladies' Red Cross Society, Toronto, (sent to SS. Sardinian), 206 cases containing comforts, delicacies, games, papers, books, &c., &c.

Ladies' Red Cross, Toronto, (sent to S. A. different times, 36 cases, drawers, socks, shirts, papers, tobacco, private parcels, &c.

Mrs. Nordheimer, Toronto, Harmonium.

Woodward Medicine Co, 10 gross Hutch tablets.

Safety Bottle & Ink Co., Limited, Ink, &c.

Warwick Bros. & Rutter, 1,000 portfolios, writing material.

Watford Bible Society, French and English bibles.

American Tobacco Co., Canada, 1,000 pounds tobacco.

H. P. Eckhardt & Co., Toronto, 44 cases beef.

Quebec Auxillary Bible Society, bibles.

Mr. Corby, Belleville, cases whisky.

Capt. A. E. Gooderham, Toronto, 25 cases whisky.

Soldiers Wives League, Montreal, tobaccos, cigars, handkerchiefs, papers, &c., &c.

S. Davis & Son, Montreal, 11,000 cigars.

Mrs. W. McIntyre, Edinburgh, Scotland, 300 various articles of clothing.

Mrs Duncan Conchra and Miss Matheson, Kintail, Scotland, socks, knitted by the women of Kintail & Lochalsh, Scotland.

Employers of Canadian General Electric Co., Peterborough, 5 cases of tobacco and gum.

Mrs. Holland, Guernsey, 1 case tobacco.

Mrs. Fitzgibbon, Toronto, 2 cases Tutti-Frutti gum.

Mrs. Ballachey, Norwich, England, socks, &c.

Ladies of Victoria, B.C., per Miss Crease, 6 bales clothing, note paper, &c.

Mrs. Hornby, Northampton, England, 5,000 lbs. tobacco.

Mrs. Lillie, Berlin, Germany, 2 cases comforts.

Red Cross Society (per Dr. Ryerson), sweaters, blankets, &c., &c.

Ladies of Vancouver, B.C. :—

Revelstoke, Vernon, Kamloops, Kaslo, Wellington, Nanaimo, New Westminster, 11 bales and cases socks, jerseys, shirts, pipes, tobacco, &c. 2 cases for 'A' company.

Officers and Engineers, *Empress of China*, Vancouver, B.C., 4 boxes tobacco and cigars.

Miss Lillian Birt, Liverpool, 1 case warm clothing.

Mrs. Lee, Edinburgh, 3 bales shirts, caps, cardigan jackets, &c., &c.

Mrs. C. J. Bowell, Belleville, 3 cases hospital comforts.

Canadian High Commissioner, Lord Strathcona, London, cases the R.C.R. share of 132 cases of all kinds of articles, contributions to Canadians in S.A. from England.

REPORT B.

OTTAWA, CANADA, January 17, 1901.

Sir,—In compliance with your request to me as senior of the four nursing sisters sent with the First Contingent to South Africa, I have the honour to submit the following report of the work performed by us.

Upon our arrival in Cape Town, on the 30th November, 1899, we were welcomed by a committee of the Red Cross, and the Surgeon-in-Chief of the New Somerset Hospital of Cape Town. The latter brought us an invitation from the matron (Sister Agatha) to go there as her guests pending orders for duty from the P. M. O. This we gladly accepted as all the hotels were overcrowded. We also received a letter of congratulation upon what he was pleased to call 'our splendid patriotism,' from Mr. Frederick Treves, consulting surgeon to the troops, who, with his two private nurses, had just arrived by the 'Dunvegan Castle,' and was about to proceed to Natal via Durban.

We disembarked on December 1, and upon finding that our troops had orders to proceed up country immediately, made every effort to be allowed to accompany them to the front. This we were told was impossible as no nursing sisters can be accommodated in the field hospitals. So with very sad feelings we saw our countrymen entrain without us on December 3rd, and realized at that early date what served us in good stead later, viz, that we too were soldiers to do as we were told and go where we were sent. Later in the same day we received orders to proceed to Wynberg for duty in the large base hospital there called No. 1 General. We found our services were greatly needed here, the wounded from Graspan and Belmont, &c., having been brought down recently, and the number of sisters very small. I might here add that the total number of sisters sent from home at this early date was 40, while a year later, including ourselves and other colonials, we numbered 1,000.

At No. 1 General, we nursed in huts, finding the work at times very heavy, oftentimes having our dinner between 9 and 10 p.m. We received our first convoy of wounded a few days after the battles of Magersfontein and Modder River, when our beds were filled with the men of the Highland Brigade who suffered so severely at the former place. We remained at Wynberg for nearly a month when No. 3 General Hospital of 600 beds was pitched under canvas at Rondebosch, a few miles away, under charge of Lt.-Col. Wood, R.A.M.C., and we with three English army sisters (one of whom was Superintendent) formed the nursing staff there. Here we arrived on Christmas day and remained almost six months, having at times very active service, sometimes covered with sand during a 'Cape south-easter,' at others deluged with a forerunner of the coming rainy season, and at all times in terror of scorpions and snakes as bed fellows.

In February, some of our men began to come down, and as each new convoy arrived we eagerly searched for wearers of the maple leaf badge, and deemed it a great privilege to find them our own special patients. Many of the men came, but the officers were taken to No. 1, Wynberg, as we had no officers hospital, though, when our duties allowed, we made several visits to see any of our countrymen in hospital there. In May orders came for half our hospital equipment and nursing staff to proceed to Springfontein, O. R. C., to go under canvas there with Lieut.-Col. Keogh, our second in command, as P.M.O. Superintending Sister Browne, with half of our staff (which had of late greatly increased in numbers), including Sisters Affleck and Russell, went with Col. Keogh, Col. Wood, our P. M. O., preferring that Sister Forbes and myself should remain behind, as we were nursing in the enteric tents, which were isolated from the main camp, and had been under my charge since February. A fortnight later our half of the hospital suddenly received orders to go to Kroonstadt, O. R. C., the sisters

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

to proceed without delay. Four hours later, Sister Forbes, eight English Reserve Sisters and myself (I carrying the orders as acting Superintendent), left for Kroonstadt. After two days journey we reached Springfontein, where we spent an hour with our sisters there, who were cheerfully bearing great hardships, sister Affleck who was doing night duty telling me that the cold at night was so intense that the medicine froze in the glasses as she carried them to the different patients.

At Bloemfontein we were delayed two days, traffic being so great and accommodation for passengers limited. We were billeted at "Dames Institute" and "Grey College," two buildings used as hospitals by No. 10 General, where two of our Sisters of the Second Contingent were nursing, and the other two lying very seriously ill at the time.

After a week of most uncomfortable travelling we arrived in Kroonstadt early in the morning of the Queen's birthday. At Bloemfontein we had been further reinforced by five New South Wales Sisters. This accession was most opportune, as there was great need for us all.—Lord Roberts and Lord Methuen's forces had recently passed through, leaving sick and wounded in large numbers, and hotels, the Dutch church, Staat Huis, etc., were quickly converted into hospitals. We divided ourselves among these places, making our patients as comfortable as we could with the small equipment at our disposal. The nursing of the Kroonstadt hotel hospital was placed under my charge, where I was ably assisted by Sister Forbes and five of the English Reserve Sisters. We had here 30 officers and over 200 men, nearly all suffering from enteric fever. In this place so recently occupied by the English, during the unavoidable delay in receiving our hospital stores, we were greatly aided by Lieutenant-Colonel Ryerson and his Red Cross supplies. Suits of pyjamas, tins of condensed milk, beef essence, good whisky and many other medical comforts were given us by the Colonel, who very kindly looked out for our personal comfort as well. For over a month we remained at this hotel, then, as soon as the patients were able to be moved, went back to No. 5 General Hospital, which, with the Scottish National Hospital, had in the meantime arrived and been pitched on the outskirts of the town. Here under canvas in June, like our Sisters at Springfontein, we suffered acutely from cold, each morning the hoar frost being thick both inside and out, of our single bell tents. We were very short of water and lived on rations which an orderly cooked for us on a fire on the veldt, dinner being a very uncertain feast on a rainy day. Around our camps within 50 yards were several six-inch guns, while we had prepared in a donga, a place of safety for helpless patients, and a bomb proof shelter for all the hospital staff in case of attack, which for some time threatened us daily. Hanging in our mess was a copy of orders to be observed when attacked, etc. Several mornings we wakened to hear the boom of guns, which, however, were never near enough to necessitate our using the shelters.

Early in July, we were surprised and pleased to receive orders to proceed to Pretoria. These orders came from Lord Roberts direct, who happening to hear that we hoped to see Pretoria before leaving the country, with that great kindness which always characterizes his actions, requested the P. M. O. to transfer us for duty there at once. We waited for Sisters Affleck and Russell to join us, and two days later, in a carriage attached to Lady Roberts' train, preceded by an armoured train, we made the journey to Pretoria in 12 hours. Lord Roberts and his staff, including Major Denison, A.D.C., were at the station to meet Lady Roberts and her daughters, and Major Denison introduced us to the Field Marshal, which gave us the pleasure of thanking him personally for his kindness. In Pretoria we were attached to the Palace of Justice hospital, which included the Irish hospital, sent out by Lord Iveagh, and where we nursed for Dr. George Stoker, a London specialist, who was second in command of the Irish hospital, and from whom we received many courtesies. A week or so later we were joined by three sisters of the Second Contingent, the fourth, Sister Horne, having been invalided home. Here we remained until November, when we received orders for Wynberg, pending embarkation for Canada. After completing a year's service, Col. Gubbins, P. M. O., of Pretoria, gave us 10 days leave of absence, which we spent in visiting Natal, stopping at Ladysmith, Spion Kop, Colenzo, Chievley, Pietermaritzburg and Durban, but being unfortunately delayed in reaching Pretoria by the line having been cut, we arrived back there too late to join the Royal Canadians, with whom we were to have returned home via England.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

During our service in Pretoria, Major Denison was most kind in looking after our comfort, while after being eight months under canvas on the veldt, a roof over our heads and plenty of water seemed great luxuries.

I should like also to mention the kindness and courtesy with which we were invariably treated by the Royal Army Medical Corps. Surgeon General Wilson, the P.M.O. of the army in South Africa, with whom we frequently came in contact, was unfailing in his courtesy to us. While Col. Gubbins, P.M.O., Pretoria, Lt.-Col. Wood, P.M.O., Kroonstadt (with whom Sister Forbes and I served eight months), Lt.-Col. Keogh, P.M.O., Springfontein, Lt.-Col. Grier, P.M.O. No. 1, General Hospital, Wynberg, were equally kind and courteous to us on all occasions. Also Superintending Sister Browne, of No. 3, General, and Superintending Sister Garrioch, of No. 1, Wynberg, were most kind and appreciative of our work. We found in Lt.-Col. Biggar a firm friend for our interests at the base, and are indebted to him for many kindnesses. Of my fellow-sisters I have much pleasure in reporting: as good nurses, popular with their patients, untiring in their zeal, cheerfully bearing oftentimes great hardships. I feel I cannot say too much of them, and it is with deep regret I lose their pleasant and constant companionship.

We found 'Tommy Atkins' a very good patient and a fine fellow, always grateful, generally cheerful, bearing loss of limb, loss of health and many minor discomforts with a fortitude that satisfied our best ideas of British pluck, while his consideration for the presence of 'the Sister' was at times quite touching.

On December 13, we embarked on board the 'Roslin Castle' with the Second Contingent, which had orders to sail direct to Halifax. This was to us a great disappointment as we had looked forward with much pleasure to visiting London. After a week at sea several cases of enteric fever developed and we offered our services to Surgeon Major Duff to aid in the nursing. From Cape Verde the weather was very rough and nursing became very difficult. We were greatly saddened by the death at sea of two of our patients, Sergt. Inglis, R.C.D., who died on New Year's Day, and Lieut. Sutton, R.C.D., on January 6, when we were only two days out from Halifax. On the afternoon of January 8, we sighted the coast of Chibucto, and later in the evening, with feelings of great happiness, found ourselves back in the much loved land of 'Our Lady of the Snows.'

I cannot close this report without saying that it has been to me and my sisters a great privilege to serve the Empire in assisting in caring for the sick and wounded in far away South Africa, and if we have lessened their sufferings as we endeavoured to do, we are amply repaid for the hardships which are necessarily encountered in such a campaign.

I have the honour to be, sir, your obedient servant,

GEORGINA FANE POPE,

Supt. 1st Contingent of Canadian
Nursing Sisters to South Africa.

Colonel J. L. H. NEILSON, G.G.H.S.,
Director General Medical Services,
Ottawa, Canada.

THE 2ND CONTINGENT

On November 2, 1899, His Excellency sent a cablegram to Mr. Chamberlain, conveying an offer of a second contingent from Canada. The offer was worded as follows:—

“Deep emotion has been caused in Canada by reports of reverses in South Africa, but a strong hope is felt everywhere that no cause exists for alarm. My Ministers are, however, prepared to act on your previous despatch and send another Contingent at once if Her Majesty’s Government deem it advisable.”

An acknowledgment was sent the same day, which read:—

“I have communicated to the Secretary of State for War the generous and patriotic offer of your Government to send further Contingent. His reply will be telegraphed as soon as possible; in the meantime I desire to express my gratitude.”

And on November 7 the offer was declined, the decision being conveyed in the following words:—

“Your Ministers’ generous offer to send without delay second Contingent for service in South Africa has received the attentive consideration of Secretary of State for War and his military advisers, but they regret that under existing circumstances they are unable to accept it. The offer will, however, certainly be borne in mind, and Her Majesty’s Government will have no hesitation in availing themselves of it should future events make it desirable to do so. Her Majesty’s Government attach great importance to this fresh proof of Canadian sympathy and good will, and desire to express their grateful appreciation of it.”

THE OFFER ACCEPTED.

On December 16 Mr. Chamberlain telegraphed His Excellency as follows:—

“Referring to my telegram of November 7 following telegram received from New South Wales begins: does Her Majesty’s Government desire Colonies send more troops South Africa ends. Following sent in reply begins: willing to entertain favourably further offer from Colonies. Should such offer be made they will probably give preference to mounted troops men should be trained and good shots and they should bring own horses, communicate this to your Ministers, for guidance with reference to their offer second contingent, which Her Majesty’s Government now gladly accept.”

This telegram was followed, on December 19, by another from Mr. Chamberlain, which read:—

“With reference to expression ‘trained men’ in my telegram of December 16 Secretary of State for War explains that volunteers must be good shots and competent riders, but need not be members of any regularly drilled force.”

On December 21 His Excellency replied to Mr. Chamberlain by telegram as follows:—

“Referring to your telegram of the 16th instant, for contingent, my Ministers propose following composition:—Three squadrons mounted rifles carefully chosen for shooting and riding, and a fourth squadron of specially selected scouts from the North-west Territories.

“Strength of squadrons, 160. Also field artillery, three batteries—approximately 1,230—all ranks, 18 guns and 1,124 horses. Could you inform me whether you approve above composition when it will be proceeded with at once?”

Provisional orders were issued, bearing date December 20, for the organization of a regiment of mounted rifles of three squadrons, in accordance with the army establishment for a cavalry regiment, 1898, of a total strength of 25 officers, 417 other ranks, and 536 horses, and a brigade division of field artillery of three batteries. Orders were also being prepared for the organization of a squadron of specially selected scouts.

On December 22, Mr. Chamberlain replied as follows :—

“Referring to your telegram of December 21, Her Majesty’s Government very highly appreciate offer from your Ministers of further military assistance which they have great pleasure in accepting. They would, however, suggest for consideration of your Government whether substitution of more mounted troops of the same class as the North-west mounted troops for part of contingent of artillery proposed would not be improvement in composition of force in view of special requirements of the moment.”

Mr. Chamberlain also telegraphed His Excellency on December 24, as follows :—

I. “Referring to my telegram of December 22, after due consideration H. M. Government will be glad if your Ministers will send batteries as they proposed. They should be complete in every respect, with horses, 500 rounds of ammunition per gun if possible, and full transport.

II. “H. M. Government would also be glad to accept offer of trained post office men received through High Commissioner, October 20.

III. “Mounted troops should be organized in units of 125 non-commissioned officers and men, one captain and four subalterns, with good proportion of farriers, shoeing smiths and saddlers. They should be fully equipped, bringing, if possible, 500 rounds ‘mark two’ service ammunition, personal and regimental equipment, including camp equipment, saddlery, stable and picketing gear, nose bags, grooming kits, horse shoes for three months, farriers’ tools and regimental and other transport.

IV. “Telegraph as soon as possible date of departure of contingent and probable date of arrival in South Africa with full details as to strength, composition of armament, quality of ammunition, and any unavoidable deficiency in equipment. Send nominal rolls also by earliest opportunity. H. M. Government cordially recognize great moral and material value of assistance so readily offered by your Ministers and patriotic enthusiasm of people of Canada.”

On December 27, the Major General Commanding, to whom Mr. Chamberlain’s telegram of the 24th had been referred, reported as follows :—

“With reference to the cablegram of the Secretary of State for the Colonies, dated 24th instant, a copy of which is attached and paragraphed, I have the honour to state as follows :—

“I. The Brigade Division, Field Artillery, consisting of 3 Batteries of 12-pr. B. L. guns is in process of organization. They shall be complete in every respect with horses, 500 rounds of ammunition per gun and full transport.

“II. I understand that you have arranged for the Post Office officials.

“III. The organization of a Regiment of Mounted Rifles had already been carried into effect with Establishment laid down for Regimental Staff, and three Service Squadrons in War Establishment, before the arrival of the cablegram in question. Arrangements had further been made to supplement this Regiment by a Corps of Scouts, in accordance with the request of the Secretary of State for the Colonies, dated 22nd, with the strength of a Service Squadron.

“Owing to unforeseen difficulties as regards recruiting in the North-west Territories, the Mounted Force above mentioned has been organized into two distinct Battalions of Mounted Rifles, each consisting of Regimental Staff and 2 Squadrons.

“It would now cause great confusion and delay if this organization were altered again to meet the strength of the units indicated in the cablegram of the Secretary of State for the Colonies. I most strongly urge that representation be made that the present formation be accepted as final. *Vide* Schedule attached.—Schedule not printed herein—practically the same as establishment subsequently authorized.

“The two Battalions of Mounted Rifles shall be fully equipped with 500 rounds Mark (II) S.A.A., personnel and regimental equipment, including camp equipment, saddlery, stable and picketing gear, nose bags, grooming kit, horse shoes for three months, farrier’s tools, and regimental transport.

“IV. The probable date of departure shall be communicated later.”

On December 28, a recommendation was submitted for the consideration of His Excellency in Council, in accordance with the foregoing, and on December 30 His Excellency approved it. The following is the [report of the Committee of Council, approved by His Excellency :—

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

“The Committee of the Privy Council have had under consideration two telegraphic despatches, hereto annexed, dated December 22 and 24, 1899, respectively, from the Right Honourable Mr. Chamberlain, Secretary of State for the Colonies, relative to the formation of the 2nd military contingent for service in South Africa.

“The Minister of Militia and Defence, to whom the said despatches were referred, submits that they have been carefully considered, and the opinion of the Major General Commanding obtained, as will be seen by the accompanying report from that officer, dated December 27, 1899, by which it is shown that the organization of the corps in question was nearly completed when the above mentioned cablegrams were received ; and as the Minister agrees with the Major General Commanding upon the advisability of keeping the contingent in its present state, he the Minister, therefore recommends that Your Excellency may be pleased to cable the Home Authorities in order to have the present formation accepted as final.

“The Committee advise further that Your Excellency may also be moved to transmit a certified copy of this Minute, and the annexed report, to the Right Honourable Her Majesty’s Principal Secretary of State for the Colonies.

All which is respectfully submitted for Your Excellency’s approval.”

(Sgd.) JOHN J. McGEE,
Clerk of the Privy Council.

On December 28, the provisional orders issued on the 20th were amended, to provide for a regiment of mounted rifles of two battalions, to be designated the *1st and †2nd Battalion, the Canadian Mounted Rifles.

The squadrons of the 1st Battalion were designated ‘A’ and ‘B’, and those of the 2nd, ‘C’ and ‘D.’

CANADIAN MOUNTED RIFLES—ESTABLISHMENT.
REGIMENTAL STAFF.

RANKS.	PERSONNEL.						HORSES, PUBLIC.				
	Officer.	Warrant Officer.	Staff-Sergeants and Sergeants.	Artificers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	Total.	Riding.	Draught.	Pack.	Total.
Lieutenant-Colonel.....	1						1	3			
Second in command.....	1						1	3			
Adjutant.....	1						1	3			
Transport officer.....	1						1	3			
Quartermaster.....	1						1	1			
Medical officer.....	1						1	2			
Veterinary officer.....	1						1	2			
Regimental Sergeant-Major.....		1					1	1			
Quartermaster-Sergeant.....			1				1	1			
Transport Sergeant.....			1				1	1			
Orderly-room Sergeant.....			1				1	1			
Orderly-room Clerk.....			1				1	1			
Sergeant-trumpeter.....			1				1	1			
Farrier Quartermaster-Sergeant.....				1			1	1			
Armourer-Sergeant.....				1			1				
Saddler-Sergeant.....				1			1	1			
Saddletree-maker.....				1			1	1			
Bâtmén.....						13	13				
Cooks.....						2	2				
Drivers.....						11	11		22		22
Wagonmen.....						3	3				
Orderlies for medical officer.....						2	2		2		
Machine-gun detachment.....						3	3	3			
Total regimental staff.....	7	1	5	4		34	51	29	24		53

* Changed to Royal Canadian Dragoons, from August 1, 1900.
† Changed to Canadian Mounted Rifles, " "

DETAIL OF SERVICE SQUADRON.

RANKS.	PERSONNEL.							HORSES, PUBLIC.			
	Officers.	Warrant Officer.	Staff Sergeants and Sergeants.	Artificers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	Total.	Riding.	Draught.	Pack.	Total.
Major	1						1	3			3
Captain.....	1						1	3			3
Subalterns.....	4						4	12			12
Squadron Sergeant-Major			1				1	1			1
Squadron Quartermaster Sergeant			1				1	1			1
Sergeants			8				8	8			8
Farrier Sergeant				1			1	1			1
Corporal Shoeing-smith.....				1			1	1			1
Shoeing-smiths				3			3	3			3
Saddler.....				1			1	1			1
Trumpeters					2		2	2			2
Corporals.....						8	8	8			8
Privates.....						108	108	108		1	109
Drivers						4	4		8		8
Bâtmen.....						12	12				
Cooks						2	2				
Wagonmen						2	2				
Total Service Squadron.....	6		10	6	2	136	160	152	8	1	161

DETAIL OF BATTALION.

	PERSONNEL.							HORSES, PUBLIC.				REMARKS.
	Officers.	Warrant Officers.	Staff-Sergeants and Sergeants.	Artificers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	Total.	Riding.	Draught.	Pack.	Total.	
Regimental Staff	7	1	5	4		34	51	29	24		53	Two Maxim Guns on galloping carriages are included.
Two Service Squadrons	12		20	12	4	272	320	304	16	2	322	
Total strength of Battalion.....	19	1	25	16	4	306	371	333	40	2	375	

REGIMENT OF CANADIAN MOUNTED RIFLES.

Two Regimental Staffs.	14	2	10	8		68	102	58	48		106	Four Maxim Guns.
Four Service Squadrons.....	24		40	24	8	544	640	608	32	4	644	
	38	2	50	32	8	612	742	666	80	4	750	

ENROLMENT AND CONCENTRATION.

Enrolment in the 1st Battalion was carried on and the troops were concentrated as hereunder :—

" A " SQUADRON.	PLACE OF ENROLMENT.	PLACE OF CONCENTRATION.
1st Troop.....	Toronto.....	} Toronto
2nd Troop.....	{ Toronto	
	{ St. Catharines.....	
3rd Troop.....	{ Peterborough.....	} Montreal.
	{ Ottawa	
	{ Montreal	
4th Troop.....	{ London	} Toronto.
	{ Kingston.....	
" B " SQUADRON.		
1st Troop.....	Winnipeg	Winnipeg.
2nd Troop.....	{ Portage la Prairie.....	} Winnipeg.
	{ Virden	
	{ Brandon	
	{ Yorkton.....	
3rd Troop.....	{ Winnipeg	} Quebec.
	{ Montreal	
	{ Quebec	
4th Troop.....	{ Cookshire	} Halifax.
	{ Sussex, N.B.....	
	{ St. John, N.B.....	
	{ Canning, N.S.....	

The Second Battalion was recruited from the North-west Territories. The enrolment of the men and the concentration of the troops were carried on under arrangements made by the Comptroller of the North-west Mounted Police Force. The numbers enrolled at the different centres were as follows :—

North-west Mounted Police.....	134
Calgary	48
Regina	44
Edmonton	40
Pincher Creek	30
Macleod	22
Moosomin	12
Maple Creek	11
Prince Albert	3
Manitoba	2
Ontario	2
Nova Scotia	2
Quebec	1
Unknown	1

Officers.

The following is a list of the Officers appointed to Commissions, their appointment dating from December 29, 1899. The distributions of Officers below are those first made, which were subject to change by the Commanding Officers after embarkation.

1st BATTALION.

Commanding Officer.

Lessard, F. L. (Lieut.-Col. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

Major.

(2nd in Command.)

Evans, T. D. B., (Major and temporary Lieut.-Col. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

" A " SQUADRON.

Comd'g. Squadron.

Forester, W., Capt. Royal Canadian Dragoons.

Captain.

Pearse, C. St. A. (Capt. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

Lieutenants.

1st Troop, Elmsley, J. H., (Lieut. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)
 2nd " Cockburn, H. Z. C., (Capt. G. G. B. Guards.)
 3rd " Van Luven, R. M., (Capt. 4th Hussars.)
 4th " King, A. H., (Major 1st Hussars.)

" B " SQUADRON.

Comd'g. Squadron.

Williams, V. A. S., (Capt. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

Captain.

Greenwood, H. S., (Lieut.-Col. 3rd Dragoons.)

Lieutenants.

1st Troop Van Straubenzee, C. T. (Lieut. Royal Canadian Dragoons.)
 2nd " Young, F. V., (2nd Lieut. Manitoba Dragoons.)
 3rd " Turner, R. E. W., (Capt. Q. G. C. Hussars.)
 4th " Borden, H. L., (Major K. C. Hussars.)

Adjutant.

Nelles, C. M. (Capt., Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

Quartermaster.

Wynne, J. H. (Capt., 2nd Regiment C. A.)

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Medical Officer.

Duff, H. R. (Sur.-Maj., 4th Hussars.)

Transport Officer.

Harrison, C. F. (Capt., 8th Hussars.)

Veterinary Officer.

Hall, W. B. (Vet. Major, Royal Canadian Dragoons.)

Promotion since organization :

Lieut. A. H. King, to be Captain, vice Pearse, deceased, from October 17, 1900.

2nd BATTALION.

Commanding Officer.

Herchmer, L. W. (Commissioner N.W.M.P.)

Major.

(2nd in Command.)

Steele, S. B. (Superintendent N.W.M.P.)

"C" SQUADRON.

Commanding Squadron.

Howe, J. (Superintendent N.W.M.P.)

Captain.

Macdonell, A. C. (Inspector N.W.M.P.)

Lieutenants.

1st Troop,	Moodie, J. D.	(Inspector N.W.M.P.)
2nd "	Begin, J. V.	(" ")
3rd "	Wroughton, T. A.	(" ")
4th "	Inglis, W. M.	late Capt. H.M. Berkshire Regiment.)

"D" SQUADRON.

Commanding Squadron.

Sanders, G. E. (Superintendent N.W.M.P.)

Captain.

Cuthbert, A. E. R. (Inspector N.W.M.P.)

Lieutenants.

1st Troop,	Davidson, H. J. A.	(Inspector N.W.M.P.)
2nd "	Chalmers, T. W.	(Lieut Reserve of Officers.)
3rd "	Taylor, J.	(Lieut. Manitoba Dragoons.)
4th "	Cosby, F. L.	(Inspector N.W.M.P.)

Adjutant.

Baker, M. (Inspector N.W.M.P.)

Quartermaster.

Allan, J. B. (Inspector N.W.M.P.)

Medical Officer.

Devine, J. A. (Surgeon-Lieut. 90th Battalion)

Transport Officer.

Eustace, R. W. B.

Veterinary Officer.

Riddell, R.

PROMOTIONS AND APPOINTMENTS AFTER ORGANIZATION.

The following promotions and appointments were made after the formation of the Battalion :—

To command the Regiment—Lieut.-Colonel T. D. B. Evans, from the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles, vice Herchmer, retired, from August 1, 1900.

To be Second in Command—Major J. Howe, vice Steele, retired, from March 7, 1900.

To be Second in Command—Major G. E. Sanders, vice Howe, seconded, from May 20, 1900.

To be Majors—Captain A. E. R. Cuthbert, vice Howe, promoted, from March 7, 1900 ; Captain A. C. Macdonell, vice Sanders, promoted, from May 20, 1900.

To be Captains—Lieutenant T. W. Chalmers, vice Cuthbert, promoted, from March 7, 1900 ; Lieutenant J. D. Moodie, vice A. C. Macdonell, promoted, from May 20, 1900 ; Lieutenant J. V. Begin, vice Chalmers, killed in action, from November 3, 1900.

To be Lieutenant—Sergeant Charles Tryon, vice Begin, promoted, from November 3, 1900.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

BRIGADE DIVISION OF FIELD ARTILLERY.

The three Batteries of the Brigade Division of Field Artillery were designated "C," "D" and "E." One section of each Battery was formed from the Royal Canadian Artillery.

ESTABLISHMENT.

Brigade Division Staff:—

RANKS.	Officers.	Warrant Officer.	Staff-Sergeants and Sergeants.	Artificers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	Total.	HORSES.		
								Public.		Total.
								Riding.	Draught.	
<i>Brigade Division Staff..</i>										
Lieut.-Colonel Commanding.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4	2	.....	2
Adjutant.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....		3	.....	3
Medical Officer.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....		1	.....	1
Veterinary Officers.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....		1	.....	1
Sergeant-Major.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	.....	1
Sergeant-Trumpeter.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	3	1	.....	1
Clerks.....	.....	.....	2	.....	.....	.....		.....	.....	.....
Drivers.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	3	9	.....	6	6
Sergeants and Bâtmén.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	6		.....	.....	.....
*Orderlies for Medical Officers.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	2
Total, Brigade Division Staff..	4	1	3	.....	.....	9	17	8	8	16
<i>Detail of a Field Battery.</i>										
Major.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5	2	.....	2
Captain.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....		1	.....	1
Subalterns.....	3	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....		3	.....	3
Battery Sergeant-Major.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	8	1	.....	1
Battery Quarter-Master-Sergeant. . .	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....		1	.....	1
Sergeants.....	.....	.....	6	.....	.....	.....		6	.....	6
Farrier Sergeant.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	9	1	.....	1
Shoeing-smiths.....	.....	.....	.....	4	.....	.....		1	.....	1
Collarmakers.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....	.....		.....	.....	.....
Wheelers.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....	.....	2	.....	.....	.....
Trumpeters.....	2		2	2	.....	2
Corporals.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	6	147	6	.....	6
Bombardiers.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	6			.....
Gunners.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	76		.....	.....	.....
Drivers.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	62		.....	100	100
Spare.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5	8	13
Total Field Battery.....	5	.....	8	9	2	150	174	29	108	137
<i>Recapitulation.</i>										
Brigade Division Staff.....	4	1	3	.....	.....	9	17	8	8	16
3 Field Batteries.....	15	.....	24	27	6	450	522	87	324	411
Total Brigade Division in the Field.....	19	1	27	27	6	459	539	95	332	427

*Two men belonging to Batteries of the Brigade Division (one of them an acting bombardier) trained to the duties, act as orderlies for Medical Officer; one man drives the cart for medical stores.

ENROLMENT AND CONCENTRATION.

Enrolment took place and the Batteries were concentrated as follows :—

BATTERY.	PLACES OF ENROLMENT.	PLACE OF CONCENTRATION.
"C"	Kingston	Kingston.
	Gananoque	
	Winnipeg	
	Hamilton	
	St. Catharines	
"D"	Toronto	Ottawa.
	Guelph	
	Ottawa	
	London ..	
"E"	Port Hope	Quebec.
	Quebec	
	Montreal	
	Granby.....	
	Woodstock	
	Newcastle	
	Sydney	

OFFICERS.

Officers were appointed, their appointment dating from December 29, 1899. The postings of Officers to Sections as hereunder were subject to changes by the Commanding Officers of Batteries, after embarkation.

Commanding Officer.

Drury, C. W. (Lieut.-Col., Royal Canadian Artillery.)

"C" BATTERY.

Major.

Hudon, J. A. G. (Major, Royal Canadian Artillery.)

Captain.

Panet, H. A. (Captain, Royal Canadian Artillery.)

Lieutenants.

- 1st Section, Leslie, J. N. S. (Lieut., Royal Canadian Artillery.)
- 2nd " King, W. B. (Captain, 7th Field Battery, C.A.)
- 3rd " Irving, L. E. W. (Captain, Reserve of Officers.)

'D' BATTERY.

Major.

Hurdman, W. G. (Major, 2nd Field Battery, C. A.)

Captain.

Eaton, D. I. V. (Captain, Royal Canadian Artillery.)

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Lieutenants.

1st Section, Van Tuyl, T. W. (Capt., 6th Field Battery, C. A.)
 2nd " McCrea, J. (Lieut., 16th Field Battery, C. A.)
 3rd " Morrison, E. W. B. (Lieut., 2nd Field Battery, C. A.)

' E ' BATTERY.

Major.

Ogilvie, G. H. (Major, Royal Canadian Artillery.)

Captain.

Costigan, R. (Major, 3rd Field Battery, C. A.)

Lieutenants.

1st Section, Murray, W. P. (Lieut., 9th Field Battery, C. A.)
 2nd " Ogilvie, A. T. (Lieut., Royal Canadian Artillery.)
 3rd " Good, W. C. (Capt., 10th Field Battery, C.A.)

Adjutant.

Thacker, H. C. (Capt., Royal Canadian Artillery.)

Medical Officer.

Worthington, A. N. (Surgeon Major, 53rd Battalion.)

Veterinary Officer.

Massie, J. (Veterinary Major, Royal Canadian Artillery.)

Attached for Duty.

Mackie, H. J. (Capt., 42nd Battalion, late 2nd Field Battery.)

CONDITIONS OF SERVICE.

The conditions of service in the 2nd Contingent were similar to those of the 1st, with the exception that the pay from the date of enlistment until the date of arrival in South Africa, were the rates of pay issued to members of the North-west Mounted Police Force instead of those issued to members of the Canadian Permanent Force.

DEPARTURE FOR SOUTH AFRICA.

The purchasing of the horses, and the fitting out of three transports for the conveyance of horses in addition to troops, made the work of organizing the 2nd Contingent much greater than that of the first. The transports chartered were the *Montezuma*, *Laurentian* and *Pomeranian*. It was expected, and arrangements were being made to that end, that the two first named would sail January 18, and the *Pomeranian*, two days later, all from Halifax.

The carrying out of these arrangements could not, however, be effected, owing to rejection of the *Montezuma* by a medical board, in consequence of there being seven cases of typhoid fever among the crew when she arrived at Halifax. The S.S. *Milwankee* was chartered to take her place. This vessel was at sea at the time, bound for New Orleans. She proceeded to Halifax as soon as possible, where she arrived February 4, at 6.20 p.m.

DEPARTURE OF ' LAURENTIAN. '

On January 20th the troops allotted to the *Laurentian* embarked. At 10.45 on the morning of that day, ' D ' and ' E ' batteries were inspected by the Major General Commanding. They were subsequently reviewed and addressed by His Honour the Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia, and by the Honourable the Minister of Militia and Defence.

The Batteries then proceeded, escorted by a detachment of the 1st Battalion, The Canadian Mounted Rifles, and Bands of the 1st Battalion, Leinster Regiment, the 63rd "Halifax" Rifles and the 66th "Princess Louise Fusiliers," to Her Majesty's Dock Yard, where they embarked at 2 p.m. for Capetown, and sailed at 8 a.m. the 21st.

The following is the detail of the Forces embarked :—

BRIGADE DIVISION OF FIELD ARTILLERY.

	Officers.	W.O.	Staff Sgts. and Sgts.	Trum- peters.	Other ranks.	Horses.
Division Staff.....	3	1	3	...	9	16
"D" Battery.....	5	...	7	2	158	130
"E" ".....	5	...	8	2	136	93
Total Embarked.....	13	1	18	4	303	239
Detained owing to symptoms of pneumonia in horses.....			1	...	24	51
Required to complete.....	1	...	...	...	...	...
Establishment.....	14	1	19	4	327	290

2nd Battalion, The Canadian Mounted Rifles.

1 Sergeant, 11 men and 22 horses.

Attached Officers, Nurses and men.

- 1 Representative Red Cross Society—Surgeon Lieut-Colonel G. Stirling Ryerson, Canadian Army Medical Staff.
- 1 Chaplain—Reverend W. J. Cox.
- 1 Extra Medical Officer--Lieut. F. Vaux, Canadian Army Medical Staff.
- 4 Nurses :
 - Miss D. Hurcomb, Senior Nurse.
 - " M. Horne.
 - " M. Macdonald.
 - " M. P. Richardson.
- 1 Officer for duty with Machine Gun Section of 2nd Battalion, The Canadian Mounted Rifles, Lieut. A. L. Howard, Unattached List, with 2 horses.
- 1 Officer of Postal Corps—W. R. Ecclestone.
- 4 Men of Postal Corps :
 - Rowan Johnston.
 - Kenneth A. Murray.
 - Thomas E. Bedell.
 - Joseph Lallier.
- 1 Private, Yeomanry Cavalry, Imperial Forces—Pte. Wainwright.

14

DEPARTURE OF 'POMERANIAN.'

The *Pomeranian* sailed for Capetown on January 27 with the 2nd Battalion of the Mounted Rifles on board.

Following is the marching out state of the battalion :—Officers, 17 ; W.O., 1 ; sergeants, 22 ; trumpeters, 4 ; Other ranks, 277 ; horses, 295.

Attached :—1 chaplain, the Reverend J. C. Sinnett.

One officer, 2 sergeants, 34 other ranks and 58 horses remained in Halifax to be conveyed to South Africa by the next transport.

DEPARTURE OF 'MILWAUKEE.'

The remainder of the 2nd contingent embarked on the *Milwaukee* on February 21.

The following is the detail of the forces embarked :—

(a.) 1st Battalion, the Canadian Mounted Rifles : 17 officers, 352 other ranks and 368 horses, being 2 officers short of the authorized establishment (Lieut.-Colonel Lessard and Major Forester who were in South Africa), also 7 horses.

(b.) 'C' Battery, Canadian Brigade Division of Field Artillery : 4 officers, 168 other ranks and 137 horses, being short of establishment 1 officer (Captain Panet who was in South Africa), and 1 man.

(c.) Attached to 1st Battalion, the Canadian Mounted Rifles: Detachment of 2nd Battalion, C.M.R., unable to embark on SS. *Pomeranian* for want of accommodation : 1 officer, 37 other ranks and 58 horses.

(d.) For instructional purposes to replace officers of the Canadian Militia in South Africa and appointed to the Canadian Mounted Rifles or Brigade Division of Field Artillery : Lieut.-Colonel W. D. Gordon, D.O.C. No. 5 Military District, Major T. L. Boulanger, commanding 1st 'Quebec' Field Battery, Lieut. J. E. Burch, 2nd Dragoons.

(e.) Lieut. J. A. MacDonald, 82nd Queen's County Infantry, to be attached to and absorbed into the 2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment.

(f.) Reverend W. G. Lane, as chaplain.

(g.) Seven saddlers, 11 shoeing-smiths and 5 wheelers for service with the Imperial Forces.

(h.) Attached to 'C' Battery, Canadian Brigade Division of Field Artillery : Detachments of 'D' and 'E' Batteries of the Canadian Brigade Division of Field Artillery, detained at Halifax owing to symptoms of pneumonia in the horses, 1 sergeant, 24 other ranks and 51 horses.

(i.) Captain H. J. Mackie, 42nd Battalion, for duty with Field Artillery.

RECAPITULATION.

		Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
<i>Laurentian</i>	{ 'D' and 'E' Batteries, Brigade Staff.....	13	326	239
	{ Attached	9	5	2
	{ 2nd Battalion C.M.R.....		12	22
<i>Pomeranian</i> ..	{ 2nd " "	17	304	295
	{ Attached, chaplain.....	1		
<i>Milwaukee</i>	{ 1st Battalion, C.M.R.....	17	352	368
	{ Attached to 1st Battalion, C.M.R.....	1	37	58
	{ 'C' Battery.....	4	168	137
	{ Attached to 'C' Battery.....		25	51
	{ For instructional and other purposes.....	6		
	{ Artificers		23	
Total embarked in three transports.....		68	1,252	1,172

GUNS, AMMUNITION, ETC.

In addition to the 68 officers, 1,252 other ranks and 1,172 horses, these three transports carried guns, carriages, ammunition, &c., as hereunder :—

Guns, carriages and limbers.....	18	
Ammunition wagons and limbers.....	18	
Store wagons and limbers.....	3	
Forge wagons and limbers.....	5	
Wagons, light.....	14	
Wagons, prairie.....	22	
Gun ammunition {	Cartridges, filled, cordite, rounds.....	9,000
	Fuzes, T. and P.....	9,450
	Shell, shrapnel, filled.....	8,550
	Shot, case.....	450
	Tubes, friction T.....	10,080
S. A. A. {	.303.....	370,000
	Pistol.....	74,480

REPORTS.

Reports on their respective command of officers commanding corps are subjoined as follows :—

1. From Lt.-Colonel F. L. Lessard, commanding Royal Canadian Dragoons, with lists of casualties, &c., (Report "C", page 81).

2. From Lt.-Colonel T. D. B. Evans, commanding the Canadian Mounted Rifles, with list of casualties, &c., (Report "D", page 106).

3. From Lt.-Colonel C. W. Drury, A.D.C., commanding Brigade Division of Field Artillery (Report "E", page 116), with reports from Lt.-Colonel J. A. Hudon, (page 119), and Majors W. G. Hurdman (page 138), and G. Hunter Ogilvie (page 149), commanding "C", "D" and "E" Batteries, respectively, with lists of casualties, &c., (page 151).

4. From Miss Hurcomb, senior nurse of the nursing sisters who accompanied the 2nd Contingent, (Report "F", page 153).

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

REPORT C.

From Officer Commanding Royal Canadian Dragoons to Adjutant General, Ottawa.

TORONTO, January 21, 1901.

SIR,—In accordance with your instructions, I have the honour to submit my report concerning the regiment under my command while employed on active service in South Africa.

ORGANIZATION.

When the regiment arrived at Cape Town, South Africa, it was styled the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles and had been raised as a special service regiment for duty in South Africa, the Royal Canadian Dragoons forming a nucleus.

It was therefore placed at a disadvantage to the Canadian Permanent Artillery and Infantry, both of whom retained distinctive Royal titles.

It was felt by all that the changing of the name of the corps from that conferred by the Queen to that of 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles precluded the regiment from wearing in the field the distinctive badge given them by Her Majesty, and from attaching to the regiment the honours it would strive to earn in this campaign.

The regiment desired to be allowed to feel that they were serving as members of a corps which Her Majesty had specially honoured, but which had for the first time an opportunity of showing its devotion to Her Person and Empire.

I therefore applied that the Royal title be given back to the regiment, which I am pleased to say was granted by the authorities.

ARRIVAL OF SS. "MILWAUKEE."

The ss. *Milwaukee* arrived in Cape Town at 4 p.m. on the 21st March, 1900, but owing to the rough weather prevailing the disembarkation of the regiment did not take place until 10 a.m. on the 26th March, 1900.

As soon as the regiment had disembarked it was ordered to camp at Green Point, Cape Town, and remained at the latter place until 1 p.m. on the 4th April, 1900.

INSPECTION, APRIL 1, 1900

The regiment was inspected by Colonel Cooper, Base Commandant, for Lieut. General Sir Forestier Walker, K.C.B., C.M.G., on the 1st April, 1900, at Green Point Common.

Colonel Cooper expressed the regret of General Forestier Walker at not being present, and stated that he was well satisfied with the efficiency and appearance of the men and horses.

MARCHING ORDERS.

The regiment received orders to march on the 4th April from Cape Town to Stellenbosch, a distance of 33 miles. The march was accomplished in one and one-half days, arriving at Stellenbosch at 5 p.m. on the 5th April.

STELLENBOSCH.

The regiment remained in camp at Stellenbosch from the 5th to the 10th April.

I received orders on the 8th April to entrain the regiment in three parts for Bloemfontein as follows :—

"B" Squadron on the 8th April.

A Squadron on the 9th April.

Details of the regiment on the 10th April.

From the 10th until the 30th April the regiment was separated. "B" Squadron entrained for Bloemfontein on the 8th April, but received orders to detrain when it reached Norval's Pont. The squadron arrived at the latter place on the 10th April and was ordered to proceed to Springfontein by route march, which was reached on the 12th April.

"A" squadron entrained on the 9th April and on arrival at Naauwpoort was ordered to Bethulie, there to detrain and proceed by route march to Springfontein.

On arrival at Bethulie, orders were given the squadron to escort 700 mules and 50 transport wagons. The distance between Bethulie and Springfontein is 26 miles. This distance was covered in one day, reaching Springfontein on the 14th April.

The details of the regiment entrained at Stellenbosch on the 10th and arrived at Springfontein on the 13th April, where they received orders to join the regiment.

On the 15th April, "B" squadron was ordered to escort a Howitzer ammunition column and a convoy for Bloemfontein. This squadron reached Bloemfontein at noon on the 21st April and was at once ordered to proceed without delay with the First Mounted Infantry Corps to Springfield, Leeuwkop and Waterworks. Here they were in action on the 22nd, 23rd and 24th April, and one day were under very heavy fire, Lieutenant Van Straubenzee having his horse shot and a few more horses being wounded. The squadron then returned with the First Mounted Infantry Corps to Fisher's Farm.

On the 16th April, "A" squadron and regimental staff were ordered to escort 2,000 mules and horses, a convoy and a battalion of the City Imperial Volunteers from Springfontein to Bloemfontein.

The above column, which was under the command of Colonel MacKinnon, City Imperial Volunteers, arrived at Bloemfontein without incident at 5.30 p.m. on the 22nd April.

On arrival at Bloemfontein I received orders to camp at Lawton Farm, six miles south of Bloemfontein. The regiment remained in camp at the above farm for one day when we received orders to proceed to Fisher's Farm, situated six miles north of Bloemfontein, to relieve the Inniskillings for outpost duties.

INSPECTION.

"A" squadron and regimental staff were inspected on the 25th April by the Field Marshal Commander in Chief, Lord Roberts, on which occasion he expressed himself as being well satisfied with the appearance of the squadron generally, and in addressing the men he referred to the behaviour of the Second (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, at Paardeberg, remarking that he felt sure the First Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles would sustain the reputation Canadians had already won.

On the 1st of May the regiment complete, with the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps, under the command of Lieut.-Colonel E. A. H. Alderson, left Fisher's Farm.

The 1st Corps formed part of the 1st Mounted Infantry Brigade, under command of Major General E. T. H. Hutton, A.D.C., the establishment of which I append to this report. See appendix marked C 1, page 102.

IN ACTION AT BOSCHMAN'S KOP.

The regiment came into action for the first time at 12.35 p.m. on the 3rd of May at Boschman's Kop under the following circumstances :—

The regiment was ordered to furnish the advance guard, and it was 'B' Squadron's turn to perform this duty. The advance party of the advance guard was under command of Lieut. C. T. Van Straubenzee and Lieut. F. V. Young. The enemy allowed the advance party to come close up to their position and then opened a very heavy fire on our men, which forced the advance party to retire on the main body.

The regiment was then ordered to dismount and get into position, the machine guns working on our right.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

After an engagement of a couple of hours the enemy retired.

Our casualties on that day were few, only one man wounded, No. 104, Private F. Brown, slightly wounded through the leg; besides there were four horses wounded.

The 1st Mounted Infantry Corps then resumed the advance, and bivouacked that night about five miles north of Boschman's Kop.

CONSTANTIA AND BEISEBUILT KOP.

On the 4th of May, at 12.30 p.m., we again came in contact with the enemy at Constantia, and for two hours the regiment was under both artillery and rifle fire. 'B' Squadron was ordered to hold a farm, while 'A' Squadron was ordered to dismount for action.

The regiment on this occasion, the first time under shell fire, behaved as well as could be expected. The remarkable part of this engagement was that the regiment escaped without any casualties.

The enemy retired leaving behind a considerable portion of their effects, which were burnt.

We bivouacked at 5 p.m. two miles north of Beisebuilt Kop.

VETT RIVER.

The regiment came in action for the third time on the 5th of May, at 2 p.m., the enemy again occupying a strong position in and near the Vett River and the surrounding kopjes.

'A' Squadron was detailed to escort a battery, R.H.A., and 'B' Squadron acted dismounted. The latter squadron, under my command, received instructions to advance towards the river and engage the enemy. As soon as the advance party had shown itself within rifle fire the enemy at once opened fire on them, forcing them to retire. The enemy's fire could not easily be located, but we managed after a while to reach the river. On this occasion Lieutenants Borden and Turner, with five men, swam the river, and when on the opposite bank found some 40 or 50 of the enemy entrenched in a stone kraal. These men engaged the enemy, and while they were drawing their attention I ordered 'B' Squadron to mount; and, finding a narrow ford, we crossed the river under pretty sharp rifle fire. The crossing was effected in conjunction with the 1st Mounted Infantry on our right and left.

As soon as the enemy saw us in possession of their side of the river they retired.

The casualties on our side were again few, only one horse shot and two or three wounded.

For this engagement the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps received the congratulations of the Field Marshal Commander in Chief.

WELGELEGEN.

We arrived at Welgelegen at 1.30 p.m. on the 7th of May, when the General received intelligence that the enemy, about 8,000 strong, were only 8 miles further at Virginia Siding. We were at once ordered to saddle up and proceed to Zand River. Here the enemy were blowing up the railway line and bridge. We came in contact with the enemy at 4 p.m. They were occupying a strong position on the Zand River. As soon as they saw us they kept up a heavy artillery fire. Finding the enemy too strong and strongly entrenched, the General ordered a retirement on Welgelegen.

We remained at Welgelegen for one and a half days waiting for the main body to arrive. On the 9th of May the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps advanced to Du Preez Laager where it bivouacked for the night.

On the 10th May the Cavalry Division having arrived with General French in command, the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps worked in concert with them.

At 11.30 a.m., the same day, the cavalry came in touch with the enemy. Again the regiment was called upon to dismount and were under fire for several hours.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The enemy retired at about 3 p.m. There were no casualties in the regiment except a few horses grazed.

On the 11th, 12th and 13th the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps marched continually until it reached Kroonstadt at about 5 p.m. the 13th May without opposition.

The 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th and 19th May the regiment, along with the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps, remained in Kroonstadt resting and awaiting supplies.

On the 17th May, one hundred men of the 1st and 2nd Canadian Mounted Rifles took part in an expedition about 35 to 40 miles north-west of Kroonstadt to arrest some of the enemy whose presence had been reported in that vicinity.

They returned on the 19th May with one Boer commandant, nine Johannesburg police and twenty Boer prisoners.

On the 19th of May the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps received orders to be ready to march the next day (Sunday) at 8 a.m. after church service.

DOORN SPRUIT.

At 8 a.m., the 20th of May, the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps paraded mounted for church service, ready to march off. The service was held by Capt. Lane, Chaplain to the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles.

At 9 a.m. the corps marched off in the direction of Doorn Spruit, where it halted at the junction of Doorn Spruit and Klerksdorp road and bivouacked for the night. No enemy in sight.

BOSCH KOPJES.

The corps marched off at 6 a.m., the 21st, and about 3 p.m. halted at Bosch kopjes to bivouac for the night. Yet no enemy in sight.

ENGLISCHE-KUIL ESSENBOSCH.

Marched off at 6 a.m., the 22nd, from Englische Kuil and arrived at Essensbosch at about 1 p.m., the 23rd May. The regiment bivouacked here.

PARIS-VILJOEN'S DRIFT.

Marched off at 4.30 a.m., the 24th May. On arriving at Paris, the cavalry division crossed the Vaal and the 1st and 3rd Mounted Infantry Corps marched to Viljoen's Drift which they reached late in the evening, having covered nearly thirty miles during the day.

The cavalry division bivouacked on the north side of the Vaal at White Kopfontein and the mounted infantry on the south side of the Vaal.

RIET SPRUIT.

At 6 a.m., the 25th, the 1st and 3rd Mounted Infantry Corps began to cross the Vaal at Viljoen's. Here we came in contact with a force of the enemy who had evidently been taken by surprise and must have only arrived during the night. They had taken up a position on the kopjes to the north-west of Viljoen's Drift. A few shots were exchanged, but nothing serious to report.

We successfully crossed the drift and arrived at Riet Spruit at 1 p.m. the same day.

WILDEBEEST-FONTEIN.

At 6 a.m., the 26th May, the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps left Riet Spruit and arrived at Wildebeest-Fontein at 5 p.m. The regiment bivouacked here for the night, the 1st Mounted Infantry having been ordered to march some four miles further to

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

relieve the cavalry who had successfully driven the enemy out and taken a position on the kopjes.

OLIPHANTS-VLEI (KLIP RIVER).

The 1st Mounted Infantry Corps marched off at 6 a.m., on the 27th and came in sight of Klip river at about 11 a.m.

The G.O.C. had received intelligence that the enemy were in strength at the Berg, and he ordered the Mounted Infantry to advance to some small kopjes which were under and commanded by the Berg.

The 2nd Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles were ordered to advance first and the 1st Battalion C.M.R. to support them. We had first to cross a bridge at the river and then an open plain about one mile long. No sooner had we crossed the bridge than the enemy opened a pretty brisk fire, first on the 2nd Battalion and then on the 1st Battalion. The firing came from heavy guns as well as the pom poms and long range rifle fire.

The small kopjes which we were ordered to occupy and hold, were only about 1,500 yards from the enemy's position, and at the time of our advance were occupied by the enemy, but when they saw the persistent advance of the Canadian Mounted Rifles they retired on their main position.

The intention was for the mounted infantry to hold these kopjes to enable the cavalry division to make a detour towards Doornkop and turn the enemy's right, which was eventually done.

Just before dark on the afternoon of the 27th May the 1st Battalion relieved the 2nd Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles who were in the first line, and remained there till the next afternoon. During all this time the enemy kept a pretty steady shell fire on the position we occupied.

The 2nd Battalion then took up another position to our left.

On the afternoon of the 28th May, at about 1 p.m., the turning movement having been accomplished, the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles was ordered to retire from its awkward position which we did under shell fire. This firing on the part of the enemy evidently was their last effort before they fell back on Johannesburg.

That night we bivouacked a little past Doornkop.

DRIEFONTEIN

The 1st corps marched off at 6 a.m. on the 29th May and arrived at Driefontein at about 7 p.m. the same day.

About noon on that day our patrols reported a convoy of Boers to our right front. Our G.O.C. immediately asked permission to pursue them, which was granted by General French.

The 1st and 3rd corps set at once in pursuit and successfully ended the day by the 1st corps capturing three wagons, one of which was loaded with ammunition and the other two full of looted clothing and other stores.

The 3rd corps were more successful in capturing a gun.

Here I must specially mention Lieutenant Borden, who with his troop acted as a flank guard to the 1st corps. They were first to come in touch with the rear of the enemy's convoy and it was they who captured the wagons.

No. 431 Pte. F. S. Morrison, of 'B' squadron, was with Lieut. Borden, and while the men were dismounted, some of the led horses got loose and he had enough pluck and coolness to collect these horses and bring them under cover. This was done under rifle fire.

The same day we learned that Johannesburg was evacuated by the enemy.

KLIPFONTEIN.

At 8 a.m. the 2nd June the 1st and 3rd Mounted Infantry Corps removed their camp to Klipfontein, close to a dynamite factory.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

KALK-HEUVEL.

On the 3rd June we marched to Kalk-Heuvel, the 1st and 3rd corps refusing the cavalry division's right.

At about 4 p.m. we heard some firing in front and we soon learned that the cavalry were hotly engaged. The G.O.C. sent for the 1st corps and we at once set a trot to join in the fray.

On arrival at the spot we found that the enemy had allowed the cavalry advance party to enter well in between a range of kopjes and then opened a raging fire on them, killing and wounding nearly all of the men who had been so unfortunate as to form part of this advance party.

The 1st and 2nd Battalions Canadian Mounted Rifles were at once ordered to make a detour and try to turn the enemy's right flank, which they eventually did. The 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles occupied for the night the kopje which commanded the pass.

BROEDER-STROOM.

The next day, 4th June, the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles being in occupation of the main kopje, which covered the advance of the division, were ordered to form the rear guard and follow after all the troops and baggage had gone through the pass.

The Mounted Infantry Brigade bivouacked on the night of the 4th at Broeder-Stroom, with the exception of the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles, who had to bring up the rear and could not get up to the brigade camp, so had to remain another night in position, holding the kopjes commanding the pass.

There were several hills and spruits to pass, and the baggage and ammunition column had a hard time to get through this place.

ZANDFONTEIN.

During the whole of the 5th June, the 1st Battalion was again kept as a rear guard. The road which the division had now to follow was good and level, and as there was no enemy to check our advance, the transport got well up and the whole of the division bivouacked that night at Zandfontein, which was only three miles north-west of Pretoria.

On arrival at Zandfontein we learned that we were in possession of Pretoria and that Lord Roberts had entered the town the same day.

KOUDOESPOORT.

On the 6th June the Mounted Infantry Brigade marched through the streets of Pretoria on its way to Koudoespoort, which is situated about seven miles east of the town.

The 1st and 3rd Mounted Infantry corps remained in camp at Koudoespoort the 6th, 7th and 8th June.

KAMEEL-DRIFT.

On the 9th June, at 7 a.m., the brigade marched to Kameel-Drift, and remained there until the 11th June.

KAMEEL-FONTEIN.

At 6 a.m. on the 11th the cavalry division and Mounted Infantry Brigade advanced toward Kameel-Fontein. Intelligence had come in that the Boers under DeLarey and Grobler, were in strength holding kopjes N. N-E. and E. of Kameel-Drift.

A general advance took place and the cavalry division with Mounted Infantry were to turn the enemy's right.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

The cavalry division with Mounted Infantry Brigade were so weak, having lost many horses during the rapid advance to Pretoria, that we failed to accomplish our purpose. We barely managed to hold our own for two consecutive days of hard fighting, in which the 1st and 2nd Battalions were engaged in holding important kopjes, which at times were only at from 500 to 800 yards from the enemy.

The main body, under Lord Roberts, were more successful, and forced the enemy to retire, thus relieving us from a very awkward position.

The Mounted Infantry Brigade were ordered to advance to Brockenhouts-kloop-Drift, where we bivouacked for the night.

DERDEPOORT.

On the 13th June, at 6.30 a.m. the Mounted Infantry Brigade returned to Derdepoort, which is situated about seven miles east of Pretoria.

On the 16th June a column of mounted infantry and artillery and a battalion of infantry, under Major General E. T. H. Hutton, marched from Derdepoort to Rustenberg.

One squadron, made up of the fit men and horses of the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles, accompanied the above expedition.

This detachment distinguished itself during the expedition, in that it captured two Boer guns.

Major General Hutton in the course of a letter addressed to the Military Secretary, Headquarters, under par. 2, says :—"I desire to bring to the favourable notice of the Commander-in-Chief, Lieutenant Young, Sergeant Ryan and Sergeant Purdon, and a detachment of the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles (now Royal Canadian Dragoons), also Sergeant Vaughan and Private Murchie, Remington's Guides, for their pluck and enterprise in cleverly surprising the enemy, and bringing away the guns, under difficult circumstances."

The above with other documents were mentioned in General Orders 84, October, 1900.

The remainder of the brigade, including what was left of the 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles, remained in camp.

I must here draw your attention to the marvellous way in which we had escaped so far, having no casualties in killed and wounded. The regiment had been continually fighting with the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps, ever since it left Bloemfontein, and had often been exposed to very heavy firing, and yet the luck seemed to stay with us, as there were no casualties, except perhaps a few men grazed and a few horses killed or wounded.

I must note especially the Zand River, Klip River and Kameel-Fontein fights, where every one who saw us in the middle of the fights thought our casualties would have been heavy, but were surprised on hearing that they were practically nil.

THE PYRAMIDS.

On the 30th June, at 4 p.m., a force as described below, and under my command, were ordered to occupy a position in the neighbourhood of the western end of the kopjes known as the Pyramids, at a distance of about seven miles west of the Pietersberg Railway (near Waterval).

	Men.
Regular Mounted Infantry.....	100
1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles.....	50
New Zealand Mounted Rifles.....	50
	—
	200

The object of the above force was to cover the approach to Pretoria from Hebron and north-west, and prevent the Boers inside Pretoria from communicating with the enemy without.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Helio communication was established with Pretoria which was about eighteen miles distant.

On the 3rd July this small force returned to Derdepoort, having accomplished the object for which it had been sent out.

RIETVLEIFONTEIN.

The regiment marched off with the 1st Mounted Infantry corps at 7 a.m., on the 4th July, and arrived at Rietvleifontein at 4 p.m. No enemy in sight.

At 8.30 p.m., on the 5th July, the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps, who had by this time joined General Mahon's force, left Rietvleifontein and after having marched about 12 miles the column was halted.

We bivouacked here, but the horses remained saddled and men slept with their arms and accoutrements.

RIETFONTein.

The column again resumed its march at daybreak and at about 5 p.m. arrived at Rietfontein.

During the day 'A' Squadron C. M. R., were sent as an escort to two R. H. A. guns, which were ordered to shell a ridge where a small party of Boers had been seen and had fired on our flankers.

OLIPHANTSFONTEIN.

At 8 a.m., the 1st Mounted Infantry Corps marched towards Oliphantsfontein following the Standerton road, a Boer laager being reported at the latter place.

The 1st C. M. R. were escort to the R. H. A. guns.

The enemy were found in force at Oliphantsfontein, and shelling commenced on both sides. The G. O. C. finding the enemy too strong, ordered a retirement on Rietfontein.

The regiment had that day one officer, (Capt. Nelles) and seven men wounded and five horses killed and wounded.

From the 6th until 11th July inclusive, the regiment remained with 1st Mounted Infantry Corps at Rietfontein, where we were practically surrounded and worried by the enemy for six consecutive days.

The regiment during that time was employed either on outpost duty or escort to guns.

Lieut. F. V. Young was slightly wounded during one of these fights at Witklip.

WITTPOORT—KOFFYSPRUIT—OLIPHANTSFONTEIN—RIETVLEI.

At 2 p.m. on the 11th July a portion of the cavalry division under General French arrived, and at daybreak next day a general advance on the Boer position took place, which covered a range of hills called Wittpoort, Koffyspruit, Oliphantsfontein.

The advance was most successful, and in a few hours the enemy were in full retreat.

The same night, General French, with cavalry division, and General Mahon, with 3rd Mounted Infantry and I. L. H., returned to Pretoria.

General Hutton established a camp for his brigade at Rietvlei and we remained at latter place until a general easterly advance on Middelberg, which took place on the 23rd July.

In the meantime a line of outposts had to be kept, in which the 1st Battalion C. M. R. took their turn of duty.

On July 16, the enemy made a strong attack on our line of outposts at Wittpoort, Dorstfontein, Koffyspruit and Oliphantsfontein.

"B" Squadron 1st C.M.R. were detailed to support the Mounted Infantry outposts and "A" Squadron 1st C.M.R., formed part of a reserve of troops remaining in camp.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

This reserve, under my command, was eventually sent to the left of the position (Wittpoort) to strengthen our left flank, held by New Zealanders, which had been turned by the enemy. The 2nd Battalion C.M.R., under Col. Evans, were detailed from the reserve for this special work which they successfully did, and the Boer attack was frustrated on that flank.

"B" Squadron, 1st Battalion C.M.R., was sent to the ridge on the right of Wittpoort to support the Royal Irish Fusiliers who were holding the Poort.

It was here that, on the advance being ordered, the following casualties occurred :

Lieut. H. L. Borden, killed.

" J. F. Burch, "

No. 61, Pte. A. W. Brown, wounded.

" 175, " L. N. R. Mulloy, "

With reference to the above, the following letter was received by me from the O.C. Royal Irish Fusiliers :—

RIETVLEI, July 17, 1900.

DEAR COLONEL LESSARD,

In the few words I spoke to you to-night at the funeral of your two very gallant officers, I am afraid I failed to convey the deep gratitude my regiment owes to the 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles (now R.C.D.) for their gallantry in going so nobly and fearlessly to the succor of our beleaguered detachment at Wittpoort yesterday.

The counter attack your regiment made occurred at a most critical moment, and it doubtless saved many of the lives of our detachment.

We deplore greatly the losses you have sustained and shall ever bear in grateful memory the gallantry and self sacrifice of the 1st C. M. R. on this occasion.

I shall deem it a great favour if you will kindly convey to your officers, N.C officers and men the purport of this letter.

Yours very faithfully,

(Sgd.) JOHN REEVES, Col.,

Comdg. 2nd Battn. (Princess Victoria's) Royal Irish Fusiliers.

Copy of telegram sent by Major General E. T. H. Hutton, to Military Secretary Army Headquarters, "Please inform Commander in Chief that Lieutenant H. L. Borden, one of the officers 1st C.M.R., killed in action Rietvlei yesterday was only son of the Honourable F. W. Borden, Minister of Militia, Canada.

"Lieuts. Borden and Burch 1st C.M.R., were killed yesterday while gallantly leading their Canadians in a counter attack upon the enemy's flank at a critical juncture of their assault upon our position at Wittpoort. I have twice brought the name of Lieutenant Borden to the Commander in Chief's notice in my despatches for intrepid and gallant conduct. The funeral takes place to-night and both of these officers are buried near the farm at Riet Vlei."

On the 20th July the following telegram was received by General Hutton, commanding 1st Mounted Infantry Brigade, from Lord Roberts :—

"Secretary of State for War communicates to me Her Majesty's wish that before returning to their respective colonies, representative contingents from each colony should visit the mother country, probably to be reviewed personally by her and receive a banner to be presented to each contingent, to be held in future by the corps to which it belongs. Contingents from South Africa are naturally included in this invitation. Please communicate this to all officers commanding colonial contingents within your command, and telegraph me as speedily as possible the number of men who would wish to avail themselves of the offer, naming regiment. It will probably be necessary to limit the number, but I cannot decide on that until I know the number likely to accept. Kindly acknowledge receipt.

"(Sd.) ROBERTS."

The parade ordered to find out the number likely to avail themselves of this offer, resulted in all who were present wishing to avail themselves of this opportunity.

BOSCHPOORT.

At 6 a.m. on the 23rd July, the 1st Mounted Infantry Brigade left their old camp at Rietvlei and marched to Boschpoort, arriving at the latter place at 7 p.m., where we bivouacked for the night.

During the advance the 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles formed the advance guard. to begin with, then afterwards were flank guard. We came in touch with the enemy at 12.30 p.m., and at 4 p.m., and both times the enemy retired. No casualties to report.

VLAKFONTEIN.

On the 24th July, the column moved off at 5.45 a.m., and marched to Vlakfontein, where it halted for the night.

The brigade on this day came in touch with the enemy's rear guard at 3 p.m. Nothing unusual to report; the enemy retiring all this time.

NAAUWPOORT.

At 5.45 a.m., on the 25th July, the brigade marched off and arrived at Naauwpoort at 7.30 p.m., and bivouacked here for the night.

On this day "B" Squadron, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles, formed a rear guard to brigade transport and 5-inch guns.

GOOD HOPE FARM.

The brigade moved at 6 a.m. on the 26th July, and arrived at Good Hope Farm at 9 p.m. Bivouacked here. Nothing to report.

MIDDELBERG.

On the 27th July, the brigade marched off at daybreak and arrived at Middelberg at 3 p.m.

From the 28th July until the 25th August, the regiment was kept on the lines of communication between Middelberg and Belfast, and was detailed to hold the following places at different times as follows :—

At Buffelskloof	31st July
Doornkop	1st August
Bankfontein from	2nd to 6th "
Pan Station	6th to 11th "
Nooitgedacht	11th to 13th "
Pan Station	13th to 15th "
Leeuwfontein	15th to 17th "
Nooitgedacht	17th to 23rd "
Belfast	25th "

The regiment formed part of the reserve during the three days' fighting at Belfast-Bergundal.

From the 25th August until the 23rd November, the date on which the regiment left Belfast for Pretoria, en route for Cape Town, thence to Canada, we were employed on several detached duties, such as reconnaissances, patrolling, and also used as the mounted troops to General Smith-Dorrien's Flying Column.

As it would not be of interest to the public to relate the daily routine of the regiment, I shall give the more important events which occurred during the above mentioned dates.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

On the 27th August, the following extract from Army Orders of the 21st August was published for information :—

‘In view of the representation that nearly all the officers and a large proportion of the men serving in the unit known as the 1st Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles, belong to the Royal Canadian Dragoons, that unit will in future be designated the ‘Royal Canadian Dragoons.’ (Authority W.O. letter, No. 58, 2,396, 24, 7, ’00.)

On the 30th August a force, as under, was ordered to parade under command of Lieut.-Colonel Lessard :—

Royal Canadian Dragoons, 85 men.

Two companies Royal Irish, 120.

Two Royal Canadian Artillery guns.

Two machine guns.

The object of this force was to make a reconnaissance in the Steelport Valley between Spitzkop and Boschpoort.

Wires had been sent by the G.O.C. to Wonderfontein and Nooitgedacht, where the Canadian Mounted Rifles were stationed, to connect with us at a stated hour.

At the last moment orders were given that the Royal Canadian Dragoons, with two machine guns, were alone to undertake the reconnaissance from Belfast.

At 7 a.m., the little force left Belfast, and at about 11 a.m. came in touch with the enemy.

We fully expected that the forces at Wonderfontein and Nooitgedacht would have connected with us, but they failed to do so, not having received the telegrams sent by the General.

For about two hours we were in a very precarious position ; our retreat was cut off and we were forced to fight our way and retreat towards Wonderfontein.

On that day I had no casualties as to men, but had several horses wounded.

On the 8th September, Lieutenant A. L. Howard, with five non-commissioned officers and men, and one machine gun (colt) from the Royal Canadian Dragoons, were attached temporarily to a flying column under General Hutton, who were to proceed to Devil’s Kantur.

On the 23rd September, a small patrol of the Royal Canadian Dragoons left Wonderfontein for the Boschpoort valley, and soon after leaving came in touch with the enemy.

After a short skirmish the following casualties occurred :

Killed—No. 168, Private A. M. Spence ; No. 21, Private A. Radcliff.

Wounded—No. 88, Private F. Thornton.

Some time previous to this, one machine gun with detachment from the Royal Canadian Dragoons had been lent to the Canadian Mounted Rifles stationed at Nooitgedacht, and on the 25th September I received the following letter, which speaks for itself :—

From Officer Commanding Troops, Nooitgedacht,

To Officer Commanding Royal Canadian Dragoons.

“SIR,—I have the honour to express to you my appreciation of the prompt manner in which Private Harbottle of your machine gun section carried out his duties as camp sentry yesterday morning.

“His challenge, followed by prompt action, undoubtedly prevented the camp being surprised, and reflected great credit on himself and his corps.

“I have the honour to be, sir,

“Your obedient servant,

“(Sd.) T. D. B. EVANS, Lt.-Col.,
Commanding Troops at Nooitgedacht.”

From information received about 1st October, it was known that several small parties of Boers, numbering from 5 to 15 men each, were hovering in and around Boschpoort. At the same time information was received that the railway line was threatened between

Wonderfontein and Belfast. Besides the above information, two men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons had been killed and another wounded while patrolling in the Boschpoort valley.

In consequence, 65 non-commissioned officers and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons and two machine guns under my command paraded at 8 a.m. and proceeded to the north-west of Belfast.

The advance was towards Spitzkop, down the Steelport valley.

This small force soon got in touch with the enemy, who had taken up positions in two places at Boschpoort and Klipfontein.

After a good deal of firing on both sides, the enemy evacuated their positions and retired to Spitzkop. At one time the enemy were re-enforced by a party of twenty Boers coming from the direction of Nooitgedacht. The left flanking patrol were in the meantime fired on from a ridge on our left front and where the enemy could be seen. Sergeant Ryan, with a few men, were sent up to take a position on our left and worked along the ridge.

Having attained the object of my reconnaissance, and also driven the enemy away from the immediate surroundings of Belfast, I ordered a retirement, which was carried out in a very satisfactory manner.

I congratulated Sergt. Ryan, R.C.D., on that day for the manner in which he carried out his instructions.

Our casualties were two horses killed and one wounded.

On the 4th October, I took command of the troops at Belfast.

On the 5th October, at 8 a.m., 60 non-commissioned officers and men of the R. C. Dragoons and one gun of the Royal Canadian Artillery, under Lieut. Morrison, the whole under my command, paraded and marched in the direction of Suikerbosch Kop for a reconnaissance of the enemy north and north-west of Belfast.

At 10 a.m., the scouts of this little force got in touch with the enemy, who occupied positions at two or three places at Weltefreden, about 7 miles north of Belfast.

The usual precautions were then taken, and a general advance took place. After a little fighting, the enemy retired and took successive positions behind rocks.

The artillery came into action three or four times.

The enemy were pushed back and evacuated several ridges until they reached Spitzkop.

At 2 p.m. I was then satisfied as to the strength and position of the enemy, and I returned to Belfast.

Our casualties on that day were: No. 143, Pte. P. McCarthy, wounded; five horses killed and three wounded.

On the 12th October, 30, men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons; one Colt, under Lieut. Howard; and one field gun, R.C.A., under Lieut. Morrison, paraded under my command at 12.30 p.m.

An intelligence man had brought in the news from the vicinity of Carolina that he had seen close to his farm about 300 Boers, and that they had shot at him.

The above small force marched off at the time appointed, and at 2 p.m. it reached the heights south-west of Belfast overlooking the farm where the Boers had been seen. Every farm was thoroughly searched, and after I had reports from the patrols sent in different directions, to the effect that no enemy were in sight, I gave orders to return to Belfast.

With reference to above, it was learnt afterwards that the Boers had come to where the man had reported them to be, but retired before we arrived on the scene.

On the 14th October, I received the following telegram from No. 6 Yeomanry hospital, Pretoria: "Capt. Pearse is dangerously ill with tuberculosis."

During the fourteen days I had command of the troops at Belfast we had very exciting times. Information was being continually brought in by spies and reconnaissances, &c., that a Boer commando was concentrating N. of Belfast under Louis Botha and another S. of Belfast under Prinsloo. The former, about 400 to 500 strong, with one long tom, two field guns and one pom-pom, the latter 1,000 strong, with three field guns and one pom-pom.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

General French with cavalry division left Machadodorp on the 13th October for Carolina, following the main road, while General Mahon went towards Geluk.

As soon as General Mahon arrived close to Geluk, the enemy attacked him from three sides, and he had to retire towards Delmanutha.

General Lyttleton coming down in a south-westerly direction from Lydenberg arrived at Dullstroom on the 11th October. For two consecutive days General Lyttleton's command fought the enemy N. of Belfast.

I am giving you these details to show in what a precarious position Belfast was in for a few days.

It is well known now, from information received from Boer prisoners, that the enemy intended making a dash for the railway line to raid supplies, also if possible to retake Belfast.

Thanks to the excellent work done by my regiment on outpost duties, as well as in the reconnaissances, patrolling, &c., thereby giving correct information, the Boer plans were frustrated. Then the timely arrival of Generals French and Lyttleton put an end to our anxiety.

On the 17th October, the following extracts from Column Orders by Major General E. T. H. Hutton, C.B., A.D.C., were published for general information.

GENERAL HUTTON'S FORCE BROKEN UP.

"I. The force under the command of Major General E. T. H. Hutton, C.B., A. D. C., is broken up in consequence of the conclusion of operations in the Elands Valley, Eastern Transvaal and upon the conclusion of active hostilities in South Africa.

FAREWELL REMARKS BY MAJOR-GENERAL HUTTON, C.B., A.D.C.

II. 'Major-General Hutton upon relinquishing the command of the force placed under his orders, desires to convey to the officers, non commissioned officers and men of the various units who have served under his command during the campaign, his sincere and hearty congratulations upon the success that, under Providence, has attended their efforts throughout the operations in which they have been engaged.

'The units of the imperial troops selected for service with the mounted infantry and those of the colonial mounted troops, representative of Canada, of the six colonies of Australia and of New Zealand have alike distinguished themselves by their steadiness under fire, by their gallantry in the field, and by their uniform good conduct in camp.

'The mutual sympathy, admiration and good will which have been so conspicuous between the imperial and colonial troops comprising his command must, in the Major General's opinion, be necessarily conducive to that unity and solidarity of feeling, which is so important and essential a factor in the success of the army of the British Empire.

"The Major General especially desires to record his appreciation and thanks for the excellent services rendered by all members of the staff connected with his force, both imperial and colonial, but especially to Lieut.-Colonel Martyr, D.S.O., Chief Staff Officer, and those of his Headquarter's Staff.

DEPARTURE OF MAJOR GENERAL HUTTON, C.B., A.D.C.

III. 'Major-General Hutton, accompanied by Lieut.-Colonel Onslow, N.S.W.M.I., A.D.C., and Lieut. Fox, Q.M.I., extra A.D.C., proceed to-day to Cape Town en route to England.

'True copy

'(Sgd.) J. HILL. Major D.A.A.G.

'Acting C.S.O. General Hutton's Column.'

PRETORIA, October 8, 1900.

On the 19th October, a telegram from Pretoria was received by me reporting the death of Captain C. St. A. Pearse on the evening of the 17th October of tuberculosis.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

On the 26th October, information was received through Intelligence Department that 300 Boers with one gun were to attack Delmanutha that morning.

In consequence fifty N.-C. O's. and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons with one machine gun under Lieut. A. H. King, paraded at 3 a.m., and made a reconnaissance to the E. and S. E. of Belfast.

They proceeded about 10 miles in the direction mentioned, and made a thorough search of all the surrounding farms, but failed to locate the enemy.

On the 28th October, a party of sixteen N. C. O's. and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons under Lieut. A. H. King, paraded at 2 a.m., and surrounded a farm house situated about 5 miles south of Belfast, but found that the enemy had vacated the house.

On the 29th of October, I received the following letter from Major General E. T. H. Hutton, C.B., A.D.C. : —

CAPE TOWN, October 14, 1900.

MY DEAR COLONEL,—“ I am leaving for England on the 17th, and although I shall hope to see you, your officers and your men in London before the end of the year, I cannot sail without sending you a few words of congratulation upon all the success which has attained your regiment while under my command in the late campaign.”

“ It must be with real feeling of satisfaction that your officers and yourself look back upon the result of the last seven months, and Canada has good reason to be proud of the manner in which your regiment has upheld the reputation of Canadian troops.”

“ It has been the lot of your regiment, composed as it is of representative detachments from nearly all the cavalry regiments in the Canadian Militia, to illustrate what the type of Colonel Mounted Rifles can accomplish in conjunction with Imperial Mounted Infantry and when acting with regular cavalry.”

“ Nothing can be more certain than the impossibility of raising militia cavalry to the standard of regular cavalry, but it has been demonstrated and clearly proved that organized as Mounted Rifles, our colonies can put into the field a force of men of the utmost value. I devoutly hope that this fact will be brought home, not only to every man in the Dominion Militia Cavalry, but also to the Canadian people and Canadian public opinion.

“ You have had the inestimable advantage of serving under Colonel Alderson, and of learning what mounted troops, when handled with judgment, skill and dash, can do. It has been a constant pleasure to me to note how excellently your regiment has profited by its opportunities and what real good service it has performed.

“ The loss in killed and wounded has been abnormally small considering the number of actions in which your regiment has been engaged, this fact under the circumstances is a guarantee in itself that the officers have done well, and the men their part as fighting men.

“ I shall be glad if you will convey to your officers and men my sincerest congratulations upon the success throughout the campaign, and my hope for their happy return to their homes.

“ Please tell your officers that Mrs. Hutton will be so glad to welcome any of them who are in London, at our house, 34 Eaton Place, where I shall hope to see you.

“ Wishing you Godspeed.

‘ Believe me,

‘ Yours sincerely,

‘ (Sgd.) E. T. H. HUTTON, *Major General.*

‘ To Lieut.-Colonel LESSARD,

‘ Comdg. Royal Canadian Dragoons

‘ (late 1st C.M.R.)’

At 11 p.m., on the 30th October, forty N.C.O's and men, in two parties of twenty men each, paraded under Lieutenants King and Cockburn for the purpose of surrounding two farms which were situated some four or five miles S.E. of Belfast.

The farms were surrounded and two armed Boers were captured. One of these was shot through the arm in attempting to escape.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

VAN WYKS VLEI.

The regiment under my command marched out at 5.30 p.m., on the 1st November, proceeding to the place of rendezvous, the railway station, joining the column under Lt.-Col. Spens. This column forming part of the force under General Smith-Dorrien.

The remainder of General Smith-Dorrien's force, under his personal command were to operate in a south-easterly direction, and our column (Col. Spens') in a south-westerly direction.

The objective being Van Wyks Vlei, and if possible Wilkloof.

It was very dark and raining when the column started, but shortly after, the most awful weather commenced, cold and a steady downpour, but as the columns were miles apart and working to support each other, neither could retire.

Heavy rain, cold piercing wind, thick misty weather and frightfully dark, made the night march most difficult.

At 1 a.m., on the 2nd November, the column was ordered to halt, to wait for day-break, and my regiment furnished the outposts.

At this juncture I do not think there was a man in the whole column who was not drenched through, and who little thought of seeing home again. For my part I must admit that I have never, nor could ever imagine it possible to pass such a miserable night.

At daybreak the column resumed its march, but it was most difficult for the men to take any interest in their work as they were so cold and miserable. I have seen men who could not mount their horses they were so stiffened with cold.

The regiment furnished the advance guard and flanking patrols to the column and our movements were a complete surprise to the enemy, but the thick weather favoured the latter.

Before reaching Van Wyks Vlei, the enemy fired on the right of our advance guard, which fire seemed to come from a farm house about two miles distant. I despatched a troop under Lieutenant Turner to make good this house, which, when surrounded, proved to be empty. The enemy was occupying the ridge above and behind the house, but retired on the approach of our men.

Both columns (General Smith-Dorrien's and Colonel Spens'), reached Van Wyks Vlei at 7 a.m., and although in touch with the enemy, the General decided to fall back on Belfast, which by this time was about eighteen miles off, owing to the inclemency of the weather and the frightful state the men and horses were in.

The two columns then retired north, the Royal Canadian Dragoons forming a rear guard to Colonel Spens' column, which preceded that of General Smith-Dorrien.

On reaching a spruit (creek) it was found that the Boers were pressing very closely on the Gordon Highlanders, who were a rear guard to Smith-Dorrien's column. At this time 1 officer and 12 men of the Gordons were wounded.

Anticipating that the Boers would likely seize the ridge commanding the spruit where the artillery were crossing in file, I despatched one troop and Colt gun, under Lieutenant King, to take up a position commanding ridge and covering spruit.

This move was most successful, and the enemy were kept at a respectable distance from the Highlanders.

I must emphasize here on the importance of the little Colt gun for such work. It is most deadly and can be kept firing to the last minute, and finally can be retired at full gallop with little or no chance of being hit, as it offers practically no target. It is so small that only one horse is required to drag it.

Both columns arrived in camp at 4 p.m., utterly exhausted by cold and rain, a steady rear guard action having been fought all through.

CASUALTIES.

No. 203, Private A. McDonald, wounded.

Two horses killed and several wounded.

On the 3rd November about forty men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons paraded sick with rheumatism contracted during the night march of the 1st and 2nd November. Their hands, arms and legs were swollen and some of them were in a very bad state.

On the 6th November, General Smith-Dorrien wishing to take up and complete the work which he had left unfinished three days previous, marched out at 3 a.m., the objective being Witkloof and the Komati river, with the following troops:—

Royal Canadian Dragoons,	} Advance troops under Col. Lessard.	} Advance guard under Col. Spens.
Squadron, 5th Lancers,		
2 Pom Poms,		
2 guns Royal Canadian Artillery,		
4 companies Shrops. Light Infantry.	} Main column.	} Rear guard under senior officer.
Canadian Mounted Rifles,		
4 guns, 84th Battery, R.F.A		
2 5-inch guns,		
Royal Engineers section,		
4 companies Shrops. Light infantry,		
2 companies Suffolks,		
Bearer Company.		
Baggage		
2 companies Suffolks,		
20 N.C.O. and men, 5th Lancers.		

The following is a copy of the telegram published by the General Officer Commanding on the two days fighting on the 6th and 7th November, and I cannot improve on it:—

“ Force has returned here this morning, having had two successful days of extremely hard fighting. Object was to destroy farms which Boers use as outposts and camps and from which they fought on the 2nd instant, as well as to clear their laagers from Witkloof (421) and Liliefontein (22). Force left Belfast at 3.30 a.m. on 6th, and Boers opposed us first at Eersterlingfontein at 7.40 a.m. Then they hung on our front, flanks and rear like Cossacks, but we steadily forced them back across Van Wyks Vlei (96) until they stood at an immensely strong position along the Komati, extending from Witkloof to Liliefontein. There they made a most determined stand, and it was 4 p.m. before a wide movement brought the Suffolks and Canadian mounted troops (the Royal Canadian Dragoons) round their left flank and turned them out. We cleared Boers across the Komati and on all roads on far side convoy and men (Boers) moved away towards Carolina. All day in all directions signal fires were springing up. I have already reported casualties six killed, twenty wounded, mostly Shropshires, who fought splendidly. On the 7th, instead of crossing Komati, which I had led Boers to expect by moving on, and camping at Liliefontein after driving them away, we turned E. along N. bank. At once several hundred Boers galloped back to seize old positions on Komati, but too late, as with great dash Col. Evans with Canadian Mounted Rifles and two guns (84th) under Major Guinness, galloped two miles and got key of position and held some 300 in river bed. The 5 inch guns at the same time did splendid practice at masses of Boers in open. As Boers were working down Komati, I sent orders to Col. Spens, commanding advanced guard, to seize high ground at Van Wyks Vlei, which he did with 5th Lancers under Capt. Collis.

“ It was soon evident that the Boers had been largely reinforced since yesterday, and Col. Lessard with Royal Canadian Dragoons and two Canadian guns, latter under Lieut. Morrison, covered the rear, and I have no praise too high for the devoted gallantry they all showed in keeping enemy off infantry and convoy.

“ At 2 p.m. an event unprecedented in this war occurred. Some 200 Boers suddenly charged mounted, rear guard and guns, firing wildly off their horses right up to 70 yards from our dismounted dragoons.

The fact that our total casualties in the day were only 14, shows how wild their fire was.

“ I have several names to bring to the C. in C's. notice for devoted gallantry, some will be recommended for the V. C. The Boers behaved splendidly to the 16 Canadians, some of them wounded, who remained for a few hours in their hands when they were released. The latter report the Boer losses very heavy.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

"After Canadians repulsed Boers there, latter worked wider round in very large numbers, but our guns did magnificent work often into masses of them, and they never again seriously molested us. We camped at Blyvoortzich (12) at 4 p.m. We fired 563 shells besides pom poms. Our casualties second day were, 2 killed, 12 wounded. We burned 12 farms, captured one prisoner, 14 cattle, 350 sheep, 19 horses and killed a lot of Boers.

Copy of morning order by Major General Smith-Dorrien D. S. O., 9th November, 1900.

"The summary of news published with force orders of yesterday, was a copy of a telegram from the G. O. C. sent to the chief of staff on the recent two days fighting, and the following copy of telegram is the reply thereto.

"From Lord Roberts to General Smith-Dorrien, November 8th, No. C 6146. You seem to have had two most successful days with enemy, and I congratulate you and all your troops on the admirable manner in which the operations were carried out. Colonel Lessard, with his Canadians, had a difficult task in guarding the rear on your return march, and deserves great credit, as do all who were with him."

By order,

(Sgd.) F. WELDON, *Capt.*

C.S.O. Smith-Dorrien's Force.

The casualties for the Royal Canadian Dragoons, I am sorry to say were heavy, considering that I had less than one hundred men of all ranks with me. They were as follows :—

KILLED.

No. 26, Corporal E. A. Filson.

No. 102, Act. Lce. Corpl. W. J. Anderson.

DIED OF WOUNDS.

No. 105, Sergt. N. D. Builder.

SEVERELY WOUNDED.

Lieut. J. H. Elmsley.

Lieut. R. E. W. Turner.

No. 30, Sergt. F. F. Metcalfe.

No. 42, Pte. H. H. Loosemore.

No. 157, Pte. W. Dougall.

No. 327, Pte. A. H. Roberts.

No. 185, Pte. W. A. Kinsley.

SLIGHTLY WOUNDED.

Lieut. H. Z. C. Cockburn.

No. 312, Sergt. Far. C. E. Cope.

No. 370, Private F. Berg.

No. 225, Private G. Richardson.

Pte. A. H. Roberts begged of me to report him as only slightly wounded on account of his mother. On consideration of this request I did so. He was shot through both wrists.

Lieut Cockburn is still in performance of his duties.

I must also mention that we saved our two Canadian guns in the nick of time. The Boers, who charged with great dash, were at one time only about fifty yards from the guns. Had we not held out as long as we did, not only would the guns have been captured, but we would probably have lost the greater part of the baggage column, besides causing a great many casualties amongst the infantry who were retiring and consequently at a disadvantage with the enemy who were splendidly mounted. The

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

regiment had a most difficult task to perform, but acted with the utmost gallantry, especially two troops left behind to cover the retreat of the guns, which comprised a portion of the 2nd troop 'A' Squadron and 2nd troop 'B' Squadron.

Their behaviour was most gratifying to me, as it must have been to themselves.

The following telegram was also received from General Alderson, our late Corps Commander.

From Gen. Alderson, to Col. Lessard.

Pretoria, Nov. 9, T 25—"To-day's summary of news received, my best congratulations. I hope the wounded are doing well."

On November 9, orders were received from the G. O. C. to hold ourselves in readiness to proceed to Pretoria.

The following special orders were published by Major General H. L. Smith-Dorrien D.S.O.

Commanding Pan to Dalmanutha.

HEADQUARTERS, Belfast, November 20, 1900.

"Major General Smith-Dorrien cannot allow the Royal Canadian Dragoons and the left section, "D" Battery, Royal Canadian Artillery, and the Canadian Mounted Rifles, to leave his command en route for Canada, without thanking them for the grand work they have performed for him in the Belfast Flying Column.

In eight of the last nineteen days they have been engaged with the Boers, and have proved themselves splendidly brave and mobile mounted troops, and it has afforded the Major General much pleasure to have been able to send through General the Honourable N. Lyttelton to the Field Marshal Commanding-in-Chief, detailed accounts of their splendid feats of arms and to have been able to bring to the special notice of the Commander-in-Chief five officers and seven non-commissioned officers and men for distinguished conduct in the field during these operations.

In wishing them all "good-bye and good-luck" he has no words to express how great a loss they will be to the flying column. He can merely say that he would choose no other mounted troops in the world before them if he had his choice, and he sincerely hopes the day may come when he may have them again under his command."

By order,

(Sgd.)

F. WELDON, Capt.

C.S.O. Smith-Dorrien's Force.

On December 6, the following letter was received by me from Br. General E. A. H. Alderson:

My Dear Lessard—"I have just come back from the station where I went to see your people off, but owing to the washing away of a bridge in the storm of last night they did not actually go, but it made me realize how soon they would do so, and I should like to write and tell you how very sincerely sorry I am that they will so soon cease to belong to the Mounted Infantry brigade."

"For just 7 months we have soldiered together, and each succeeding month my feeling has been 'the more I get to know the 1st C. M. R. (I must call them by the name I knew them best by) the better I like them.'

"We in the regular army, are brought up with cut and dried ideas and red tape, and I should like to say how much I appreciate the ready way in which those of your people who have not been so brought up, have fallen in with my ways.

"I have only put in a very brief order in Brigade Orders about your going, as I do not think that orders are quite the place to express one's sincere feelings; but I hope you will make what use you like of this letter and that you will let all your people know how very sincerely for myself and for the Brigade I regret their going (though I am glad for their sakes) and also how thoroughly I appreciate all the excellent work they have done.

I have always been proud to speak of them and write home of them as 'My Canadians.'

Yours very sincerely

(Sgd.) E. A. H. ALDERSON, *Br. General.*

Commanding M. I. Brigade.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

From the above narrative it will be seen that the regiment marched 1,700 miles and took part in the following engagements:—

April 22, 23, 24—Leeuw Kop (Waterworks), 3 days' fighting.

May 3—Brantfort, 1 days' fighting.

May 4—Constantia, 1 days' fighting.

May 5—Vett River, 1 days' fighting.

May 7—Virginia Siding, 1 days' fighting.

May 10—Verdris Verdrag, 1 days' fighting.

May 25—Viljeons Drift, 1 days' fighting.

May 27, 28—Klip Riverburg, 2 days' fighting.

May 30—Near Driefontein, 1 days' fighting.

June 3—Kalkhenvel, 1 days' fighting.

June 11, 12—Diamond Hills, 2 days' fighting.

June 18—Loutspans Drift, 2 days' fighting.

July 6—Rietfontein (6), 1 days' fighting.

July 7—Olphansfontein, 1 days' fighting.

July 8, 9, 10—Reitfontein, 3 days' fighting.

July 12—Withoort-Koffyspruit, 1 day's fighting.

July 16—Witpoort-Doostfontein, 1 " "

July 23—Boschfontein, 1 days' fighting.

July 27—Bankfontein, 1 " "

August 1—Buffelspruit, 1 " "

August 3—Dornkop, 1 " "

August 25, 26, 27—Belfast-Bergandal 3 days' fighting.

October 1—Booschpoort, 1 days' fighting.

October 5—Weltefreden, " "

November 2—Witkloof, " "

November 6—Van Wyks Vlei—
Liliefontein, 2 days' fighting.

November 13, 14, 15—Witpoort—

November 16, 17—Dulstroom, 5 days' fighting.

GENERAL REMARKS.

HORSES.

The Canadian horses were good ones and did very well considering all the hardships they had to undergo and the heavy weights they had to carry.

A few of them were still in the regiment when we left the front for home.

DISPOSITION OF CANADIAN HORSES.

Died at sea in transit from Canada to South Africa.....	40
Died of exhaustion, killed in action, or destroyed.....	194
Rendered unfit for duty and left behind at different stations...	123
Sold to Imperial authorities on leaving South Africa as follows:—	
Handed over to O. C. 5th Lancers.....	7
“ “ Remount Depot, Pretoria.....	11
	<hr/>
	375
	<hr/>
Establishment R. C. D.....	375

ARMS.

The regiment was armed with the long rifle, and although I fully recognize the importance of all mounted troops being armed with such a rifle in the campaign, yet I

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

must report against the Lee-Enfield as being too heavy for a man to carry during a long hot day's work.

The men complained to me about it and often asked to be allowed to carry the rifle in the bucket, but this was against the G. O. C's. orders. General Hutton was of the opinion that if a man was allowed to carry his rifle in the bucket, he would after a while lean on it, and this giving an uneven bearing to the saddle on the horse's back, would give a sore back.

Could we not have a rifle shorter and lighter than the Lee-Enfield which would answer the same purpose and yet not be a burden to the man?

REVOLVERS.

Revolvers were also issued to the regiment, but at no time during the campaign could they have used them. It was only an additional weight to the already overburdened man and horse, so I ordered them to be returned into store.

MACHINE GUNS.

Two machine guns were attached to the regiment, viz.:—One Colt gun and one Maxim. The Colt gun proved to be the better of the two for the following reasons:—

1. It is light and only requires one horse to drag it.
2. It can be brought into action quickly, and quite close to the enemy.
3. It never clogs.
4. It does not require a water jacket, having a gas check.
5. If caught by the enemy at close quarters, the gun can be detached from the carriage quite easily and carried away on the saddle. This was done at least on two occasions in the regiment during the campaign.

Disadvantages of the Maxim in Comparison with the Colt gun.

1. Being too heavy and cumbersome, and it requires at least four horses to drag it.
2. On account of its weight, it cannot be brought up into action as quickly and as close as the Colt.
3. It often clogs.
4. The water jacket requires to be filled continually with water to keep the barrel cool.

Disadvantages of the Colt gun.

The Dundonald carriage and wheels are not strong enough.
This could be easily remedied by a stronger carriage and wheels.

TRANSPORT.

The transport wagons were good ones, and made of good material.

They stood the hard work splendidly, and were far superior to the Imperial wagons. I should like to recommend that sideboards be placed on the sides of the wagons to facilitate loading, at the same time these sideboards would admit of taking larger loads.

In my opinion mules are more adaptable for transport work than horses.

DRAFTS.

I would recommend that if mounted troops are ever sent on active service again, drafts should be got ready at home and sent to their respective units to fill up casualties, &c.

The total strength of my regiment was supposed to be of all ranks, including transfers, &c., 381.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Yet a skeleton state which I sent in to General Smith-Dorrien on November 12, may prove of interest to the public.

Skeleton State, November 12, 1900: Officers, 3, other ranks, 83.

The above figures show what was left of 21 officers, including two attached, and 381 of other ranks at the beginning of operations.

There are several officers, non-commissioned officers and men whom I happen to know have been brought to the notice of the Commander-in-Chief, and I should also like to mention their names here:

Major W. Forester, commanding 'A' Squadron.

" V. A. S. Williams " 'B' "

Capt. C. M. Nelles, Adjutant.

Lieut. H. L. Borden, 'B' "

" R. E. W. Turner " "

" H. Z. C. Cockburn, 'A' "

" J. H. Elmsley, " "

" F. V. Young, 'B' "

" J. E. Burch, S.S. Officer (attached).

" A. L. Howard, in charge of machine gun.

No. 410—Sergt. R. H. Ryan.

151 " E. L. Purden.

176 " E. J. Holland.

105 " N. D. Builder.

185—Private W. A. Knisley.

In addition to the above, I wish to mention and bring before the notice of the General Officer Commanding the Canadian militia, the following officers:—

Surgeon Major H. R. Duff, for zeal and assiduousness in his work, as well as personal bravery, while attending to the wounded in the field.

Lieut. Jas. H. Elmsley, for ability in carrying out my instructions at all times, and for conspicuous gallantry in the field on several occasions.

In conclusion, I would like to thank all the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the regiment under my command for the excellent work they have performed and the assistance they have given me throughout the campaign.

No words of praise from me can adequately express to you as I would wish, the untiring zeal and the determination of purpose to surmount obstacles, displayed by all, and the very evident intention of all ranks from the moment we took the field to meet the hardships and privations of this, the most severe campaign in modern history, without a murmur.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

F. L. LESSARD, Lt.-Col.,

Late Com. R. C. D.

(Special Service Force.)

APPEN
MOUNTED INFAN

First Mounted

Major General E. T. H. Hutton,

A. D. C., Major Lord Rosmead, 6th Lancashire Fusiliers.
Assistant Provost Marshall, Captain Lascelles, Royal Fusiliers.

The following Special Service Officers will perform the Acting Staff duties as follows :—

D A. G. Line of Communications for Australian and Canadian Troops and
1st Brigade—Colonel Gordon, Commandant, South Australia.
Staff Officer (advanced base)—Major Rankin, Queensland Infantry.

1st Mounted Infantry Corps.	Officers.	Men.	Horses.	† 2nd Mounted Infantry Corps.	Officers.	Men.	Horses.
Comdg. Lt.-Col. Alderson.....	1			2 Comdg. Lt.-Col. DeLisle.....	1		2
Staff Officer (Capt. McMicking)..	1			2 Staff Officer (Capt. Fanshawe)....	1		2
1st Battalion Mounted Infantry				6th Battalion Mounted Infantry			
(Amphlett)	23	480	500	(Pennefather)	23	480	500
Aldershot Co.(Rifles): 3rd Kings'				2nd Bedford.			
Royal Rifles, 4th King's Royal				1st Welsh.			
Rifles. 1st Rifle Brigade, 4th				2nd Wilts.			
Rifle Brigade; S. E. Co. : 2nd				1st Essex.			
Buffs, 1st Liverpool, 1st Suf-				1st Gordon.			
folk, 1st W. Riding; Southern				N. S. W. Mounted Rifles (Knight)	23	480	500
Co. : 2nd Northumberland				West Australia Mounted Infantry			
Fusiliers, 2nd Devon, 1st S.				(Moor).....	14	240	250
Lancashire, 2nd Shrops. Lt.							
Infantry; Cork Co. : 2nd Nor-							
folk, 1st Royal Irish, 2nd							
Cheshire, 2nd Manchester, 1st							
Welsh Machine Gun Section.							
1st Battalion. Canadian M. R							
(Lessard)	17	350	369				
2nd Battalion Canadian M. R							
(Herchmer)	17	350	368				
* Strathcona's Horse (Steele).....	25	550	545				
Total	84	1,730	1,786	Total	62	1,200	1,254

* Did not join. † 2nd and 4th Mounted Infantry Corps with another column.

C. B., A. D. C., Commanding.

The following Special Service Officers will perform the Acting Staff duties as follows :

D. A. A. G. (b)—Major Cartwright, Canadian Staff.

Supply Officer—Captain Lea, Army Service Corps.

3rd Mounted Infantry Corps.	Officers.	Men.	Horses.	† 4th Mounted Infantry Corps	Officers.	Men.	Horses.
Comdg. Lt.-Col. Pilcher.....	1			2 Comdg. Colonel Henry	1		2
Staff Officer (.....).....	1			2 Staff Officer (Capt. Everett) ...	1		2
3rd Battalion Mounted Infantry (Anley).....	23	480	500	4th Battalion Mounted Infantry (.....).....	28	480	500
1st Northumberland Fusiliers.				2nd Warwick.			
1st Loyal N. Lancashire.				1st Yorks.			
2nd Yorks Light Infantry.				2nd D. of C. Light Infantry.			
2nd Northamptons.				2nd Shrops. Light Infantry..			
1st Munster Fusiliers.				Victorian Mounted Rifles (Price).	11	240	250
Queensland Mounted Infantry (Richards)	23	480	500	S. Australian Mounted Rifles (Reade).....	5	120	125
New Zealand Mounted Infantry (Robin)	23	480	400	Tasmanian Mounted Infantry (Cameron).....	23	480	500
Total.. .. .	71	1,440	1,504	Total.....	64	1,320	1,379

APPENDIX C 2.

RETURN of Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons killed in action or died of wounds received in action.

Regtl. No.	Rank and Name.	Nature of Casualty.	Place.	Action.	Date.	Where Buried.
.....	Lieut. Borden, H. L.....	Killed in action.	Witpoort...	Witpoort...	16- 7-1900	Riet Vlei.
.....	Batch, J. E.	"	"	"	16- 7-1900	"
105	Sergt. Builder, N. D.	Died of wounds received in action.	Liliefontein.	Liliefontein.	7-11-1900	Belfast...
26	Corpl. Filson, E. A	Killed in action.	" ..	" ..	7-11-1900	" ..
102	Actg. Lce. Corpl. Anderson, W. J.	" ..	" ..	" ..	7-11-1900	" ..
21	Pte. Ratcliff, A	" ..	Boschpoort	Boschpoort	23- 9-1900	" ..
168	" Spencer, D. McL.....	" ..	" ..	" ..	23- 9-1900	" ..

RETURN of Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons who died of disease.

Regtl. No.	Name and Rank.	Place.	Date.	Cause of Death.	Where Buried.
...	Capt. Pearson, C. S. A.....	Pretoria ..	17-10-1900	Tuberculosis.....	Pretoria.....
...	Lieut. Harrison, C. F.....	Wynburg ..	10- 6-1900	Enteric fever	Wynburg
...	" Sutton, F. H. C	On board transport <i>Roslin Castle</i>	6- 1-1901	Pneumonia.....	Quebec, Que..
52	S. Q. M. S. Hunt, B.....	Johannesburg ..	16- 6-1900	Enteric fever	Johannesburg.
5	Sgt. Tptry. Inglis, L. J. S	On board transport <i>Roslin Castle</i>	1- 1-1901	"	At sea
334	Pte. Bing, A. B.....	Johannesburg ..	7- 6-1900	"	Johannesburg.
294	" Brand, W. E	Bloemfontein....	9- 7-1900	"	Bloemfontein.
216	" Crompton, D. J	Johannesburg ..	4- 8-1900	"	Johannesburg.
67	" Diersmann, R. J	Pretoria ..	9-12-1900	"	Pretoria.....
169	" Hampton, W. J.....	Naauwpoort ..	12- 6-1900	"	Naauwpoort..
73	" Hughes, N	Cape Town.....	8- 1-1901	"	"
177	" Hull, W. A.....	Kroonstadt.....	6- 6-1900	"	Kroonstadt...
367	" Kingsley, A. R	"	15- 5-1900	Pneumonia	"
331	" Merchant, E. T	Johannesburg ..	12- 6-1900	Enteric fever	Johannesburg.
378	" Owen, C. C.....	Karee Siding ...	1- 5-1900	Died of wound self inflicted	Karee Siding..
82	" Ramsay, D. L.	Cape Town ..	28- 3-1900	Peritonitis	Cape Town...
275	Shipp, T. P.....	Pretoria ..	27- 7-1900	Enteric fever	Pretoria.....
*92	" Winyard, W.....	"	"	"	"

* Paraded at Kliffintein on 4th June, 1900. Last seen marching in rear of transport near Kalkheuvall. Since when nothing has been heard of him. Believed to be dead.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

RETURN of Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and men of the Royal Canadian Dragoons wounded in action.

Regtl. No.	Rank and Name.	Date.	Action.	Nature of wound.
	Capt. Nelles, C. M	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	Slight.
	Lieut. Cockburn, H. Z. C	7-11-1900	Liliefontein	"
	" Elmsley, J. H	7-11-1900	"	Dangerous.
	" Turner, R. E. W	7 11-1900	"	Severe.
	" Young, F. V.	8- 7-1900	Rietfontein	Slight.
312	Sergt. Farr'r. Cope, C. E	7-11-1900	Liliefontein	"
30	Sergt. Metcalfe, F. F	7-11-1900	"	Severe.
258	Tptr. Lord, J. W	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	"
413	Pte. Armstrong, B. R	7- 7-1900	"	Dangerous.
370	" Berg, F	7- 7-1900	"	Slight.
61	" Brown, A. W	16- 7-1900	Witpoort	Dangerous.
104	" Brown, F	3- 5-1900	Brantford	Slight.
305	" Carter, G. St. L	7-10-1900	Wonderfontein	Severe.
157	" Dougall, W	7-11-1900	Liliefontein	"
324	" Harvey, J. J	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	"
185	" Knisley, W. A	7-11-1900	Liliefontein	"
42	" Loosemore, H. H	7-11-1900	"	"
325	" Marriott, T. H	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	"
175	" Mulloy, L. W. R	16- 7-1900	Witpoort	"
143	" McCarthy, P	5-10-1900	Spitzkop	"
203	" McDonald, A. A	2-11-1900	Belfast	Slight.
330	" McGregor, S. J	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	"
284	" Palmer, H	7- 7-1900	"	"
225	" Richardson, G	7-11-1900	Liliefontein	"
327	" Roberts, A. H	7-11-1900	"	"
88	" Thornton, F	23- 9-1900	Boschpoort	Severe.
408	" White, H. B	7- 7-1900	Rietfontein	"

REPORT D.

From Officer Commanding Canadian Mounted Rifles to the Adjutant General, Canada.

H. M. TRANSPORT, 'ROSLIN CASTLE,' January 3, 1901.

SIR,—I have the honour, in compliance with instructions received through the Canadian Staff Officer, Cape Town, to submit the following report with reference to the Battalion under my command:—

THE VOYAGE OUT.

On January 27, 1900, the battalion (less 4th troop, 'C' squadron) sailed on the ss. *Pomeranian* from Halifax, arriving at Cape Town on February 26, and disembarked on the 28th. Room not being available on the ship, 4th troop, 'C' squadron, with horses, was detailed to sail by the *Milwaukee* with the 1st Battalion.

During the voyage all time not occupied with the care of the horses was devoted to drill, revolver and Morris tube practice. The horses, although crowded into a small space, were landed in Cape Town with a loss of only 9. When it is considered that these horses were taken off the ranches in mid-winter, shipped nearly 3,000 miles by rail, and 6,500 miles by sea, it reflects great credit upon the quality of the horse, the care taken of them by the men and the very excellent management of Vet.-Lieut. Riddell.

CAPE TOWN.

The Battalion remained in Cape Town 9 days, completing equipment and drilling. The condition of the horses after so long and difficult a journey under severe climatic conditions demanded at least a month's rest, with liberal diet, to fit them for hard work. However, marching orders were received, and the horses entered the most difficult work of the campaign under unfavourable conditions.

CARNARVON FIELD FORCE

On March 8 and 9, the battalion proceeded by rail to Victoria West Road, and by route march to Carnarvon, where it became a portion of the Carnarvon Field Force, organized under Col. Sir Charles Parsons, for the purpose of making a demonstration through the rebellious portion of Northern Cape Colony. This expedition involved the most difficult marching of the campaign, chiefly through the Karoo desert country, and was a severe test of the spirit and physique of both men and horses. For a large portion of this period the daily forage ration consisted of 1 sheaf of oat straw, (about 2½ lbs.) and 8 lbs. whole wheat (musty) and this, together with the debilitated condition of the horses after the long sea voyage, was the cause of heavy mortality. Continuous and heavy rains also added to the discomfort of men and horses. The N.C.O's. and men stood this very severe physical test most successfully.

The Battalion reached DeAar on April 14, having marched 700 miles during the previous month under conditions of food, forage, roads and weather, far more severe than any subsequently met with during the campaign.

Lieut.-Col. Herchner was invalided on March 20, Major Howe taking over command of the battalion. The Battalion proceeded from DeAar by rail to Norval's Pont, and by route march to Bloemfontein, which was reached April 29.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

GENERAL ADVANCE.

'C' squadron and headquarter's staff marched into Bloemfontein on April 29, and was embodied in the 1st M. I. corps of the 1st Mounted Infantry Brigade, under command of Maj.-Gen. Hutton. 'D' squadron joined the brigade on the 4th.

The command of the Battalion (now complete) was taken over by Lieut.-Col. Evans on May 5.

During the advance from Bloemfontein to Kroonstadt the Battalion took a leading part in the following engagements :—Brandfort, Constantia Siding, Vett River, Zand River (May 7), Zand River (May 10). The most notable regimental feature of this advance was the night march made by a squadron composed of 2 troops each from 'C' and 'D' squadrons, under Capt. A. C. Macdonell. This squadron, after a hard day's fighting, and 15 hours in the saddle, marched at 8:30 p.m. through the enemy's lines and blew up an important culvert near Smaldeel Junction, rejoining the brigade safely the following morning. This incident was mentioned in despatches. The brigade rested at Kroonstadt from May 12 to 20, during which period Lieut. Chalmers, with 50 men, took part in Col. Alderson's night ride to Bothaville, when several important prisoners were captured. The general advance was continued on the 20th, General Hutton's brigade acting in conjunction with French's column on the left flank of the whole line. During the advance from Kroonstadt to Pretoria, the battalion took part in the two days severe fighting at Klipriversberg, near Johannesburg, on May 28 and 29, and the fight at Crocodile River, near Pretoria, on June 3. For its work on May 29 in covering the withdrawal of the 1st M. I. brigade while General French was making his turning movement, the Battalion was specially complimented by Gen Hutton before the whole brigade. The brigade marched through Pretoria on the 6th inst., and after 2 days rest continued the advance on the 9th, taking part in the two days hard fighting at Diamond Hills, in which battles both squadrons were under a severe and continuous shell and rifle fire for 10 hours each day, but the cover being good the casualties were very light, consisting of 1 killed and 3 wounded. The severe wound sustained by Capt. Macdonell deprived the Battalion for the remainder of the campaign of the services of one of its most capable and efficient officers.

The Brigade returned to Pretoria on the 14th June, and on the evening of that day, at the request of the Commander-in-Chief, the Battalion was detailed for duty on the Lines of Communication between Vereeniging and Kroonstadt, which at that time were being threatened by General DeWet.

LINES OF COMMUNICATION.

The battalion was on the lines of communication between Vereeniging and Kroonstadt, including the march back to Pretoria, from the 15th June to the 15th July, being broken up into detachments, stationed at the most vulnerable points of the line. The most notable incident of this period occurred during DeWet's attack on Katbosch near Honing Spruit, where, with 1,000 men and several guns, he unsuccessfully attacked 2 Companies Shopshire Reg't., and 50 men of my Battalion under command of Lieut. Davidson. The gallant stand made against 50 of the enemy by a group of 4 men, consisting of Corp'l Morden, Corp'l Miles and Privates Kerr and Miles, was the subject of a special report by me which was published in Canadian General Orders. This act of steadfast courage, while costing the Battalion the lives of two of its best and bravest men, will always be remembered with pride in the Battalion.

At other points along the line excellent work was done by the different detachments, Lieut. Chalmers and Corporal Callaghan being specially commended by General Smith-Dorrien for smart and aggressive scouting.

During this month the Battalion marched some 500 miles, and established a good record among the various regiments with whom it came in contact. In Lieutenant Inglis, who was wounded at Honing Spruit, I lost the services of another very capable officer.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The battalion reached Irene, near Pretoria, on the 12th July, and after securing badly needed remounts and clothing, marched on the 15th July to Rietvlei, where it rejoined the Brigade.

THE ADVANCE ON MIDDELBURG.

The battalion took part in the engagement at Witpoort on the 16th July, and marched with the general advance towards Middelburg on the 23rd, coming in contact with the enemy's rear guard on that day, and the 24th, and entering Middelburg on the 27th.

LINES OF COMMUNICATION.

From the 27th July to the 22nd November the battalion was broken up into detachments, divided between Middelburg and Belfast, always in touch with large and aggressive numbers of the enemy, and performing outpost duties of an arduous and harassing nature. Out of numerous minor engagements and operations during this period, the following 3 were most important:—The night attack made on 5th Sept. by Dirkson's commando with 2 guns, on Nooitgedacht, which was held by a Detachment of 100 men of the Battalion, Major Sanders in command. This attack of a most determined character made at daybreak, was beaten off in a most creditable manner before outside assistance arrived.

This fight was mentioned in despatches by the Commander-in-Chief. Two officers, Major Sanders and Lieut. Moodie, were slightly, and No. 109 Private D. F. Johnstone, severely wounded. I forwarded the following names to the G.O.C. for good work performed in this fight:—Major Sanders (In command) 159 Pte. D. F. Johnstone, 128 Pte. J. Geoghegan, and 235 Pte. R. J. Northway.

The engagement at Belfast on the 2nd November was an occurrence which brought out the best fighting qualities of the Battalion. The advanced guard of the column was composed of 50 N.C.O.'s. and men under Major Sanders, the advanced party being under Lieut. Chalmers. The advanced party was attacked by the enemy in large numbers, and Lieut. Chalmers was killed while taking steps to bring in Major Sanders who was wounded, and while in the very act of warning an orderly to dismount at a dangerous point. Lieut. Chalmers was peculiarly qualified for active service, cool, cautious and daring, and his death in so gallant a manner was keenly felt by all ranks. This incident was the subject of a special report from me, and was mentioned in despatches by the G. O. C. For plucky work on this occasion I submitted the following names to the G. O. C.:—Major Sanders, Sergt. Tryon, Corporals Herchmer and Eaton and Ptes. G. G. Smith and Hutchinson.

In the engagements at Komati river on the 6th November the Belfast Detachment took a leading part, and the work performed by it was mentioned in despatches.

During the final three months of service, the battalion headquarters scouts, the principal ones being Corporal T. Callaghan, Ptes. J. Davis Leggatt and Harris, made an excellent record for clever and useful work, and all ranks developed a capacity for fighting the Boers with Boer tactics, and were more than equal to the enemy at his own game.

The battalion concentrated at Pretoria on December 3, and entrained for Cape Town on Dec. 3, arriving at Maitland Camp on the 11th and embarking for Canada on Dec. 13.

EXTRACTS FROM DESPATCHES REFERRING TO THE BATTALION.

From General Smith-Dorrien to Commandt. Kronmullinboog Spruit July 5.—"Very pleased that you have got rifles from Parys: am wiring Lords Roberts. Thank the Canadian M.R. from me."

From General Hutton to Lt.-Col. Erans.—"My hearty congratulations to your Canadians and yourself upon the gallantry and determination shown by the Detachment in the action on 22nd. ult. I have great pleasure in bringing the same to the notice

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

of the Commander-in-Chief. You all have my sympathy in your losses in killed and wounded."

From the Com-in-Chief to the Maj. Gen. Commg. July 18.—"The fight on the 16th was most successful, and I heartily congratulate you and all concerned."

From G. O. C. to Col. Alderson August 9.—"I am satisfied that Corporal Callaghan and Pte. Drury together showed much pluck, daring and enterprise in the reconnaissance of the enemy's bivouac. You are to be good enough to convey to both these men of the 2nd. Battn. Can. M. Rifles, through their Commg. Officer, my extreme satisfaction at the manner in which they performed their duty on the occasion, and carried out their orders."

From General Hutton to C. S. O. September 6.—"You will convey to Major Sanders C. M. R., and through the Lt. Col. Commg. to the Officers, N. C. Officers and men concerned, my extreme satisfaction at the gallant and successful defence made by the detachment of 2nd Canadians yesterday against very superior numbers of the enemy, accompanied by artillery. I have had special pleasure in bringing the conduct of Major Sanders and his detachment to the favourable notice of the F. M. C. in Chief, in my despatch on the subject."

From Force Orders, Belfast November 4.—"The following extract from a telegram sent yesterday by the G. O. C., to Lord Roberts is published for information:—In yesterday's action Major Sanders and Lieut. Chalmers, Canadian Mounted Rifles, were wounded and killed respectively performing acts of gallantry. The former rode out under a heavy and close fire to bring in a Sergeant who had lost his horse. As the two rode off on one horse the horse was shot. Then in proceeding on foot. Sanders was shot. Lieut Chalmers then advanced to Sanders, spoke to him and went away, and although Sanders who was lying behind a stone implored him not to come back to him again under the heavy fire, Lieut. Chalmers gallantly did so and was shot dead. The G. O. C., deplores the death of this splendid officer."

From Force Orders by Maj. Gen. Smith Dorrien Belfast, November 6.—"On 8th, instead of crossing Komati, which I had led Boers to expect by moving on and camping at Liliefontein after driving them away we turned East along N. Bank. At once several hundred Boers galloped back to seize old positions on Komati, but too late, as with great dash Col. Evans with Canadian Mounted Rifles and 2 guns 84th under Major Guinness, galloped 2 miles and got key of position and held some 300 in river bed."

From Maj. Gen. Hutton to Lt.-Col. Evans, Oct. 15.—"I sail for England on the 17th, but before doing so I must write you a few lines of congratulation upon the success of your battalion during the campaign, and to wish your officers and your men and yourself God speed and a happy return to Canada and your respective homes. The excellent service which your battalion has rendered, and the distinction which they have won must always be a source of pride and satisfaction to each one concerned.

Canada, and the North-west Territories in particular, have right good reason to be proud of the battalion, and will no doubt give effect to its appreciation upon your return."

Special Order issued by Maj-Gen. Smith Dorrien, dated Belfast, Nov. 20.—"Major-Gen. Smith Dorrien cannot allow the R.C.D. and the left section "D" Battery R.C.A., and the Canadian Mounted Rifles to leave his command en route for Canada without thanking them for the grand work they have performed for him in the Belfast Flying Column.

In eight of the last nineteen days they have been engaged with the Boers and have proved themselves splendidly brave and mobile mounted troops, and it has afforded the Major General much pleasure to have been able to send through Gen., The Hon. N. Lyttleton to the Field Marshal C in Chief, detailed accounts of their splendid feats of arms and to have been able to bring to the special notice of the C. in C. five Officers and seven N. C. O's and men for distinguished conduct on the field during these operations.

In wishing them all good bye and 'good luck,' he has no words to express how great a loss they will be to the Flying Column. He can merely say that he would

choose no other Mounted Troops in the world before them if he had his choice, and he sincerely hopes the day may come when he may have them again under his command."

From Brig. General Alderson to Lt.-Col. Evans—"I should like to tell you how sincerely sorry I am that the Canadian Mounted Rifles are leaving the M. I. Bde. Since the 1st May last we have soldiered together, and I can honestly say that I have been very proud and pleased to have your people with me. Everything I have asked them to do has been done, not only thoroughly well but most cheerfully. I should like you to know how the last has helped me all along. Personally I do not think that orders are quite the place to give vent to one's feelings, and therefore I write this semi-private letter to you to let your people know how proud I have been to speak (and to write home) about them as 'My Canadians,' and also how sorry, as far as I am personally concerned, though thoroughly glad for their sakes, that they are going, and how very sincerely I wish them the best of luck in the future."

The following is a list of officers, N. C. Officers and men mentioned in the despatches or in the reports of G. O. C's during the campaign :—

Lieut.-Col. Evans,	98	Corp'l Eaton, R. B.,
Major Sanders (wounded),	133	" Herchmer, S.,
Captain Macdonell (wounded),	291	" Stevens, R.C.H. (wounded),
Lieut. Chalmers (killed),	159	Pte. Johnstone, D. F. "
" Moodie (wounded),	128	" Geoghegan,
" Davidson,	235	" Northway, R. J. (wounded),
" Inglis (wounded),	169	" Kerr, R. J. (killed),
310 Sergt. Tryon, C. R.,	207	" Miles, H. V.,
202 " Miles, T. R. (wounded),	140	" Hutchinson, C. E.,
201 Corp'l Morden (killed),	80	" Drury, P.,
218 " Callaghan, T.,	149	" Smith, G. G.

SUMMARY.

During the nine months in which the battalion was in active work, it took part in fifteen general engagements, seven important isolated engagements, and six minor engagements.

In addition to the actions above recorded, the battalion was occupied for three months in performing outpost duties involving daily sniping and almost daily attacks on our advanced posts and patrols by the enemy, and by us on the enemy's posts. Raiding on the enemy's cattle and to secure prisoners both by day and night also deserve mention.

The distance marched by the battalion was about 2,600 miles, and the total casualties in the field were five killed, twenty-two wounded, and sixteen missing. With the exception of Private O. J. Weaver, who is supposed to be killed, all the missing subsequently rejoined.

In view of the work performed by the battalion, the casualties were extremely light.

HEALTH.

The health of the battalion during the campaign, while comparing favourably with other regiments, still shows a heavy percentage of all ranks rendered inefficient by sickness.

Seventy officers, N.C.O's and men were invalided to England, and after Pretoria was taken, about 200 effectives were with the battalion out of a strength of 371, still, the battalion was by far the strongest in proportion to its establishment, in the brigade.

A very annoying feature was the fact that once a man had been sent back to the field hospital sick, his battalion appeared to lose track of him for several months, and in

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

numerous cases until the corps was en route home. No facilities were offered him to return to his regiment, and he was detained at rest camps, or offered employment in various civil branches of the service without any reference to, or permission from, his commanding officer.

Enteric fever and dysentery were the most numerous and fatal diseases prevailing. When the battalion was on the march, and at its hardest work, the sick were few, but when halted in camp for any length of time, the sick list, notwithstanding all possible sanitary precautions, increased daily. The total deaths by disease during the campaign were seven.

DISCIPLINE.

The discipline of the battalion was, on the whole, excellent. The conditions were peculiar, as about three-fifths of the battalion is composed of civilians, accustomed to the freedom of life on the plains of the North-west. The ready manner in which they adapted themselves to the regulations of the service was most creditable. In event of a future campaign, it would add greatly to the value of this excellent material if in peace time it was organized and trained as militia. When troops are called out for active service, very little time is available for instruction in discipline, use and care of arms, &c., which might have been previously given at home.

CANADIAN HORSES.

If the horses of the Battalion had been given a fighting chance, they would have made a splendid record, but the exigencies of the situation did not give them an opportunity to recuperate after the long voyage; and in poor condition they faced the expedition through the Karoo desert country, the severest work of the campaign. Notwithstanding these drawbacks, and the continual shortage of forage and water during the rest of the campaign, nearly fifty per cent reached Pretoria. When the battalion was about to return home 33 of the original horses were on the strength; 122 had been turned over to rest and remount depots on the line of march, the majority of which were re-issued to other corps; 177 had been abandoned on the line of march, exhausted; 7 had been exchanged for native horses; 24 had been killed in action, or died on duty. and 13 died at sea (9 on ss. *Pomeranian*, 3 on ss. *Milwaukee* and 1 on ss. *Laurentian*.)

The above details account for 376 horses brought out with the battalion. Had the horses been given a month's rest at Cape Town, I am convinced that, at least, 75 per cent would have been with the battalion at the end of its service.

MEXICAN SADDLERY.

The saddles used by the battalion were very satisfactory, as far as wear and tear, comfort to the men and the backs of the horses, were concerned, but their weight was a serious handicap, when working against the lightest equipped men and horses of modern times.

THE CANADIAN WAGONS.

The wagons brought from Canada by the Battalion proved most satisfactory. The light wagons are worthy of special mention. During the campaign they followed the battalion across country heavily loaded, and were still in fair working order when handed over to the Imperial Authorities in November last.

MACHINE GUNS, ARMS AND CLOTHING.

The Maxim guns accompanied the battalion as far as Pan, near Middelburg, when they were dispensed with by the G.O.C., on account of scarcity of horses. From personal observation, I am of opinion that the Colt gun is a more useful weapon in the field, than the Maxim.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The Lee-Entfield Rifles proved satisfactory. The Colt revolvers proved particularly useful in night scouting and searching houses for prisoners. I consider them a most necessary weapon for mounted troops.

The supply of clothing was at all times ample and of excellent quality. The serge frocks issued by the Imperial Government proved more comfortable than the Canadian issue, the material of which was canvas duck.

FORAGE AND RATIONS.

The forage ration was liberal when occasion permitted, but the want of hay was a serious drawback when the brigade was marching over burnt ground. During the latter part of the campaign the issue of hay was fairly regular, and with the new grass coming up, the horses fared well, and were always in good condition for hard work.

The rations for the men were also liberal when occasion offered, and the issue of jam, sliced bacon, and cheese, made a welcome variety.

The Commissariat arrangements of the Army throughout were most admirable.

RED CROSS AND OTHER FUNDS.

The following sums were received from the Red Cross Society, and other sources to procure extra comforts for the battalion and to assist its sick :—

Toronto Ladies Branch Red Cross Society	£208	0	0
Canadian Y. M. C.A.	10	0	0
Canadian Red Cross Society	15	0	0
Canadian Ladies of London, England	82	10	0
Citizens of Regina, N. W. T.	6	2	5

As my battalion was constantly on the move, and generally far from the railway line, it was almost impossible that the numerous cases of comforts etc., could be forwarded. The very liberal sums of money contributed as above, enabled me to procure, when most needed, extras for the sick, and for the fighting men at the front. All ranks of the Battalion keenly appreciate the great kindness of their friends at home, and in England.

In the distribution of these funds, I desire to recognize the invaluable assistance rendered me by my Chaplain, Revd. Father Sinnett. I cannot speak too highly of his work in visiting the sick and affording them assistance when necessary.

The kindness of the management of the *Daily Globe* of Toronto, and *Star* of Montreal, in sending a liberal and regular supply of their daily issues, was greatly appreciated.

MAIL ARRANGEMENTS.

The arrangements made by the Canadian Postal Corps were excellent, and added much to the well being of all ranks.

IMPERIAL AUTHORITIES.

I desire to place on record the unvarying courtesy and kindness extended to my battalion by the various branches and department of the Imperial Service with whom we came in close contact. Our relations were most cordial among all ranks, and on several occasions when the battalion was being transferred from one brigade to another, and more especially when leaving Belfast en-route to Pretoria and home, this good feeling was shown in a very marked manner.

CANADIAN AUTHORITIES.

The weekly circular letter forwarded by the Department of Militia and Defence, and the prompt manner in which all matters referred to the Department were dealt

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

with, afforded welcome information of the movements of Militia at home, and greatly facilitated our work in connection with Canada.

CAPE TOWN.

The departure of the 2nd contingent for home on Dec. 13, was the occasion of a very flattering demonstration on the part of the civil authorities of Cape Town.

Lieut.-Col. Biggar, the Canadian staff officer at Cape Town, was of great assistance to me in all work connected with my battalion at the base and the embarkation for home.

The officers and sick of the battalion are deeply indebted to Mr. R. Stewart Solomons for many kindnesses performed in a most unostentatious manner.

THE VOYAGE HOME.

The arrangements on board the *Roslin Castle* were very satisfactory.

Numerous cases of enteric developed shortly after leaving Cape Town, but fortunately only a very small proportion belonged to my battalion. The presence of the Canadian nursing sisters, and the excellent hospital accommodation on board, proved a great boon in this rather unexpected emergency. The sad deaths of Lieut. Sutton and Sergt.-Trumpler Inglis were greatly regretted by all ranks.

HALIFAX.

On arrival at Halifax it was anticipated that it would require at least two days to complete the payment of the force and the despatch of the troops to their homes. The rapid performance of all this work by the Department of Militia and Defence within 24 hours of arrival in harbour was most gratifying to all concerned.

The courtesy and hospitality shown by the people of Halifax on the occasion of the departure of the battalion was more than repeated in the cordial and enthusiastic welcome which greeted its return, and which will always be gratefully remembered by the men from the North-west Territories.

CONCLUSION.

In concluding this report I desire to express my sincere appreciation of the very loyal support at all times given to me by my officers, non-commissioned officers and men.

The splendid work performed by the trained men of the North-west Mounted Police, side by side with the untrained men from the plains of the North-west, amply proved that whether trained or untrained they all possessed in common the true fighting spirit inherited from their forefathers, combined with the self reliance and knowledge of country produced by the duties and occupations peculiar to that portion of the Dominion.

DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

I inclose, herewith, the following returns:—

1. Nominal roll of the battalion, showing the disposition of every non-com. officer and man, including those returning by the *Roslin Castle* to Canada.
2. General state of battalion.
3. Nominal roll of officers, non-com. officers and men returning by *Roslin Castle*.
4. A return showing the disposition of members of the North-west Mounted Police belonging to the battalion.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

5. List of casualties.
6. List of sick left in hospitals in South Africa.
7. List of locations of graves of our dead.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

T. D. B. EVANS, *Lt.-Col.*
Late Commanding Canadian Mounted Rifles,

APPENDIX D (1.)

RETURN of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Men of the Canadian Mounted Rifles, killed in action or died of wounds received in action.

Reg't. No.	Rank and Name	Nature of Casualty.	Place.	Action.	Date.	Where buried.
	Lt. Chalmers, T. W.	Killed in action.	Near Belfast..	Belfast...	2-11 1900	Belfast.
201	Corp. Morden, J. F.	"	Honing Spruit	Katbosch.	22-6-1900	Katbosch, near Honing Spruit Station.
308	" Taylor, J. R..	Died of wounds received in action.	Doornkop	Doornkop	19-8-1900	Doornkop, near Middleburg.
108	Pte. Frost, W	Died of wounds received in action.	Diamond Hills	Diamond Hills.	12-6-1900	Kamneelfontein near Pretoria.
169	" Kerr, R. J.....	Killed in action.	Honing Spruit	Katbosch.	22-6-1900	Katbosch, near Honing Spruit Station.

*Lieut. A. L. Howard, U.L., who proceeded to South Africa in charge of the Machine Gun Detachment of this Corps, and who remained there to organize Howard's Scouts, which Corps he commanded as Major, was killed at Derby, on February 17, 1901, while serving with General French's Force.

RETURN of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Men of the Canadian Mounted Rifles, who died from disease.

Reg't. No.	Rank and Name.	Place.	Date.	Cause of Death.	Where buried.
25	Private Ball, J. E....	Kroonstad	29-7-1900	Enteric Fever.	Military Cemt'y. Kroonstadt
65	" Clements, H. H.	Springfontein...	25-5-1900	"	Springfontein.
186	" Lett, R.	Pretoria	21-7-1900	"	Ch. of England Cemetery, Pretoria, Grave No. 167.
212	" O'Kelly, G. M..	Johannesburg....	16-6-1900	Dysentery	Johannesburg Cemetery, Grave and Lot No. 9550.
298	" Smith, O.	Near Pan Station.	17-8-1900	Sunstroke	Bankfontein, near Pan.
323	" Wood, W.....	Pretoria	29-7-1900	Enteric Fever.	Ch. of England Cemetery, Pretoria, Grave No. 197.
334	" Woolcombe, J..	Carnarvon... ..	23-4-1900	Dysentery and Pleurisy	Carnarvon.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

RETURN of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Men of the Canadian Mounted Rifles wounded in action.

Regtl. No.	Rank and Name.	Date.	Action.	Nature of Wound.
	Major Sanders, G. E.....	5-9-1900	Nooitgedacht.. ..	Slight.
	" "	2-11-1900	Near Belfast	"
	Captain Macdonell, A. C.....	12-6-1900	Diamond Hills.. ..	Dangerously wounded. (Accidentally.)
	Lieut. Moodie, J. D.	5-9-1900	Nooitgedacht..	Slight.
	" Ingles, W. M.....	22-6-1900	Honing Spruit....	Severe.
229	Sergt. McCulloch, D.	5-5-1900	Brandfort.....	Slight.
46	Corporal Baines, H. H.	12-6-1900	Diamond Hills.. ..	"
202	" Miles, T. R.....	22-6-1900	Honing Spruit	Severe.
291	" Stevens, R. C. H.	28-5-1900	Klip River.....	Dangerous.
176	Private Aspinall, A.....	22-6-1900	Honing Spruit....	Severe.
45	" Birney, J. A.....	22-6-1900	"	"
66	" Crawley, A. W. V.....	3-7-1900	Near Pretoria....	Dangerous.
85	" Dore, G. L.....	28-5-1900	Klip River.....	Slight.
105	" Flynn, W. B.....	19-8-1900	Doornkop.....	Severe.
127	" Gray, J.....	28-5-1900	Klip River.....	Slight.
129	" Greenall, F.....	12-6-1900	Diamond Hills	"
159	" Johnston, D. F.....	5-9-1900	Nooitgedacht.....	Severe.
112	" Leggat, M.....	11-10-1900	Wonderhoek	Slight.
235	" Northway, R. J.....	2-11-1900	Near Belfast.....	"
248	" Pratt, F. E.....	2-11-1900	"	Severe.
174	" Ruth, F. C.....	5-5-1900	Brandfort..	Slight. (Accidentally.)
198	" Wildman, G. E.....	7-5-1900	Vet River.....	"

MISSING.

No. 326 Pte. O. J. Weaver, Canadian Mounted Rifles, was reported missing at Nooitgedacht, on the 22nd October, 1900, and is supposed to be dead.

REPORT E.

From Lieut.-Colonel C. W. Drury, Commanding Brigade Division of Royal Canadian Field Artillery, to Adjutant General, Head Quarters, Ottawa.

KINGSTON, January 18, 1901.

SIR,—I have the honour to submit the following report upon the Brigade Division, R.C.F.A., specially organized for service in South Africa :—

Three batteries were equipped and despatched from Canada, two of which, "D" and "E," embarked at Halifax, on January 20, 1900, and reached Cape Town on the evening of February 16. Disembarking commenced on the morning of the 17th and was completed on the evening of the following day, the Batteries going into camp at Green Point in order to prepare themselves for the field.

Both Batteries were considerably under strength in horses owing to the many deaths on the voyage out; indents were therefore made upon the Imperial Remounts to replace the losses. It was found that the stock of artillery remounts was completely exhausted. Argentine ponies were supplied instead, and all of the Canadian riding horses placed in draught. Even by this arrangement there were not sufficient large animals to horse the transport wagons. Mules were therefore demanded for the latter.

It will thus be seen that the time allotted for refitting was almost entirely occupied with the horse question. However, by February 27, all was ready for a move, and from this date until March 10, the time was made use of in training both men and horses for the trying work to come.

I was greatly disappointed when on the arrival of the *Laurentian*, I found that only two Batteries were on board, but hoped that before we received orders to move to the front "C" Battery would arrive, thus making my command complete, but this was not to be.

I was in complete ignorance of all that had been done in Canada in the way of organization, but from the experience I had already gained in the field, I felt that an ammunition column to supply the Batteries was indispensable. This view was fully borne out by subsequent events, for not only were transport wagons to carry the reserve ammunition difficult to secure, but the oxen being slow, we never could hope that our ammunition column would ever be in touch with the guns, and as a matter of fact it was oftentimes even some miles distant, perhaps blocked on the road. Native drivers too could not be relied upon to drive their teams even to the borders of the zone of fire.

Three, or even two Batteries, with an ammunition column, would have been a much more mobile organization, and would have saved no end of worry and anxiety to the Captains who were at all times responsible for a sufficiency of ammunition. I would, from our South African experience, strongly recommend that wagons for an ammunition column be purchased and held in readiness in Canada.

It was unfortunate that such a large number of horses died on the way out; in addition to these a great number landed in a very emaciated condition consequent upon the effects of influenza contracted on ship board; however, by careful nursing on the part of all concerned they soon pulled round and became fit for full work. It was noted that the mortality on shipboard was much greater among the horses drawn from the permanent force than among those purchased for the campaign, but those of the former which survived the voyage more than held their own on the Veldt; the older horses seemed to do the best.

On Sunday, March 4, 1900, at 11.45 a.m., four guns and wagons from "D" Battery were ordered to entrain for the front, destination unknown. At 1.15 p.m. the guns moved out of camp, the rapidity of the move was commented upon by Col. Cooper, A.D.C., Base Commandant, as a remarkably smart piece of work.

On Saturday, March 10, at 9 a.m., an order was received for the remainder of "D", the whole of "E", with the Brigade Division staff, to entrain for DeAar, at 12.30 p.m. Entraining was completed, the two trains pulled out at 2 p.m. At daylight on the 12th,

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

we were stopped on Victoria Road station and ordered to detrain; here we found the four guns of 'D' Battery. The two batteries were then ordered to form the artillery force of a column being organized to march on Kenhardt, via Carnarvon. Colonel Sir Charles Parsons had direction of the operations. After leaving Carnarvon, the troops consisting of "D" and "E" batteries, R. C. F. A., the C. M. R., the West Australian M. R., the New Zealand M. R. and the D. I. Y. were under my command. After a trying march of 500 miles, the column marched into DeAar without opposition, the rout being from Victoria Road to Carnarvon, Van Wyks Vlei and Kenhardt, thence back to Carnarvon, then Vosburg, Britstown and DeAar. The troops suffered considerably during this trek; it was at times extremely bad weather, and in places the roads were almost impassable. Many horses and oxen died from exposure and exhaustion.

Almost immediately on reaching DeAar, the mounted troops were entrained for Bloemfontein, "D," Battery ordered to guard lines of communication and "E" Battery to join Sir Charles Warren in Griqualand West. The Brigade Div. Staff received permission to proceed to Mafeking to join 'C' Battery with Major Genl. Baden-Powell, the latter battery having marched from Beira to Mafeking and assisted in the relief of that beleagured town.

This march has become famous, being characterized by the Field Marshal Commander in Chief as one of incredible rapidity.

This battery operated with Maj.-Genl. Baden-Powell's force to the N. and N.W. of Pretoria. "D" which was sent on from DeAar to Bloemfontein, operated to the N.E. of Pretoria with Lieut.-Genl. Ian Hamilton, and "E" Battery to the S.W. of Pretoria, under Maj.-Genl. Settle. It will thus be seen that although not very satisfactory in some ways, the R.C.A. was represented in almost all important districts within the theatre of war.

Following are the fights in which each battery took part:—

"C" Battery.

May 16 and 17, Relief of Mafeking.	September 3 to 10, Warm Baths.
July 19 and 25, Oliphants Nek.	October 24, Jerico.
August 20, Hamans Kraal.	November 1, Twee River.
" 21, Pienaars River.	" 4, Ratsgaie.
" 22, Warm Baths.	" 6, Zeerust Road.
" 24, Nylstroom.	" 8, Reitfontien.

"D" Battery.

July 21, Dewagendrift.	November 6, Van Wyks Vlei.
" 21, Ouverwacht.	" 6, Liliefontein.
" 23, Rustfontein.	" 6, Carolina Road.
August 27, Belfast.	" 7, " "
September 3, Zwarts Kopjes.	" 7, Liliefontein.
" 6, Rooidaal.	" 7, Blyvoorlizich.
" 6, Spitz Kop.	" 13, Wettervreven.
" 6, Lydenburg.	" 13, Laken Vlie.
" 7, " "	" 13, Lang Kloof.
" 27, Zovenfontein.	" 14, Vlakplaats.
October 3, Elands Kop	" 14, Schoongenzicht.
" 6, Tweefontein.	" 14, Whitpoort.
" 6, Zurkevbos Kop.	" 15, Zwarts Kopjes.
" 6, Lang Kloof.	" 16, Dulstroom,
November 2, Whit Kloof.	" 16, Welgevricht.
" 6, Esteringfontein.	" 17, Elands Kloof.

"E" Battery.

May 27, Douglas, Griqualand.	June 4, Koffefontein, Griqualand.
" 27, Steyns Farm, Griqualand.	" 4, Elizabeth Rust, O.R.C.
" 30, Fabers Putts " "	" 4, Wegdrie, O.R.C.
" 30, Tweefontein " "	

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Of the foregoing actions many were important, particularly that of "C" at Mafeking, and the left section of "D" at Belfast., under Lieut. Morrison, he being specially mentioned in the General's despatches and recommended for some mark of Her Majesty's favour. Also the action of "E" Battery during the night attack on Faber's Putts deserves to be specially mentioned.

It is a pleasing compliment to record that when the Field Marshal, Commander in Chief, decided that the batteries were to be concentrated with a view to their return to Canada, the generals who commanded the column, to which the batteries were attached made strong efforts to retain their services.

On December 1, "C" and "D" Batteries left Pretoria for Cape Town, but were detained at Worcester, C.C., to be present with other troops during the great Bond meeting held on the 6th. "E" Battery was also stopped here, and for the first time in South Africa my command was complete. We were detained there for seven days, then proceeded to Cape Town to embark for Canada. The Australian contingents arrived from the front to embark on the same day. Previous to going on board both colonial contingents paraded and were addressed, first by the Mayor and Corporation of Cape Town, then by His Excellency Sir Alfred Milner and Lieut.-General Sir Forrestier Walker.

GENERAL REMARKS.

The 12-pr. breach loading guns with which the Batteries were armed were certainly not powerful enough to cope with the Boer artillery.

The guns were lacking many modern attachments, such as the 'recoil spade,' the South African brake, &c.

I am also thoroughly convinced that breast collars for horses are much superior to neck collars for campaign purposes.

The transport wagons supplied by the Canadian Government proved to be a good article, but there are five points I desire to call attention to, viz.: The boxes of the heavy wagons were not large enough to carry the loads assigned to them; the lever brakes were not reliable; boxes should be supplied with attachments to carry spade, axe, billhook, &c.

The naves should be metal, not wood. Hoops for the cover are not necessary.

PERSONNEL.

I cannot speak too highly of the conduct and pluck of all ranks during the campaign, oftentimes under very trying circumstances.

Of the officers, I desire particularly to mention my adjutant, Captain H. C. Thacker, R.C.A. Not only were his ordinary duties of adjutant performed to my entire satisfaction, but on several occasions when I employed him as my staff officer when in command of a body of mixed troops, by his tact and constant attention to duty he made my work comparatively easy.

Those of the battery officers who deserve to be mentioned have been so dealt with by the generals of their respective columns.

Brigade Division Sergeant Major C. E. Long, R.C.A., earned a name for himself, not only for his services in connection with his own corps, but from others with which he came in contact.

As returns have already been made from South Africa as to casualties, I need not again mention them.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

C. W. DRURY, *Lt.-Col.*,

Late Commanding Brigade Division, R.C.F.A.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

APPENDIX E (1).

From Officer Commanding "C" Battery to Officer Commanding Brigade Division, Royal Canadian Field Artillery.

KINGSTON, Ont., March 7, 1901.

SIR,—I have the honour to submit, in compliance with your instructions of February 1, the following report on the work of the Battery on special service in South Africa under my command.

We embarked on the transport Milwaukee, at Halifax, N.S., on February 21, 1900, and sailed without delay for Cape Town, where we arrived March 21.

By noon of Thursday, 22nd, 200 miles had been made. This day orders were published covering the following: Medical Inspection, Veterinary Inspection, Limitations in regard to smoking, Boat Stations, Bathing, and washing of clothes. We had bad weather for two days, until Sunday, 25th, when it turned fine and warm and the sick improved. This day was the first of twenty-five days of continued fine weather, not a drop of rain or a heavy sea breaking in to disturb the placid surface of the ocean, or monotony of the long voyage.

Divine service was held on Sunday, and each succeeding Sunday while on board. A brass band was organized, and as there was a piano and an organ on board there was no lack of music. The rations served to the men were of good quality and in sufficient quantity, there being no complaints in this respect during the voyage. A canteen was also started. The horses suffered greatly and required much care and attention, a few dying from time to time during the trip, the total loss being 14. Owing to the great heat when near the equator it was found necessary to clip them, as they were suffering intensely. I feel I cannot lay too much stress, or be too effusive in pointing out the unselfish and energetic manner in which the officers, N. C. officers and men attended to the horses, under the most trying circumstances at this time. The great heat, added to the persistent rolling of the boat, was extremely trying, and in many cases fatal to the horses, and it was only through the untiring and voluntary efforts of those under my command that much greater loss was prevented. The care of the horses had to be undertaken in a part of the ship where the heat was almost intolerable, and the air extremely foul.

Fogo Island, Cape Verde, was sighted about 5 a.m. on the 5th March. This day, orders were issued for all the troops to be vaccinated, this being carried out by Surgeon Major Duff and his assistants.

We crossed the equator at 6 a.m. on the 9th., and early on the 11th., sighted Ascension Island, passing it about 9 a.m. St. Helena was passed about 11 a.m., on the 14th. The drivers of the battery commenced revolver practice on this day. Another medical examination of the men was held on the 19th. On the 20th an order was issued by the O. C. Troops against sending to the press any military information without special authority.

Table Mountain was sighted about mid-day on Wednesday, March 21, the vessel arriving in the harbour off Table Bay, Cape Town, about 4 p.m. We did not disembark until Sunday, 26th.

Captain Panet, who had been waiting in Cape Town for our arrival, came on board during this period and made acquaintance with those with whom his lot had been cast for the coming campaign. Disembarkation orders were received on the 24th and published for the information of the troops. The vessel having put in at the South Arm wharf, tea was served to the troops through the kindness and liberality of some of the ladies of Cape Town.

Monday, 26th, was the day set for disembarkation, this being effected by 4 p.m.; the troops marching to Green Point camp about two miles from the centre of the city.

The camp was under the command of Colonel Mainwaring, C.M.G. Everything seemed alive with military life and military effort. At the entrance-end of our camp-ground we passed the Boer prisoners' enclosure, containing many hundreds of Cronje's men. They impressed us as being a superior race physically—and there it ends. They were well in view; and our men thus had an opportunity of seeing what their future foes were like: tall gaunt frames, which, if filled out, would have given one the impression they belonged to a race of giants, sauntered around the enclosure or chatted in groups, and to all appearances were quite indifferent to their surroundings or their future. They were poorly clad, emaciated and hungry looking—due probably to long hours in the trenches and the effects of the campaign.

The camp at Green Point was exceedingly well conducted, and the men were soon settled in their new quarters. The captured guns of Cronje, which were here, were a source of great interest to us all. Here also was a 4.7 battery, waiting for orders for the front.

Every one in "C" Battery was well and fit for service on reaching Cape Town, the horses being our chief concern. Although we lost but 14 during the voyage, many of the others were in poor condition. It was, however, surprising with what rapidity they recovered. We got one remount at Green Point and 21 at Stellenbosch, a remount depot some thirty miles from Cape Town on the railway. We received our first Canadian mail on March 29 at Green Point. On reaching Cape Town, Captain Mackie took charge of the details of "D" and "E" Batteries until they joined the headquarters of the Artillery Brigade Division.

Sunday, April 1, there was a church parade at the camp for all denominations. On the 2nd, at 11 a.m., there was an inspection of "C" Battery, the C.M.R., Loch's Scouts and the Irish Squadron, by the O.C. the camp, Lt.-Col. Lessard, R.C.D., being in command of the troops mentioned.

A great deal of work here was required in equipping the battery, many articles in this respect being required before going to the front.

Orders were received on April 3 to move to Stellenbosch the next day by route march. We moved out at 2 p.m. on the 4th, and were lustily cheered in passing through Cape Town. Although we had disembarked but nine days, our horses drew many complimentary remarks from the citizens of Cape Town as we passed through. The improvement in them was indeed remarkable.

On the night of the 4th we bivouacked at Durban Road, 12 miles from Cape Town. The march was resumed the next morning, and we reached Stellenbosch late in the afternoon, going under canvas. Here we received 21 remounts—mostly draft horses of the C.M.R., which they had turned in—and we endeavoured to get horses and men into shape.

The battery made great progress in mounted work here, this being really the first opportunity they had had in this class of drill. On April 12, a telegram was received from Cape Town to hold the battery in readiness to move at a moment's notice. By this time the Canadian Mounted Rifles had already left by train for DeAar, on their way to the front. The expected word came at 12, noon, on the 13th, to leave for Cape Town that afternoon, to embark the next day for Beira. The battery paraded at 3 p.m. moving off at 3.30. When some distance out, an orderly overtook us with a telegram directing us to be in Cape Town as soon after 7 a.m. the next day as possible. We again bivouacked at Durban Road; and reached Cape Town at 8.30 a.m. next day, 14th.

We immediately proceeded to the South Arm wharf, and commenced loading our guns, stores &c., on the SS. *Colombian* lying there, everything being on by noon. Sir Frederick Carrington, under whose command we now were, expressed his surprise and gratification at our rapid march from Stellenbosch, and the readiness with which our equipment was put on board, as we were not expected at Cape Town until 1 p.m. Our horses came in quite fresh.

The *Colombian* sailed at about 4.30 p.m. Although so recently off the water, many of the men were soon sea-sick. Small details of the R.A.M.C. and R.E. were on board; also the paymaster's staff of the Rhodesian field force, to which force we now belonged.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

We reached Durban on the evening of April 17, dropping anchor a couple of miles off, and remaining there until 3 p.m. the following day.

The weather got pretty hot by the 18th, and we lost one horse on this date, many others being on the sick-list. We made Beira on the 21st, not before losing our way, however, as we passed it some distance and had to return. In doing so we nearly ran on the sand banks, soundings having to be taken the whole way.

The men were now instructed to pack away their best clothes, and to wear their old ones. The harness was taken to pieces and thoroughly cleaned and dubbed. I may say that General Carrington and staff seemed to take great interest in our men in the way they carried out their work, especially in the care of their horses and at stable hour.

The day after our arrival in the harbour at Beira, the Secretary of the Portuguese Governor came on board and, later, a dinner was tendered to General Carrington and a few officers by the Governor, to which I was invited. The greatest courtesy was shown to the British by the Portuguese authorities here.

A British man-of-war came into the harbour on the 22nd. Early on Monday, April 23, the unloading of the horses, guns, and stores was commenced. The horses were kept in a paddock until the evening, when the drivers and the horses, under Lieut. Irving, were sent ahead by rail to Bamboo Creek, a point some 60 miles from Beira on the Beira-Salisbury Railway, the train starting at 8.40 p.m. The train was made up of 42 cars, the railway being a narrow-gauge one of 2 feet 6 inches in width. We had the entire line to ourselves, the whole railway being cleared for the transportation of the battery. The following day, April 23, the remainder of the battery paraded on the *Colombian* at 8.15 a.m., and left for the shore on a punt. All the unloading of the horses and baggage had to be done by lighters.

The appearance of Beira from the *Colombian* was that which one might easily have imagined it to be, from its reputation as a fever pest-hole—a low, flat stretch of marshy land, from which arises a very pronounced unhealthy smell. The interior of the town, however, is clean, and the buildings more or less attractive, though mostly of wood and very low.

We entrained immediately. With us were 100 Queenslanders, who were to act as our escort. The train was made up of 31 cars and three engines, and started off at 11.10 a.m., going about seven miles an hour. The N. C. officers and men were each issued with a rifle and ammunition. They travelled in cattle trucks, and had close quarters, indeed. Some of them had to ride on top of the cars, others on the guns, wagons and harness. The territory passed through on leaving Beira was heavy marsh land; after some miles of this the aspect of the country changed and beautiful and extensive gardens opened up to view, displaying banana and cocoanut palms in abundance.

At 2.10 a.m. we reached Dundo (Indigo Crossing), the first stopping place and 18 miles from Beira. The next place was Carman, 28 miles. Here were large gangs of negroes working with picks and shovels, their remuneration being \$5 per month and board. They were all singing or uttering a sort of guttural chant, as they invariably do while working. They also have a peculiar way of handling the shovel or spade, keeping regular time in a sort of calisthenic movement which was very amusing. We left here in a short time and soon ran into clouds of locusts, the sky being black with them. Such a cloud is a harvest to the negroes, the locusts being one of their staple articles of food. They pick them up and dry them in the sun, the taste being somewhat similar to that of shrimps.

We reached Fontesville at 4.10 and Forty-five Mile Siding at 5.30; average time about 7 miles an hour. We now began to get a practical experience of the fever mist, which rises very heavily, commencing almost before the sun goes down and thus giving to this part of the country the name familiarly known—and experienced by so many—as the “White Man’s Grave.” The mist permeates everything although they may be under roof shelter. The nights are also very cold. The non-commissioned officers and men were advised to keep under their blankets as much as possible. The intense heat of the day, however, soon dries everything. I understand that the longest any white man has lived in these parts is about three years, and that it is only with the greatest

difficulty white men can be got to man the Beira railway, as every one takes the fever without exception.

We reached Bamboo Creek, 61 miles, late in the evening, remaining there over night and sleeping in the cars. Here were some of the drivers and horses, the others having gone ahead. We learned on our arrival at Bamboo Creek that this part of the country was exceptionally fatal to horses, and that at that time those of the Australians were dying by hundreds of horse sickness.

The day following our arrival, 25th, was a busy one as it was here the narrow gauge ended, the guns, stores, &c., having to be transferred to cars on the wide gauge railway. This was done in a remarkably short time under the direction of Captain Panet. Our stay here was very pleasant and novel, Bamboo Creek resembling more nearly than any place we were in one's idea of what a tropical country is like. The station master and his assistant were extremely courteous and obliging.

We left Bamboo Creek, 25th, in four trains of four cars each, one with the remaining drivers and horses at 1.30 p.m., the others at various intervals during the afternoon. The staff and myself went in the first train which was under my charge. The night was a novel and eventful one and one which I do not think any of us will forget. Very slow progress was made from the start: the trains going up grade the whole night. There were many long stops from the inability of the trains to make progress. On one or two of the trains the men had to get off and chop wood for the engine while the niggers sanded the track. The men did not attempt to sleep, not alone because they were too crowded, but it took the united efforts of all hands to prevent the burning of the trains. The engines burning nothing but wood, and having no spark catchers, threw out millions of sparks the whole night: and these settling on the baggage, particularly in front, set fire to it repeatedly, burning even the tarpaulins covering it. There was much ammunition on the train, and a plentiful supply of water had to be used throughout the night to prevent the fire from reaching the ammunition. The men's clothing caught fire on their backs while working. Their appearance the next morning was laughable in the extreme.

Our rations were now tinned beef, biscuit and water when the latter could be obtained—there being very little good water. A limited quantity of bottled ale and other liquors could be bought; but at such exorbitant prices there was no fear of any one taking too much.

We arrived at Mandagas, 144 miles, at 8.30 a.m. on the 26th. Here we found good water and made coffee. The station master, an American, informed us that Mandagas was one of the unhealthiest places on the coast.

From Mandagas it was up grade again. The Rhodesian border, 216 miles from Beira, was reached after hard puffing and pulling; and six miles further on we steamed into Umtali—a noted place of 235 inhabitants, and boasting of a fair-sized hotel and restaurant. There was quite a number of stores here also, and many of the men laid in a supply of provisions and other necessaries. We were saddened to hear of the death, the day before, of one of the Australians belonging to a party that had been sent ahead to Marandellas. The people of Umtali contemplated erecting a stone to his memory, as the first Colonial who had died in that place for the Empire. There is considerable gold at Umtali, as well as at many other places between here and Bulawayo.

All the trains reached Marandellas, 351 miles from Beira, at different hours on Friday, April 27, the last arriving about midnight, the trip from Beira having taken about eighty-four hours. This was our terminus by rail and from here we started on our 300-mile march for Bulawayo. The men had had but very little sleep for four days; but, with few exceptions, were well and in good spirits. It was pretty well understood now that we were going to the relief of Mafeking.

The horses had been very tightly boxed up in almost air-tight box-cars, and suffered much on this trip from Beira from the heat and the roughness of the road. They had also suffered much from the lack of water.

We found a base camp at Marandellas, about a mile from the railway; and after detraining went under canvas. Other troops were here already, chiefly Australians. A great many huts were being built by negro labour, the men doing the building, their

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

women the plastering—the plaster being mud. These huts were intended principally for Imperial Yeomanry a large body of whom were stationed here later. The day after our arrival I met the Chief Staff Officer of the Rhodesian Field Force, in connection with the arrangement of details, and the rapid forwarding of four of our guns to Colonel Plumer at Sefeteli. These guns were to be drawn by mules, as they were considered more suitable for forced marching than our horses. The other two guns with the horses, were to follow us by easy stages. It was also arranged that we should travel from Marandellas to Bulawayo by detachments, and on different days. As a matter of precaution, the N. C. Officers and men were equipped with rifles and bandoliers: fifty rounds of ammunition being carried by each man, and 100 each on the coaches—the mail-coaches on this route being brought into use for the occasion.

The arrangement for the first party was as follows:—

- 1st. Gun.
- 2nd. Escort: 1 officer and 8 men of R.C.F.A., and 7 of Q.M.I.
- 3rd. Gun.
- 4th. Escort: 1 officer and 6 men of Q.M.I., and 8 men R.C.F.A.
- 5th. Ammunition wagon.
- 6th. Escort: 1 officer and 8 men of R.C.F.A. and 3 men of Q.M.I.

The other details moved off in much the same order.

The ration arrangements were:—

Four days rations for 16 men, four days' for 15 men, four days' for 12 men—in addition to the one day's rations carried on the men.

On arrival at Bulawayo, I was to report to Colonel Nicholson or his representative. The arrival of each party at each telegraph station was to be reported by wire to the C.S.O., Marandellas. We took with us considerable ammunition and other stores.

On Monday, 30th April, the first detail left Marandellas at 6 a.m., consisting of myself, Lieut. Leslie and 23 N.C. officers and men of "C" Battery, and 17 Australians with one officer.

There were ten mules to each gun, ammunition wagon or coach. The men rode in three coaches, with a very limited amount of room; their positions being cramped and trying, particularly for so long a journey. The men for whom there was no room in the coaches rode on the guns.

The manner in which these mules were handled by the natives, was always a wonder and a source of admiration to our men. The mules resemble so many trained dogs; each one knows his place and goes to it, —and the harnessing and the hooking in is particularly well worth watching. A Mr. Zeederberg was the contractor on this occasion,—a man who, although a Boer, is well and popularly known as a man always to be depended upon by the British. He was exceptionally obliging and helpful on this trip; and we owe much to his knowledge of the country and his ever-willing assistance.

Lieut. King, with two more guns, one ammunition wagon and about the same number of men and coaches, left the following day, 1st May, at the same hour, an escort of Queenslanders accompanying him.

Captain Panet, with the third detail, left the same evening with two ammunition wagons and coaches. Lieut. Irving, with the drivers and horses and the centre section left on the following Thursday.

The details arrived at Bulawayo on the following dates,—that under my personal charge on the 6th May; the 2nd and 3rd details on the 7th, and the last under Lieut. Irving on the 21st—the first three making the journey of three hundred miles in about six days, or at the rate of 50 miles a day. The men had very little sleep during this trip; while the food taken was eaten hurriedly, or while jolting along on rough, uncertain roads and in positions too cramped for good digestion. We were made acquainted along the road with a new kind of "hard tack"—very hard indeed and very oily, but artistic in shape and stamped with the Broad Arrow. It was not a success as far as our men were concerned; tasting too strongly of linseed, or something like it. The biscuits issued during our after work in the field were quite the opposite, being palatable and sweet, and eminently a success as a field biscuit.

Although our journey from Marandellas to Bulawayo was carried out hurriedly and under trying circumstances, it was, nevertheless, most interesting. Occasionally at night the roar of a lion could be heard; and now and then during the day a deer, leopard or jackal would dart across the trail. The first British South Africa Police post reached was Fort Charter, 60 miles from Marandellas: then Inkledoorn, 50 miles further on.

Sebakwe, or Orton's Drift, 114 miles from Marandellas, was reached in due course. The Sebakwe river here divides Mashonaland from Matabeleland. We found the telegraph line here disconnected, the reason stated being that the civilian operator was pro-Boer. After Sebakwe we got to Iron Mines. Then came Gwelo, another interesting place and the largest we had been in since leaving Beira. There were quite a number of white people here and we were well received. There was an hotel, bank, a large post office building and other places of importance. Gwelo is a gold district—and a fever district too, over half of the population at the time being down with it. So far, very little rain had fallen since our landing at Beira, or indeed since our arrival at Cape Town, nor did we see much rain for some months to come. It was the winter season in Rhodesia, all vegetation being dried up. On this account, the country presented a very desolate appearance. The roads at times were extremely bad, and the drifts in some places were well nigh impassable and extremely dangerous for men and horses. Another unpleasant feature, and one with which we had to contend in nearly all our treks, was the dust, so thick at times as almost to choke men and horses.

Upon our arrival at Gwelo, 180 miles from Marandellas, I received instructions by wire from the C.S.O. to divide into smaller details, two vehicles only to move together instead of six, an interval of five hours to be between each detail. We had received relays of mules thus far every ten miles or so. These animals now became scarce, and oxen had to be used for some of the guns and wagons. It was surprising with what speed the oxen got over the ground, seemingly having no trouble to keep up with the mules.

The next place we reached was Shangani. It was here, on October 28, 1893, that the first big battle with the Matabele was fought. Our course was over the historic battleground. The store here is built on the site of the Salisbury laager, so bravely held in that fight. Many skulls of the dead Matabele can still be found in the river-bed. It was on the banks of this river, some distance up, that Wilson met his noted defeat. After this, we pass Pongo, Tekwe and Lion's Vlei, and at length reach Bambesi, the scene of another great fight with the Matabele, November 4, 1893.

I cannot say too much in acknowledgment of the kindly manner in which we were received by the inhabitants of Bulawayo, and the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the British South Africa Company's Police stationed there, and at the various police posts along the route.

The Administrator, being unable to be present, sent us a very courteous message by his representative, expressing his regret, and welcoming us to Bulawayo. During our short stay of about two days, all ranks were hospitably entertained. The Rhodesian Brewery Company very kindly sent a number of barrels of ale, and other beverages, to our camp.

Bulawayo is an attractive and thriving town of some 1,500 inhabitants, although here, as at Gwelo, many were down with fever. With the exception of the party with Lieut. Irving, all the details had reached here by May 7, those of the battery making a total of 4 officers and 62 non-commissioned officers and men, sufficient to man the four guns, and leaving a few spare gunners. The following day, 8th, was spent in completing equipment, and in making preparations for transport by rail to Ootsi, a distance of 420 miles in the direction of Mafeking.

A smoking concert was given in the evening to all ranks by Colonel Nicholson, Commandant of the B. S. A. Police at that station, and a genial and popular officer. We learned from the police that the Matabele were more or less restless; and that an outbreak among them was a thing to be expected. The chief difficulty seems to be the hut tax, there being a tax of 10 shillings per annum per hut, collected from the Mata-

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

bele by the Rhodesian Government. It is the duty of the B. S. A. Police to collect this tax, and the task is by no means easy.

Orders were received the evening of the 8th to be ready to move in the morning, which we did at 10.15 a.m., followed by the cheers and well-wishes of the good citizens of Bulawayo and the B. S. A. P. Mrs. Lawley, wife of the Administrator, was at the station to bid us God-speed, and to express to us her husband's regret at being unavoidably absent. The interest taken in us by Mrs. Lawley was accepted by us as a great compliment.

We left one sergeant and one gunner in hospital at Bulawayo. Colonel Nicholson accompanied us and had charge of the train. This railway was a great contrast to the one running from Beira, and we sped along at a lively rate.

We reached Crocodile Pools at 8 a.m., on the 11th, from which place an armoured train accompanied us to Ootsi. We arrived at the latter point at 9.30 a.m., the same day, having done the 429 miles in less than two days. Here we found a small camp of Plumer's men. No time was lost in getting off the guns and stores. The ammunition was prepared for action, and arrangements made for leaving in the afternoon. I personally took command at this point. Colonel Plumer's men that were here had been detailed to accompany us to Sefeteli as part of our escort.

We started at four p.m. on the 11th, covering twenty-five miles by eleven p.m., at which time we bivouacked. Before reaching Colonel Plumer, a cyclist from his camp brought a message of urgency, saying that the Colonel was in touch with the column of Brgdr. General Mahon from the south, and that an immediate junction with this force was necessary. We were resting at the time, but resuming our trek got within a mile of the Colonel's camp the night of the 13th, bivouacked, and reported our arrival.

Early the next morning we went in; and I do not think that any of us will ever forget the scene as, with cheer after cheer, we passed through the lines of as brave, gallant and efficient a body of men as ever took up arms in defence of the British Empire. The health of these men, the privations they had undergone, the state of the camp and the scarcity of provisions and good water may be judged from the fact that, out of a total strength of about 800 men about 300 were on the sick list. Ragged, hungry and dirty—owing to their privations—the sight of these men, as, with hearts true to the core, they cheered us and shook our hands, sent a thrill through each one of us who had travelled so many thousands of miles to get there; and I know that, under the impulse of those cheers from men like that, we who had just arrived mentally resolved once more, that, come what might, we would do our best for the honour of Canada and the flag of the Empire. But for the lack of Artillery, this Force would long before have relieved Mafeking. They had but one 12-pr. B.L., and three 7-pr. M.L. guns; and had been hovering in the vicinity of Mafeking, fighting and harassing the enemy, and doing all that was possible in encouraging the small garrison to hold out until relief arrived. They had suffered much, too; both from disease and while fighting, losing at Ramathlabama alone in one fight upwards of fifty killed and wounded. Here at Sefeteli they were well entrenched: guarding the supplies which were held ready to send into Mafeking the moment the siege was raised.

Following is my report on the relief of Mafeking, already submitted to you, which I would like to embody in this report:—

“On the morning of May 14, after a series of forced marches from Marandellas, I joined Lt.-Colonel Plumer's column at Safeteli. At about 2 p.m. the same day, the column commenced the march towards Mafeking, reaching Jan Massibi on the Molopo River, a distance of 30 miles, on the morning of May 15, forming a junction with the southern column under Colonel Mahon, which arrived there about the same time.

“Colonel Plumer's column consisted of the following corps: British South Africa Coy.'s Police, Rhodesia Regiment, a dismounted squadron of the Queensland Infantry, Southern Rhodesia Volunteers (dismounted), and the right and left sections of “C” Battery, Royal Canadian Field Artillery.

“Artillery:—B.S.A. Police: 1 12 pr. B.L. and 3 7-pr. M.L. guns under Captain Llewellyn, B.S.A.P.

“Four 12 pr. B. L. guns of “C” Battery, R.C.F.A.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

"I may mention here that the Canadian guns were drawn by mules, with native drivers, the horses of "C" Battery having been left at the base at Marandellas, being unable to undergo a forced march owing to their bad condition and the sickness of a few.

"Lieut. Leslie, of "C" Battery, was attached to the Artillery Staff during the operations of the 16th.

"In accordance with orders issued on the evening of the 15th, the combined columns, under Colonel Mahon, moved out of camp the following day, proceeding towards Mafeking.

"The advance guard was formed by the B.S.A.P., the Queensland Mounted Infantry and the Rhodesia Regt. on our right; the B.S.A.P. Artillery on our left; the whole of the southern column also being on our left, both columns advancing together.

"Colonel Plumer commanded the northern column, the southern column being under the command of Lt.-Col. Edwards, Imperial Light Horse.

"The whole of the artillery force was under the command of Major Jackson, R.A.

"At the time mentioned the force commenced the advance eastward towards Mafeking, moving along the south ridge of the Molopo valley, following the river. Three squadrons of the Rhodesia Regt. moved along the north bank. The ground covered was for the most part open veldt and free from kopjes.

"The force halted at Sanie Station, about 10 miles from Mafeking; the horses, mules and oxen being watered, the troops taking a light lunch. This had scarcely been done before orders were received to saddle up and hook-in, the march being resumed. The enemy had, according to reports, been sighted by our scouts.

"The force had advanced but a short distance further, when I received instructions to take position, the advance guard being already engaged with the enemy. I galloped up for instructions, after issuing orders for the battery to prepare for action.

"The battery came into action, wagon supply, and under cover, the guns being run into position by hand in a mealie field, and in a direction facing almost due east. While this was being done, one of the enemy's shells burst in front of the battery but did no damage.

"The opening of our fire in this our first position was much delayed, owing to our inability to locate the Boer guns. A change to half-right was made, our first shot being fired at about 2.30 with percussion shrapnel at a bush on the right of a white house, the range being 5,000 yards. Two other ranges were taken in this position, one at artillery on the sky-line of a ridge, the third at a bush on the right of a brick building, the ranges being 5,000 and 4,500 yards respectively.

"We remained in this position for about three quarters of an hour, the firing being slow, owing to the reasons stated, and the wide area of the Boer guns. A few rounds only were fired by us from this position. A few of the enemy's shells dropped over and under the battery, some coming quite close to our guns but without casualties.

"It was then thought advisable to change position, the battery coming into action on a ridge about 1,000 yards east of our first position. The change was made in echelon, the left section leading, the battery for a short time being subjected to an enfilade fire from guns, pom-poms and rifles, but fortunately without effect.

"We opened fire on a stone laager at 3,700 yards against artillery; and finding the range to be 3,350 yards, at once changed to time-shrapnel with fuse 15½. The enemy's position appeared to be well protected by trees; and in elevation was about on a level with our own. We, however, silenced the Boer guns after a few rounds; driving the enemy from his position and following him with our shells, which were apparently effective.

"We were soon exposed to fire from the right from field guns and pom-poms, located in a bush near a white house. Our right section, therefore, changed front to the right to reply to this fire, the first range being at 3,750 yards, fuze 17¾. They were almost immediately assisted by the left section, with the result that the enemy soon appeared to be dislodged.

"We then turned our fire on the white house. No. 1 gun was at this time detached, and sent, under Captain Panet, to the right, to take a position from which one

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

of the enemy's pom-poms could be located. No. 2 gun then changed fire to the brick building on the right of the white house, at a range of 4,500 yards. The left section also changed fire at 4,700 yards on artillery between the white house and brick building, the enemy quickly ceasing his fire from that direction, No 2 gun assisted in this work.

"The artillery fire of the enemy, however, was resumed, their shells still coming from the direction of the white house. Their guns were well under cover: sheltered by trees and shrubbery, and at times could not be located. As a result their fire increased for a time; and two of our men, No. 65, acting Bombardier W. Patton, No. 5 sub-division and No. 135, Gunner W. McCollum, No. 6 sub-division were slightly wounded with pieces of shell.

"At this point, we received orders to change our position further east, in order to secure a shorter range and from where the effect of our fire could be observed with better advantage. We again opened fire on the white house at 3,650 yards and with better results, the enemy vacating his position in great disorder, his guns having been silenced by our fire. Captain Panet rejoined us shortly after with No. 1 gun. This was the last position taken by us that day, the enemy ceasing his fire at 5.35, our last shell being fired at 5.40. The general action ceased about the same time, with the exception of a few stray rifle shots.

"The battery then joined the remainder of the column, which assembled at a short distance from the centre of the Boer position; the white house being occupied by the Queenslanders who acted as our escort. Colonel Plumer's column then joined the southern, which, with the convoy, was somewhat to the south. A halt was then made and the mules were fed.

"Orders were then received to bivouac for the night,—4 a.m. being the hour mentioned for reveille. Before turning in, however, our ammunition wagons were refilled from the reserve, the ammunition being a considerable distance from the guns. The work was scarcely completed before orders were received for a general advance, the force resuming the march towards Mafeking about mid-night. It had been found that our front was clear. We arrived in Mafeking without further opposition, about 4 a.m. on May 17, and bivouacked for a few hours.

"About 7 a.m. we received an order to move to the outskirts of Mafeking to shell the Boer laager. The battery took a position on the north side of the railway and opened fire. The Boers were driven out and, being followed by our shells, fled over the ridge in considerable disorder. This work occupied us about three-quarters of an hour. The rapid manner in which the battery turned out, after the trying work of the previous day and with but little rest, elicited the commendation of Colonel Plumer, who expressed his pleasure at the smart and quick way in which his order had been carried out.

"I may add that on the 18th, Colonel Baden-Powell addressed the men of the battery, thanking and complimenting them for the part they had taken in the relief of Mafeking, and the great efforts they had been called upon to make to reach Colonel Plumer's column in time to be of practical service. He also expressed surprise at their fine appearance and physique, after such a long and trying march.

"In closing this report, I wish to place on record the great encouragement and satisfaction I myself derived from the cheerful manner in which all duty was performed by the officers, N.C. officers and men of the battery, not only in the operations at Mafeking, but all through the long and arduous journey from Beira. The conduct of the men under fire, and their work at the guns on both days, is deserving of great credit.

"Scott's sights were used throughout the operations; and the supply of ammunition was entirely from the wagons."

The first night we were at Mafeking "Canada" was announced as the countersign, and we naturally accepted it as a compliment to our work in the relief.

Needless to say the people of Mafeking were overjoyed to see us, and were most expressive in their thankfulness for the service we had been enabled to do them. Lady Sarah Wilson, among others, took great interest in the Canadians, and I understand made complimentary references to us in some of her newspaper articles.

On May 19 we left Mafeking with Plumer's force for Ramathlabama, a distance of sixteen miles north of Mafeking on the railway. This move was made in order to protect the workmen engaged in repairing the railway and bridge at that place, which had been blown up by the Boers. It was between Ramathlabama and Mafeking that the car load of dynamite, sent out of the latter place by General Baden-Powell, exploded and killed so many of the enemy.

The rout of the Boers in these parts now appeared to be complete, none being seen by our scouts. It was thought that the majority left for Zeerust, a noted Transvaal town forty miles across the border. It was deemed advisable, however, to thoroughly entrench our position, the work taking three days, gun empaulments and other work being carried out.

On May 22 we stood to arms before day-break, this being our first experience in this work. The repairs to the bridge and track were finished on this day; and, what was equally welcome, a Canadian mail arrived, the first we had had for six weeks. It came via Beira.

One of the most annoying and disgusting things the battery had to contend with was lice. It was simply impossible to get rid of them—they were everywhere in millions, and seemed to come out of the ground.

On the 23rd we heard that Lord Roberts was getting near Pretoria. On the 24th a parade of the whole force was held in honour of the birthday of Her Gracious Majesty the Queen. "C" Battery marched past with guns and mules, and made a good showing, Colonel Plumer being much pleased.

Although quite hot in the day time, it was very cold at night, many of the men suffering intensely with cold feet. It was sufficiently cold to freeze the water in the water-bottles.

On the 25th Lieut. Irving, with nearly all of the remainder of the battery and the horses, wagons, &c., joined us at Ramathlabama, having come down from Bulawayo by train. A number of sick horses had been left behind at the latter place, in charge of the farrier sergeant and a few men, and these joined the battery some days later. A number of men had also been left behind sick.

The work of bringing through the horses and men of the battery from Marandellas to Bulawayo—a march of 300 miles, and then on to Ramathlabama by rail, another 500 miles—was a task of no small consideration. This task was performed by Lieut. Irving with remarkable success. Many of the horses were sick and required much attention, the roads were extremely rough and difficult and water very scarce, and I am of the opinion that this officer is deserving of the highest credit for the work he performed.

The following is a brief summary of the details connected with the march of the men and horses under Lieut. Irving from Marandellas to Bulawayo:—

They left Marandellas on Thursday, May 4, after being inspected by General Carrington, who complimented them on their appearance. There were about 100 N.C. officers and men and 120 horses, 2 guns, 2 ammunition wagons, 4 prairie wagons, the forge and store wagons. There were also 10 bullock wagons, with ammunition, baggage, forage, &c. On the road, two horses died from bites of the tse-tse fly and one from blue-tongue. One suffering from pneumonia had to be shot. One was accidentally drowned. Most of the marching was done after sundown and before sunrise, as the oxen were unable to stand the heat. Another reason for this was, that the oxen required part of the day for grazing, as at night it would be difficult to prevent them from straying away and becoming a prey to wild beasts. Three of the men were taken so ill with fever as to cause considerable delay, and eventually had to be left behind with a party to look after them. After leaving Gwelo, an order by wire was received to make forced marches the rest of the trip with the two guns, two ammunition wagons and prairie wagons only.

On May 26, a part of the force at Ramathlabama, including the right and centre sections of the battery, left for Zeerust, Transvaal, at 5 a.m. All the battery officers, with the exception of Lieut. King, accompanied this force, the latter remaining at Ramathlabama in charge of the left section. This officer, with this section, rejoined us at Rustenburg on June 19, having left Ramathlabama on June 1 for Mafeking, from

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

which time the section was attached to the force under Major General Baden-Powell, which reached Rustenburg by a different route than that taken by us. The farrier sergeant who had been left at Bulawayo with twenty-seven horses and twenty men reached Ramathlabama on May 28, the men and horses joining their respective sections. The force, with the right and left sections of the battery, moved cautiously towards Zeerust, arriving there without incident. The place was found clear of the fighting part of the enemy. The landrost demurred somewhat against handing over the keys of the public buildings, but on receiving notice from Colonel Plumer that the place would be shelled, he quickly complied. Zeerust is an attractive little place of about 1,000 inhabitants, though for the last three years it has been a hotbed for fever. We remained here until June 8.

It might be interesting, as well as for purposes of record, to give a detail of the battery strength at this time:—At Zeerust, 4 officers, 109 N.C.O.'s and men; Mafeking, 1 officer, 51 N.C.O.'s and men; hospital at Mafeking, 1; hospital at Bulawayo, 1; hospital at Marandellas, 4; hospital at Cape Town, 1; invalided to England, 1; storeman at base, Cape Town, 1; total, 174.

The force left Zeerust for Rustenburg at 7 a.m. on June 8, the battery leaving six men behind in hospital. We reached Vlakfontein at 9 p.m. on the 9th. On the 10th, we received a telegram from Lord Roberts congratulating the force on the part it had taken in the relief of Mafeking. We left at 2 p.m. on the 11th, arriving at Reit Valley at 9 p.m. Starting from the latter place at 2 a.m. on the 12th, we got to Woodstock at 6 p.m. Here the eldest son of Kruger surrendered. Some of the Australians, under Colonel Airy, narrowly escaped capture here by a superior force of Boers, who evacuated Woodstock shortly before our arrival. Rustenburg was reached at 5 a.m. on the 14th. Eight hundred well-armed Boers left this place a few hours before our arrival, and we therefore went in unmolested and took possession. Many rifles and much ammunition had been collected by us on our way, and this work continued about Rustenburg for some weeks, over a thousand rifles being brought in in a short time. President Kruger owned a farm in this vicinity, and the place is known as an old dopper settlement.

The district we had passed through was a vast improvement on anything we had yet seen in the matter of soil and agricultural advantages, the same conditions holding good all through the Rustenburg valley, this valley being what may properly be termed, and is I believe known as, the garden of the Transvaal.

Rustenburg at ordinary times has a population of between 1,000 and 2,000, and is between 50 and 60 miles west of Pretoria. Major General Baden-Powell joined us before we reached Rustenburg and took command of the force, which had been designated the Rhodesian Field Force. Every one in the column was glad to see the popular hero of Mafeking again. Rustenburg was, as events proved, destined to be the scene and base of our operations for some time to come. Our camp was on a ridge about a mile from and commanding the town.

On June 16, a circular from Lord Roberts was published, thanking the troops for their work since entering the enemy's country, and saying that as soon as the district was pacified, it was his intention to attach the troops of our column to a larger force under his own immediate command. That time never came, however, as this district has since probably given more trouble to the military authorities than any other, either in the Transvaal or the Orange River Colony. General Baden-Powell, having left for Mafeking, returned on the 19th, bringing with him the Protectorate Regiment—which had undergone the siege at Mafeking—and our own left section under Lieutenant King. They had come via the Ottoshoop and Malmani route, the left section having lost seven horses and left three men behind in hospital.

On June 20, Lieutenant Colonel Drury, commanding the Brigade Division, Captain Thacker, Adjutant, and 10 staff non-commissioned officers and men joined us at Rustenburg, having come via Kimberley and Mafeking. On the 23rd, "C" Battery was inspected by Lieutenant Colonel Drury. The battery turned out six guns, six wagons, store wagon and forge, the latter two being drawn by mules. The battery underwent a rigid inspection and performed considerable field work, being complimented by the inspecting officer at the close.

On the 26th, nineteen remounts were received by the battery. By this time many Boers in the district had surrendered, and on the 29th orders were received for the force to be prepared to leave Rustenburg on July 2.

Orders were received on the 1st for the greater part of the force to move on Sterkstroom at 10 a.m. on the 2nd, and to carry fourteen days' rations. One squadron of the Australian Bushmen, the 12 pounder belonging to the B. S. A. P. and one maxim, with detachments remained at Rustenburg. We left as arranged, and, stopping for one hour only for dinner, proceeded along the Pretoria road at a lively rate until 9.30 p. m., when we bivouacked in the darkness and rain. We continued the march at 7 in the morning, reaching Wolherter's Kop for dinner. It was at first thought we were to remain here for some days, but later orders send us off again at 2.30 p.m. reaching Com-mando Nek in the evening. After leaving Rustenburg the Force was constantly on the alert, as it was reported there were many of the enemy in the district. The Left Section took position, with a part of the Force, at the entrance to the Pass, remaining there until the following day at noon. The other part of the Force bivouacked about two miles in, and on the banks of the Crocodile River, the night turning out wet and miserable. The following morning our centre section was detailed to take position on Umsiligazi's Nek, about three miles farther in the Pass and across the Crocodile, remaining there some days; the remainder of the Force eventually occupying Reitfontein kopje. The enemy were not encountered, however, and, on the 6th July we left again for Rustenburg where we arrived on 8th, and learned that the enemy had attempted to retake the place in our absence. The small garrison had fought well; but when nearly over-powered had received unexpected assistance from a body of Australians just entering Rustenburg, having come from Flandersfontein. The enemy were driven off, the Australians fighting in a most gallant manner and losing some four or five of their number.

We now remained in Rustenburg for some time. We learned from a reliable source that there were many of the enemy in the district, they having been driven in from other territory. In fact, the seriousness of our situation was such that General Baden-Powell deemed it advisable to prepare for a seige, and, as a beginning, we were put on three-quarter rations.

Every precaution was taken to defend the camp. Under the superintendence of Captain Panet an excellent fort was built for the protection of the Battery guns, adequate shelter for the horses also being provided. These works were not done without much labour, the whole Battery being utilized for many days. General Baden-Powell, in one of his characteristic orders advised us to "sit tight and shoot straight;" and Lord Roberts sent us an encouraging message, saying that he would have us relieved as soon as a column could be despatched for the purpose.

Our left section, under Lieut. King, was detailed to take a position in the centre of the town. The horses were picketed in an orange grove. The guns were entrenched so as to command the principal streets. Rumours of an impending attack floated about occasionally; but I think the majority of the men regarded the siege and the threatened attack as something not to be taken too seriously.

On July 20, orders were issued for the whole force to be in readiness to move at seven a.m. the following morning, and stating that there might be an action before leaving camp. It turned out that the Boers were in force at Oliphant's Nek, about seven miles from Rustenburg; and that General Lord Methuen, who had been sent to our relief, was to attack them in the morning, our force being expected to cut off their retreat. Methuen made his attack, driving them out; but owing I believe to some misunderstanding, we were not at the time of his attack sufficiently near to do much damage to the retiring enemy. About twenty-five shells were fired by our guns, at a range of 5,000 yards.

On the 22nd a body of Australians got into a hot corner at Mahato's Pass, some of the troops from the camp being sent out to relieve them, arriving just in time to save them from annihilation. The Australians had lost nearly all their horses—over 200—and a number of their officers and men had been killed and wounded.

On the 22nd Generals Methuen, Smith-Dorrien and Baden-Powell paid a visit to "Fort Canada"—as our fort had been named, and were apparently much pleased with the work.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

On the night of the 25th we experienced a thunder storm, with such a heavy down-pour of rain that will not be forgotten soon by any of us. Everything and everybody were soaked to the skin, and we passed a most miserable night. It was followed in the morning, however, by our first ration of rum, or dop, to use a South African term. It was issued after this on an average of about once a week.

Nothing more of importance occurred until July 30, when we heard rumours of our being probably attacked. We stood to arms before daybreak each morning. The position was a strong one, and it would have taken a large force of the enemy to capture it. The spare gunners were issued with rifles; and while they, in the early mornings, before daybreak, stood in the trenches within the fort, and the gunners about the guns, the drivers harnessed their horses ready to turn out at a moment's notice.

There was only one mail sent out by us from Rustenburg during July, and as that was captured by the enemy we may naturally assume that an attack was quite possible, particularly in the light of more recent information.

On August 1, orders were received for Lt. Col. Plumer to be a Brigadier General while commanding a mixed force.

Heavy firing was heard in the direction of Commando Nek on August 2. About this time our right section, under Lieut. Leslie, was detailed to replace one of the seven prs. of the B. S. A. Police on Helio Kop, a very high kopje, from the top of which, an excellent view could be obtained of the surrounding country. It was a difficult task to get horses and guns up on this elevation.

The enemy's force in the Rustenburg district was known to be 3,750 men with ten guns, with an additional force at Commando Nek with seven maxims. The laagers were stationary; but 1,000 men could be easily opposed to us at any place on short notice. Heavy artillery fire continued all day on the 4th and 5th from the direction of Mahato's Nek, and the greater part of the force left for there on the latter date, the centre and left sections of the battery accompanying it. They went as far as Koster's river and returned next day without having met the enemy. Orders were then issued for the evacuation of Rustenburg, such of the inhabitants as wished to go to accompany the force. A column under Brigadier General Malon, which had arrived the day before, was also to return in the direction of Commando Nek, in which direction our own route lay. We heard at this time that General Carrington's column had found it necessary to retire to Mafeking.

We left Rustenburg on the morning of August 7, as arranged, destroying much Boer ammunition before moving off.

We had some notable prisoners with us, there being Pete Kruger, son of the late President, Commandant Duplessis, a relative of ex-President Steyn, a French officer and others. Commando Nek was reached on the 9th, and on getting into the Pass we found many British troops there under General Ian Hamilton.

On the following day the force of General Baden-Powell again crossed the Crocodile River and took up our old position on Reitfontein kopje, where we remained until August 19, there being many Boers in the neighbourhood. Since our last visit here, a British force had been cut up and captured a short distance from this position, at a place well-known now as Umsiligazi's Nek.

While still at Reitfontein kopje, DeWet passed within a short distance of us, his advance guard attacking a foraging party of ours. In the evening, it was reported, he sent a message to General Baden-Powell demanding our surrender, to which the latter replied to "come and fetch us." No attack was made, however. Two 5 inch guns had been turned over to our force by General Hamilton, and we were not in a position to be trifled with. These guns were manned by detachments of the Royal Artillery and accompanied us in our future treks.

We were now only 16 miles from Pretoria, but although we saw the town at a distance a few days later, we were not destined to enter it for three months yet.

On the 15th, three months mail reached us; and, after having been so long almost without communication with the outside world, this was a day long to be remembered.

Our position on this kopje was a very cold one, particularly while standing to arms, as we did each morning before daybreak, the hard frosts being a great contrast to the extreme heat during the day.

The day after our arrival here, the centre section, under Lieut. Irving, was detailed to occupy a position near a Kafir stadt some distance from our kopje, and within range of Umsiligazi's Nek. On the 18th, the other four guns took part in a reconnaissance in force to this nek, being joined here by the centre section. The enemy was not found, and we returned to camp, after which orders were received to move at 2 a.m. the day following, the hour being subsequently changed to 5 a.m. As a forced march was contemplated, our transport wagons and baggage, the surplus ammunition and the spare men were to follow us leisurely, Captain Panet having charge of these.

On August 19 we started, going for some distance along the Pretoria road. We went in a northerly direction, just catching a glimpse of Pretoria lying between the hills. Lord Roberts and Staff joined our force here, and the force marched past the general, who seemed well pleased with the Mafeking relief force. I was sent for by Lord Roberts, who expressed to me the deep gratification it gave him to meet the battery which, as he himself put it, "had made that famous march from Beira to Mafeking." "It was capital," said His Lordship. His kindly manner, and the way he inquired about the health of the men, indicated that he meant all he said, and that the Canadian Artillery held a high place in his estimation.

Lt.-Col. Drury and the Brigade Division Staff left the battery temporarily at this place for Pretoria.

After a short stay for dinner we continued our march, moving towards Waterval, bivouacking on the ground on which an action had been fought the day previous, and about six miles from Waterval.

In due course we reached Waterval, the scene of imprisonment of so many British prisoners during the war. We were now attached to General Paget's column. On the 20th, the latter's advance guard engaged the enemy's rear. Orders were now received to take all the rations with us that could be carried, this being a supply depot.

It was then arranged for General Baden-Powell's column to prepare for a lengthy chase, Paget's column following and acting as supply. "C" Battery, with full gun-detachments, accompanied General Baden-Powell's force. The battery travelled very light, taking no blankets, and leaving behind all their transport, three ammunition wagons and the spare men, with Paget's force. These were expected to rejoin us the same night but were unable to do so.

For three days a stiff chase was kept up, the force covering a distance of over sixty miles, "C" Battery as well as the rest of the force being in action a great part of the time, the fighting commencing shortly after leaving Waterval. The casualties of our force during the first day, at Klip Drift, (Haman's Kraal), were twenty-seven, including five killed. Among the latter was Colonel Spreckly, "E" Squadron, Rhodesia Regt., a resident of Bulawayo and a very popular officer. His death was keenly regretted by the whole force, his well known figure being much missed by "C" Battery officers, with whom he was on intimate terms. It was during the action that "C" Battery, by their shell fire, were enabled to save two squadrons of the Rhodesia regiment, the latter having been ambushed by the enemy. The effectiveness of the battery fire was very apparent to these squadrons, the commanding officer expressing to me his thanks on their behalf. Our ranges during this action were never longer than 1,300 yards, and at times as short as 800.

We kept up the chase for the following two days, sustaining a few casualties. We passed Pienaar's River, following them up to Warm Baths, but they succeeded in getting into the hills around this place, although we managed to release 150 British prisoners. Their convoy narrowly escaped capture. We at once took precautions against an attack on our position here.

We remained at Warm Baths for the time, as the chase had been a hard one on our horses, some of them dying on the road.

Warm Baths takes its name from the hot springs at that place and from the two hundred or so modern bath houses erected there. These baths and the hot water were a real boon to our men after their past experiences.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Throughout the campaign most of the marching was done at night, the usual routine being reveille at 2 or 3 a.m., march at 3 or 4. This was exceptionally trying on the drivers, who had but one hour to harness and hook in, get their breakfast and look after the packing of their blankets and other articles of kit. A stop was usually made at 9 or 10 a.m., marching again at 3 or thereabouts and bivouacking some time in the night. In the interval the men had to bake their bread, wash their clothes and keep their kit in order, besides attending to the horses, harness, guns, &c. Much time was often taken up watering the horses, the water usually being either very scarce or long distances from the lines. Our work during the past week had been exceedingly exhausting on men and horses. The men had to do without blankets and in consequence had suffered much from the cold at night. From Klip Drift the roads had been very heavy, and the heat of the day allied to the fact that no water could be obtained for twenty miles, had a very deteriorating effect, a number of our horses dropping by the way.

About noon on the 24th General Baden-Powell's force again moved out accompanied by the battery, going towards the Nek, the route taken by the retiring Boers. The enemy were there and the battery fired a few rounds, but the general deemed it inadvisable to attempt the passage of the Nek, and so by a circuitous route and in order to baffle the enemy we got into the Nylstroom valley beyond by another pass. The whole of the following day was passed in reconnoitring in the vicinity of Nylstroom, but none of the enemy were seen. We therefore returned to Warm Baths. It was reported later, however, that our position at Nylstroom was extremely perilous owing to the overwhelming force of the enemy who were in the neighbourhood, who were at the time preparing to cut off our retirement to Warm Baths, and it was understood that our small force got through the pass just in time. Colonel Drury and staff, and also Captain Panet with the transport, were at Warm Baths on our return.

General Plumer's Column, "C" Battery excepted, left shortly for Pienaar's River, General Baden-Powell being called to Pretoria in connection with the organization of the South African Constabulary. The latter addressed the men of "C" Battery before taking his departure, complimenting them upon their work in the field, and saying that but for them, he would many a time have been in a hole. Our men much regretted to see Plumer's Rhodesians separated from them, a mutual confidence having arisen between these two bodies of men tending greatly to the efficiency of the force as a fighting machine.

Colonel Chapman, a British artillery officer of considerable ability, was in command of the camp at Warm Baths, under General Paget, and our relations with him were of the pleasantest character. I very much regret to have heard that since our return he has died of fever. The 38th Battery, R.A., were with us at this place. This battery had seen considerable service in the campaign, having lost nearly all their officers and an exceedingly large percentage of N.C. officers and men.

On the 29th August Lt. Col. Drury left for Pretoria, Captain Thacker and the remainder of the Brigade Division Staff going the following day.

On the 31st a train arrived from Pretoria with remounts, of which the battery received quite a number next day.

Orders were received on the night of the 2nd September for the force to stand to arms early the following morning, and for the battery guns to take position on a kopje about a mile above the battery lines. It appeared that the Boers had erected guns on the kopjes within easy range of our camp, and that an attack was expected in the morning. It came earlier than some expected, for the battery had hardly finished hooking-in the next morning before the Boers began shelling us in earnest. They were using 45 prs. for the most part, and continued the practice the greater part of day, their guns eventually being silenced by our two 5-inch. Their third shell dropped within a few feet of "C" Battery Officers' tent as it was being taken down by a squad of men. Many more fell within our lines and about the guns during the day, but luckily the most of them failed to burst. One "C" Battery man was severely wounded while tampering with one of these unexploded shells.

This ended the shell fire on the part of the Boers, but a persistent attack with rifles was continued on the camp until the evening of the 9th, a duration of seven days.

This period of our service in South Africa was one of the most interesting of the whole campaign. The Boers held impregnable positions within easy artillery range, and only the presence of our own two 5-inch guns made our own positions tenable. The Boer rifle fire was incessant, and many Mauser bullets dropped into our lines. The battery guns took up the same positions each day, reveille being at 3.30, our guns taking up their positions at 5 a.m. or before. One gun of the left section, under Lieut. King was sent, for a few days, about eight miles down the railway, where the line had been cut. The second day a determined attack with rifles was made on the station, the enemy getting within a few hundred yards. This necessitated the posting of a 5-inch gun at that point, and our centre section, under Lieut. Irving, was also stationed there from that time. The Boers freely boasted of their ability to take Warm Baths, and I believe that it was considered possible by some of our side that they might do so. General Paget was in command, and he immediately wired for Gen. Plumer, who was at Pienaar's River, a distance of about 30 miles.

On the arrival of Gen. Plumer, the left section of "C" Battery was detailed to accompany a part of his force, under Major Rolt, on a reconnaissance of the Boer position, which apparently was unassailable. The Munster Fusiliers, with Paget's column, attempted the storming of part of the enemy's position with the bayonet in order to capture a gun, but it was found the risk would be too great. Good practice was made by our guns from day to day, and some experimenting was done with the long blue time percussion fuse. The Boers also experimented, taking the hospital in the hotel as a target, in spite of protests on our part.

During all this period good water was very scarce, and the stench from dead animals in the vicinity of the camp almost unbearable. Probably this was the cause for evacuating the place, as many men were being taken down with fever each day, not excepting our own battery. At any rate an evacuation of the place was ordered, all of our positions being vacated cautiously on the night of September 9, the morning of the 10th finding us back at Pienaar's River.

On the 11th arrangements were made for Plumer's column, including "C" Battery, to make another dash after the enemy, all our baggage and spare ammunition being handed over to Paget's force, which again acted as supply. The men's valises were left at Pienaar's River, to be forwarded, it was thought, into Pretoria. On the 12th we left for Zoutpan (Salt-pan), arriving there on the 13th, Paget's column reaching the same place about the same time by a different route. The next day we reached Hebron, a Kaffir town of some size. While here we heard that Mr. Kruger had formally resigned the office of President of the South African Republic, and that both he and Mr. Reitz had crossed into Portuguese territory with the archives.

A move was then made towards Roode Kop, the advance guard of Plumer's force being fired upon at this place by Boers in khaki, one of our column being killed. The whole valley in which we were was then laid waste, the crops being destroyed and the houses either burnt or blown up.

On the 20th, at Waterval, the two columns again divided, Plumer's force going towards Hantam's Kraal, Paget's to Wagon Drift, the former a couple of days later joining the latter at the Drift. Thousands of sheep and cattle were captured here and sent towards Pretoria. On the 21st the force moved to Sybrand's Kraal, a few miles further on, remaining in that neighbourhood until October 5. On September 24 I was taken into hospital, Pretoria, Lieut. Irving taking temporary command of the Battery. The Battery strength at this time numbered 124 of all ranks, the remaining 50 being in hospital in various parts of the country. It was about this time that General Erasmus made certain overtures to General Paget looking to the surrender of the former's Commando. The negotiations amounted to very little, although small bodies of the enemy surrendered from time to time. A couple of day's sports took place here, being participated in by representatives of all the corps.

Captain Panet, who had been in the hospital owing to an injury since September 19, rejoined the Battery on September 30, and took over the command. On October 5 a move was made towards Pretoria by a circuitous route, arriving at Derdepoort, 7 miles from Pretoria, on the 12th. We were here but two or three miles from the camp of the 1st

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Canadian Contingent, and no time was lost in exchanging visits. The day following our arrival, General Plumer's force, "C" Battery excepted, left for Daspoort with a view to their disbandment, and it was with sincere and genuine regret that "C" Battery saw them go.

We were soon after attached to Colonel Hickman's force, and in a short time were again speeding towards Pienaar's River. General Plumer almost immediately came out with another force, consisting of B.S.A. Police and Australians, and, much to our satisfaction, we were again attached to his command.

On the 22nd the Pay Sergeant of the Battery was sent to Pretoria, en route to Cape Town, being required there in connection with the pay lists. This was the first indication of the Canadians being destined for home at an early date.

On the afternoon of October 22, the Battery, with Plumer's force, left Pienaar's River, treking once more over the route leading to Makapan's Stadt. The Battery moved as light as possible, leaving behind three ammunition wagons, 23 horses and 28 N.C. Officers and men. The rainy season commenced in earnest now, the march to Makapan's Stadt being done in a pouring rain accompanied by a terrific thunderstorm. We bivouacked at the Stadt that night, in total darkness but for the lightning, by the aid of which alone we were enabled to picket our horses, the lightning on this occasion being the most vivid and wonderful any of us had ever witnessed. It was our misfortune to have much wet weather for the remainder of our time in the field. On this night every one was soaked to the skin, and there being no fires, turned in without supper, sleep being an impossibility.

The following day our left section was attached to Colonel Hickman's force in a move towards Jericho, the remainder of Plumer's force going to Finch Zyn Drift. The latter force captured a number of Boers and 2,000 head of cattle on the way. We learned during the day that Hickman's force also had captured a small Boer laager, wagons and 1,500 head of cattle, their force bivouacking at De Wet's Drift for the night.

On the 24th Plumer's force moved South towards Jericho and shortly heard heavy firing, soon coming up to where the left section was in action and just about to cease fire, they having fired 42 rounds from this position. With these few rounds they had succeeded in silencing the Boer guns, which were reported to consist of two 15 prs. and one 7 pr. M.L., the enemy managing to clear off with them. The combined force remained at Jericho all day of the 25th. The following day the Centre Section, with part of the force was sent to Syn Kop, a distance of five miles. A part of Paget's column from Pienaar's River joined us to-day, bringing with them our three ammunition wagons and 33 remounts. On the 27th the remainder of the force moved to Syn Kop. On the 28th the remainder of Paget's column came up with us, accompanied by the 7th R.F.A. This Battery had been in many of the big fights, with the loss only of a single man. They had 14 D.S.M.s and 1 V.C. to their credit in the war, the latter being the first one granted during the present war in South Africa.

The whole force now began to work towards Rustenburg, arriving there on the night of the 29th, where we remained the following day. The place was being held by two battalions of infantry, and one section of the R. F. A., Colonel Campbell being in command. Fort Canada was found intact.

On October 31 the force left for Mahato Pass, near which place, at Twee River, the enemy was found in some strength the following day, our centre section being in action from 11.30 a.m. until the evening. They fired about 100 rounds, and were constantly sniped at. The ranges varied from 1,600 to 2,700 yards. The country was somewhat difficult for artillery operations. The loss to our side this day was two Yeomanry killed and five wounded. At the close of the day it was found that an immense swarm of wasps had taken possession of the officers' wagon, and it took two and a half hours, and a good many stings, to get back the wagon. On this date a communication was received from the Adjutant General, Pretoria, asking for the date of expiration of "C" Battery's period of service.

The rain, which had been falling almost day and night of late, was making things very miserable. It had rained all day and night of November 1, and continued to do so for another 24 hours, the men having no means of drying themselves.

We moved south early on the morning of the 2nd, and during the day the two 5-inch guns got badly stuck in a drift, and were left there throughout the night through sheer inability to get them out. It took between fifty and sixty oxen the next day to move them. The roads were simply awful, and dead oxen were lying about everywhere. We reached Ratsegai on the evening of the 2nd, having made but 7 miles. The enemy were met in the vicinity the next day, the cow guns, (5-inch) doing some fine practice at long range, evidently finding the enemy with every shell. The Right Section was detailed for special duty this day, returning to our bivouac late in the evening. On Sunday, the 4th, all three sections were busy in different positions, occasionally firing a few rounds. This kind of work continued for a few days, the force making slow progress, and meeting the enemy nearly every day, our sections occasionally coming into action when required.

Another action of considerable importance took place on the 8th. The Boers had prepared a cunning ambushade for us at Simoonfontein settlement, and, all unknown to us, were waiting until the force, as they expected, would cross the drift. We did not cross, however, our horses being watered at the drift only, but within easy range of the Boers who withheld their fire. As we were moving away the enemy were, much to their disappointment, compelled to take us in the rear. This came as a great surprise to us, but turning and opening with our guns, pom-poms and rifles, we sent them off somewhat hurriedly, the battery taking part in this work. We no doubt escaped serious loss by not attempting to cross the drift.

We now began our return trek towards Pretoria, via Rustenburg, reaching the latter place at noon on the 10th. We found Broadwood's column here.

The effective force of the battery was now reduced to 115, all ranks, and a few days later to 102. We left Rustenburg on the 12th, and passing Sterkstroom were surprised at the great numbers of dead oxen lost there by Broadwood's column in bringing in their convoy.

We reached Wonderboom, a few miles from Pretoria, on the 20th. We had already received word from Lieut.-Col. Drury that we were to sail for home on December 1. It was at first intended that we should continue in the field until the end of November, but the strength of the battery in men and horses being so much reduced, it was at length decided that our campaign services should end here. Before parting from the battery General Paget addressed the officers and men on parade, thanking them in complimentary terms for the excellent work they had done in the field, both under his own command and that of General Plumer, concluding with the remark that they could go home with the assurance of their being second to no other body of troops in the world. Generals Paget and Plumer were then heartily cheered by the battery. General Plumer was much affected and unable to make a speech, merely saying, "good-bye, men," and shaking hands with the officers. Those who had served with him for the last eight months felt that they were parting with one in whose ability they had extraordinary confidence, and under whose command they would gladly serve again did opportunity offer.

We then turned over the best of our horses to the pom-pom section of the 7th Battery, R.F.A., and on November 21, marched into Pretoria. "D" Battery came in later. Both batteries left for Cape Town on December 3, after much delay and annoyance, owing to the wash-out of a railway bridge at Irene a few miles from Pretoria. We stopped a day at Worcester, Cape Colony, the Dutch colonists there at the time creating more or less cause for apprehension. Here we met "E" Battery. We arrived at Maitland camp on the 12th, going under canvas for the night.

The batteries and the C. M. Rifles arrived at Cape Town on 13th and almost immediately went on board the "Roslin Castle." Prior to this, however, a parade was held on the market square, Cape Town, under command of Lieut. Colonel Drury, the men being addressed by General Forestier Walker and the Mayor of Cape Town. The former, among other things, said, that, "he had had the duty of directing and starting "C" Battery, R.C.F.A., on the way to Mafeking, via Beira, and had been specially interested in their getting there in time, which, thanks to their wonderful march, they were enabled to do. He felt they must have endured considerable hardships during

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

that march and that the Empire owed them a debt of gratitude for that and the valuable assistance rendered by them at the relief of Mafeking."

The Mayor of Cape Town said: The over-sea Colonials had given Cape Colony their assistance at a time when most needed and most appreciated, when the Colony was being invaded. The Canadians showed what stuff they were made of at Paardeberg, the Australians at Elands River and the Canadian Artillery at Mafeking. If the time ever comes when Canada or Australia are in similar straits they may depend upon assistance from Cape Colony. The Colony intended to present a worthy souvenir of appreciation to each Canadian and Australian who served in South Africa, a souvenir that could be handed down with pride in their respective families for generations."

At the last moment an order was received for the guns and equipment of "C" Battery to be left behind. On the battery reaching Cape Town I took over the command of it from Captain Panet, who had been in command since September 30. Lieut. W. B. King had received a commission in the South African Constabulary; and 17 N.C. Officers and men had received their discharges to join Major Howard's Canadian Scouts and Colt Battery, a corps made up entirely of Canadians who remained behind to see further service in South Africa. The conditions were that each man should be made a sergeant and receive pay at colonial rates. Nine N.C. Officers and men were at time of sailing left in hospital in South Africa, the number of those returning to Canada by the "Roslin Castle" being, officers, 4; N.C. officers and men, 122.

The "Roslin Castle" left Table Bay at 4.30 p.m. on December 13. Our voyage was very pleasant most of the way home, although somewhat rough when within a few days of Halifax. We reached Halifax the evening of January 8.

We disembarked on the morning of the 9th, and after a march through the principal streets of Halifax were banquetted at the drill hall. The men had already received their discharges, and left for their homes in the evening.

Necessarily, the number of those who returned at once to Kingston was small, being some thirty or forty, but they were well received by the citizens, who tendered them a sumptuous banquet a few days later.

I have now but to add a brief summary of a few points that seem to demand notice. One very satisfactory thing is worthy of record here, i.e., that although the Battery was in action over twenty days during the campaign not a man was lost. The same thing may be said in the matter of sickness on the field, although between sixty and seventy were admitted into hospital suffering principally from fever and dysentery no deaths occurred. The casualties among the horses were considerable, about one half of the total number dying during the campaign.

In closing this report, I desire to draw particular attention to the valuable assistance at all times received from my officers without exception. In the general work of the Battery, the services of Captain Panet were invaluable; while the different sections under Lieuts. Irving, King and Leslie, respectively, were at all times in a high state of efficiency. I also desire to bring to your notice the untiring efforts of Sergt. Major W. G. Gimblett, whose valuable assistance to me in matters of discipline, &c., tended much to the efficiency of the Battery. Of the other N.C. Officers, and the men themselves, I feel I cannot sufficiently express my deep sense of appreciation of their good work throughout the campaign. Under all circumstances they did their duty cheerfully and well; and I may say that much credit is due the Nos. 1 of subdivisions for their unflagging attention to the details connected with their subdivisions.

In conclusion, I have no hesitancy in saying that "C" Battery did their utmost to uphold the honour of Canada, and were I again called upon to command another Battery for active service, it would be my earnest desire to secure as good officers and as good N.C. Officers and men as formed "C" Special Service Battery, Royal Canadian Field Artillery.

I have the honour to be, sir,
Your obedient servant,

J. A. G. HUDON, Lieut.-Col.,
Late Com. "C" S. S. Battery, R.C.F.A.

APPENDIX E 2.

From O. C. "D" Battery, R.C.F.A., to O. C. Brigade Division, R.C.F.A.

OTTAWA, March 9, 1901.

SIR,—I have the honour to report in accordance with your orders of February 1, 1901, as follows in regard to mobilization and service of "D" Battery, R.C.A., in South Africa :—

In accordance with the order dated December 27, 1899, the mobilization of "D" Battery, R.C.A., was commenced at Ottawa under my direction. The guns of the 2nd Battery, C.A., were taken over, and the Battery was brought up to a war strength in equipment by requisitions on the 2nd and 3rd Batteries, C.A., and the Militia Department Stores. The horses were purchased in Port Hope, London, Guelph and Ottawa, the larger proportion being obtained at the latter point. The Battery was inspected on January 10, by Major General Hutton, G.O.C., and entrained for Halifax on the morning of the 15th. The men were accommodated in colonist sleepers and the horses in palace horse cars, and, though the weather was extremely cold, a very comfortable journey was made to the point of embarkation, which was reached on January 17. The men were quartered in the armoury, and the horses stabled at the exhibition buildings. The embarkation of the guns on board the troopship *Laurentian* was immediately commenced under the direction of Lt. McCrea. "E" Battery, R.C.A., arrived at Halifax on the morning of the 19th, and its guns were also embarked. The horses of both batteries were embarked on Friday, the 19th, with the exception of forty-six horses that were found to be suffering from distemper. The men of both Batteries marched from the armoury, after being inspected by the Lt. Governor of Nova Scotia, Gen. Lord William Seymour, commanding the British troops at Halifax, and Major General Hutton. They arrived at the Navy yards at noon, and embarked on the *Laurentian*, which pulled out into the stream. Owing to a dense fog, the vessel was obliged to lay to until the following morning at 8.30, when the voyage to Cape Town commenced.

The troops on board were under my command as senior officer. During the first three days out a heavy storm prevailed, which knocked the horses about a great deal, and on the third day out two of them died. A number became afflicted with congestion of the lungs and pneumonia, and demanded a great deal of care. After the storm abated the regular routine for troops on board ship was inaugurated. Two guns were brought on deck for drill purposes, and during the voyage gun drill was held twice a day, and lectures were given by the officers on ammunition, materiel and gunnery. There were also physical exercise drills to improve the physique of the men. On January 31, Cape Verde was reached and, accompanied by Major Ogilvie and the Adjutant of the Brigade Division, I visited Her Majesty's ship *Cambrian* and reported our arrival to Capt. McAlpine. I also sent a cable to the C. S. O., Ottawa, reporting our arrival and the fact that sixteen horses had died during the voyage to that point. The *Laurentian* sailed the same day for Cape Town. After reaching the tropics, the health of the horses gradually improved. Clipping machines were put to work, and as many horses as possible were clipped. The horses were so crowded, especially on the lower deck, that it told very greatly against their health, and made it difficult for the men to get round to work among them. During the remainder of the voyage to Cape Town, the same routine on board ship was pursued as in the early part of the voyage. An officers' signalling class was established, and its members became very proficient in sending and receiving messages with flags. I desire to specially refer to this, as the Battery found it of invaluable service later on, and I would strongly recommend that a small corps of signallers should be instructed in connection with every Battery. The weather continued calm throughout the remainder of the voyage, and Cape Town was reached about 11 p.m. of February 16. The total number of horses lost during the voyage was twenty-six, principally as the result of colds contracted previous to embarkation.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

ARRIVAL AT CAPE TOWN.

The *Laurentian* was docked at noon February 17, and the unloading of guns and stores was immediately commenced. The guns and wagons being removed to the dock and put together. On arrival at Cape Town, I was met by Lt.-Col. C. W. Drury, to whom I handed over the command of the brigade division, and the documents entrusted to me for him. On Sunday, February 18, "D" Battery, horses and harness were disembarked. The Battery was hooked in and marched to Green Point Common, where it went into camp at 5 p.m. On Monday, February 19, stores were distributed and equipment completed, with exception of shortages in canteens, waterbottles and valises, caused by requisitions in Halifax not being filled. On the following day, the Canadian artillery paraded in drill order and marched through the city, receiving a very cordial reception from large crowds of people on the streets who had turned out to see the parade.

From February 21 to March 3, marching order parades were held every day under the command of the O. C. Brigade Division. The horses improved rapidly in health, and in less than a week were in first class condition. The gunners were daily exercised in standing gun drill, and the drivers in driving drill.

At noon on Sunday, March 4, orders were received for four guns of "D" Battery to entrain for Victoria Road. The right and centre sections left Green Point Camp at 1.20 and entrained at 3 p.m., leaving Cape Town at 4.45. Officers, Major Hurdman Capt. Eaton, Lts. Van Tuyl and McCrea. Victoria Road, 420 miles north of Cape Town, was reached at 2.20 a.m., March 6, and the guns detrained at 5.30 a.m. On the following day we marched to Victoria West, escorted by a squadron of the New Zealand Mounted Rifles. The force went into camp at Victoria West and was reinforced on the following day by two squadrons of Imperial Yeomanry. On Saturday, March 10, the left section of "D" Battery, which had been left at Cape Town under Lt. Morrison, rejoined the Battery, accompanied by one squadron of the Canadian Mounted Rifles. On the following day, a squadron of West Australian Mounted Infantry, and another squadron of Canadian Mounted Rifles joined the force, which was mobilizing for an advance into the Karoo district, under the command of Col. Sir Charles Parsons.

THE KAROO MARCH.

On Tuesday, March 13, the force commenced its march into the Karoo District, a very barren country resembling the Soudan. Supplies of every sort, including forage for the horses, had to be carried with the column. There was very little water, and what there was, was contained in small muddy and brackish pools. Carnarvon was reached at 10.45 a.m. on March 17, after a very severe series of marches, including a night march, on which occasion the horses were under harness from 8 a.m. until 2 a.m. the following morning. The Mounted Infantry scouted the country to the front and flanks, but the rebels, who were reported to be in force throughout the district, retired in front of us without offering any resistance. At Carnarvon, a flying column, consisting of the right section of 'D' Battery, under Lt. McCrea, escorted by a squadron each of the Canadian Mounted Rifles, New Zealanders and West Australians, was sent on ahead towards Kenhardt. This force left at 5.45 p.m., March 19, and during the next few weeks had an extremely arduous experience. It pushed on as rapidly as possible, but from March 22 to March 27, were detained by extremely heavy rains south of Oliphant's river. On the latter date, the rains having ceased, the column was enabled to cross with great difficulty, the stream with its approaches being 1,500 yards wide. On March 31, after heavy marching, during which several artillery horses played out, the column arrived at Kenhardt, where it was joined by Col. Sir Chas. Parsons, and the British flag was hoisted, the rebels having retired from the town without offering resistance. The force remained there until April 8, when it commenced its return march to Victoria Road, which was reached on April 17. The march was extremely trying, there being very little forage for the horses, five of which died or had to be shot. On arrival at Victoria Road they were in very poor condition, having been half starved and most of them without shoes.

THE MAIN BODY IN THE KAROO.

Lt. Col. Drury, with "E" Battery, joined the force at Carnarvon on March 17th, having pushed on after it from Victoria Road. On March 21st, the main body, under Lt. Col. Drury, marched from Carnarvon towards Kenhardt, making twenty-four miles the first day and seventeen miles the second. On March 23rd, the column was overtaken at Van Wyks Vlei by a heavy rain storm, which continued for three days and prevented any movement during that time. The storm also seriously interfered with the line of communication, and supplies, including forage, were seriously depleted. On the 27th the column marched to Oliphant's river, but found it impassable. After remaining there three days waiting for the water to go down, supplies became so short that it was necessary to retire towards Carnarvon. Kenhardt, the objective point of the expedition, having been occupied by the flying column, Sir Charles Parsons directed the main body to make its way out to De Aar. On April 1st, while in camp at Van Wyks Vlei, Driver R. Bradley, of "D" Battery, got into a hole while watering his horse at the dam, and being unable to swim was rescued with much difficulty. He was insensible when brought out, but was resuscitated within half an hour. His lungs, however, had become so clogged with sand and mud during his immersion that he died the same night. Driver Hal. Walters, of "D" Battery, and Pte. T. Firne, of the West Australians, exhibited much bravery in connection with the rescue of Bradley. The force marched for Carnarvon on April 4th, and reached there on the 7th. Very small supplies of forage could be obtained there, and the column moved on next day towards De Aar, which was reached on Saturday, April 14. During the greater portion of this march in the desert, the only forage obtainable for the horses was wheat and chaff, and very little of that, the result being that the horses nearly starved. A number gave out and had to be shot, and the greater portion were so reduced in strength that they could barely carry their harness when De Aar was reached.

AT DE AAR.

On arrival at De Aar, "D" Battery received six remounts, which had come out from Halifax on the *Milwaukee*. The two sections of "D" Battery remained at De Aar until April 29, when the centre section, under Lt. Van Tuyl, proceeded by route march to Orange river, a distance of seventy miles, which was reached on May 1. The three sections remained on the line of communication duty at Victoria Road, De Aar and Orange river, until the middle of June, when the Battery was once more mobilized at Bloemfontein on June 23. While at De Aar, Gunner Picot, of the left section, died of enteric fever, on May 1.

IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE.

On June 23, the left section under Lt. Morrison, was ordered to Edenburg, under the command of Gen. Knox. The section entrenched itself on a hill overlooking the town and remained there until July 10. During that time the guns marched out on several occasions escorted by the Northumberland and Norfolk Companies of Mounted Infantry. The section also engaged in field practice on two occasions under the personal direction of Gen. Knox.

On July 2, the right and centre sections, under my command, were ordered to move to Sanna's Post, but the orders were cancelled owing to the heavy rains making the roads impassable. Moved out on the morning of July 6, after being inspected by Gen. Kelly-Kenny, who complimented the Battery on its smart appearance. Arrived at Sanna's Post on the 7th, and remained in garrison there until the 10th, when we were ordered back to Bloemfontein. While at Bloemfontein the Battery obtained 25 remounts from the British Government, and turned in 11 of our own Canadian horses, which had been very much run down ever since the Karoo march. On July 11th, the whole Battery entrained for Pretoria having been joined by the left section from Edenburg. Sur-Major Worthington and Capt. Eaton, the latter having been on staff service, rejoined the battery here.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

AT PRETORIA.

On the 13th the Battery arrived at Pretoria and marched out again the same evening to Fort Wonderboom. As the Battery arrived the fort was engaged in shelling a force of Boers to the north towards Pyramid Kopje. On the following day the Battery was attached to Gen. Ian Hamilton's division, which marched from Fort Wonderboom on Monday morning, July 16.

WITH HAMILTON'S DIVISION.

On July 16. Hamilton's division advanced to Waterval, without coming in touch with the enemy, though some shells dropped near us after the force had gone into bivouac. On the following day the right section was detached to the rear guard, the left and centre being with the main body. Four miles from Haman's Kraal our scouts were attacked by the enemy in a wooded bluff; casualties, one killed and one wounded; two horses killed. I was ordered into action at 2,000 yards, but could not open fire owing to not being able to see our advance line in the brush. The division bivouacked that night at Haman's Kraal, and on the following day returned to Walman's Drift mission station, where we came in touch with Gen. Mahon's column. On the three following days the column moved eastward skirmishing with the enemy. On July 21 the centre section was attached to the rear guard at Dewagen Drift. At 7.30 a.m., after the main body had left camp, the enemy, who had evidently during the night moved some guns up into the kopje facing our camp, opened fire on our transport with their 6-inch guns. The centre section of my battery under Lieut. Van Tuyl immediately came into action and was the first to open fire on the enemy, followed by two guns each of the Elswick Battery, 5-inch, 6-inch and pom-poms, which very soon silenced the Boer guns. About four miles out from camp the right and left sections under my command were fired on by large Boer guns, the first shell falling about 150 yards short on our left flank. I immediately came into action and as I did so another shell burst about 100 yards over, showing that the enemy had got the range and that we were bracketed. The horses and limbers got under cover 300 yards to the rear, which greatly lessened the target for the enemy, whose guns were in a concealed position and could not be located with any degree of accuracy. Later on a section of Elswick Battery, together with two 5-inch and two 6 inch guns and a section of pom-poms, came up prolonging our flank to the left. The action lasted about half an hour during which my battery expended 68 shrapnel. In the rear guard action Lt. Van Tuyl expended 28 rounds, making a total of 96. The officers besides myself engaged in the actions were Capt. Eaton, Lts. Van Tuyl, McCrea and Morrison and Surg.-Major A. N. Worthington. I cannot speak too highly of the officers and men under my command; they did their work excellently under very trying circumstances, as during the action shells were falling around my battery. I have seen them a great deal more excited at Deseronto. During the day three Boer ambulances were captured and a number of prisoners. Montmorency's scouts informed us later that they found nine new graves on the kopje where we had been shelling. Our only casualties were two transport drivers, and about ten mules, killed. On July 22, the division was joined by Col. Pilcher with Mounted Infantry and "M" Battery R.H.A. The Boers did considerable shelling during the day with their long range guns, but retired on our advance. The division rested at Rustfontein on the 23rd, and during the afternoon the enemy began shelling the camp. The right section of "D" Battery under Lt. McCrea, was ordered out and proceeded to a kopje about two miles distant, where they engaged the enemy with considerable effect, as a number of Boers were seen to fall. The enemy's guns returned the fire but were soon silenced. On the following day the Division marched to Bronkhorst's Spruit where we went into camp.

WITH FIELD MARSHAL LORD ROBERTS.

At Bronkhorst's Spruit, General Hamilton's Division joined the main army, under Lord Roberts, and we marched, on July 25, for Balmoral, arriving there about 4 p.m.

The day was extremely cold for that climate, and the men and horses suffered a good deal, especially late in the afternoon, when a heavy rain storm came on which lasted all night. The transport got stuck in a spruit, and men and horses had nothing to eat until the next day about 8 o'clock. It was a very trying night on the army; an officer of the Argyle and Sutherland Highlanders and nine men, belonging to the different corps, died of cold and exposure; also, 250 horses, mules and trek oxen. Neither officers nor men of the Battery had blankets, so that they suffered very severely, but none of them reported sick on the following day. The Boers having retired, and General French having occupied Middelburg, General Lord Roberts returned to Pretoria, and the troops were distributed along the railway, pending its repair, to enable the army on its next advance, to bring up supplies towards Belfast. The right and left sections were stationed at Pienaar's Poort, and the centre section at Eerste Fabricken, with the Royal Fusiliers and the Connaught Rangers. Two guns were dragged up on a high kopje at Pienaar's Poort where one section went on outpost alternately, during our stay there.

On August 15, I proceeded towards Wilger river with the left section and three companies of the Royal Fusiliers, arriving there on August 17. We entrenched ourselves, and remained there until August 26. During that time the enemy were around us in force and continually attacked the small mounted patrols which were sent out from the stations. On August 23, they pursued our mounted infantry to within rifle range and sniped into the camp. On Aug. 26, "D" Battery mobilized at Bronkhorst's Spruit and entrained for Belfast.

BATTLE OF BELFAST.

The three sections of the battery proceeded to Belfast in special trains, the right section arriving early on the morning of the 27th, and the other two sections later in the day; the last and most severe of the four days' fighting at that place was in progress. General Buller, from Natal, had struck the Boers' left flank near Bergendal, the commander-in-chief's main body was holding them in front at Belfast, and General French's cavalry, supported by General Pole-Carew's division, was making a turning movement towards the north. The Boers held the Bergendal kopje with great tenacity, and on the afternoon of the 27th that position was subjected to one of the heaviest cannonades of the whole war. The enemy had also a long Tom mounted on a truck, which they ran up the railway and fired at intervals. Two of these shells fell within thirty yards of "D" battery guns, which had been placed opposite the railway cutting to cover that point. Late in the afternoon the key to the position was carried, and the Boers suffered heavy loss during their retirement. Next day was misty and when the mists cleared away it was found that the enemy had retired all along the line. The line held by the British on the last day of the fight is said to have extended 30 miles from the extreme right of Gen. Buller's army to Gen. French's advance on the north. That evening the Commander-in-Chief rode over to my battery with his staff and congratulated us in getting up, he having very kindly promised that we should be with him on the advance on Lydenburg.

On August 30, "D" Battery was inspected by Lord Roberts, who expressed himself very much pleased with its appearance. He asked me to present my officers to him, and enquired of each the length of service and the corps he had belonged to in Canada.

THE LYDENBURG CAMPAIGN.

"D" Battery was again attached to Gen. Hamilton's division, which was ordered to move towards Lydenburg on September 3. I received orders to detach one section of my battery at Belfast for service with the mounted corps under Gen. Hutton. The left section under Lt. Morrison was detailed. On the morning of the 3rd, the right and centre sections under my command proceeded towards Lydenburg with Hamilton's division. The district is very rough, with high mountains, resembling, as Lord Roberts expressed it, the Himalayas near Simla. In the afternoon, near Schwartz Kopje, the enemy opened on us with a 4.5 Howitzer, when we came into action and drove them off.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

On the following day they again annoyed us with long range artillery fire, and were driven off by our artillery and mounted infantry. On the 5th, "D" Battery was detailed to act as horse artillery with the 18th Hussars. The country was extremely difficult with steep hills and deep valleys which rendered it very hard for mounted troops and especially for the artillery. The enemy kept up an incessant sniping. On the 6th we had to put ten horses on each gun to take them up some of the steep kopjes, which rose over five hundred feet above the road. The Boers continually sniped us and we went into action several times to shell them out of their positions. When within about a mile of the town we were opened on by the Boers' long Toms. They let us get well within their range before firing on us, and as we had no guns with us that could reach their position, Gen. Brocklehurst ordered us to retire out of range. We did so, and camped for the night some distance in advance of the division, having marched some 24 miles over very mountainous country. On September 7, my battery advanced with the 19th Hussars on the left flank, while a section of "A" Battery, R.H.A., and the 18th Hussars took the right. There was considerable sniping, and we were in action for some time shelling the Boers out of kopjes near the town of Lydenburg. At 1 p.m. we were relieved by Gen. Buller's advance guard and rejoined Gen. Hamilton's division. At 2.30 p.m. that afternoon the Boers opened on us from the top of a hill 1,500 feet above us, where they had five long range guns in position and from that until dark we were continually under shell fire. The infantry and transport moved back out of range, but as the artillery got no orders to do so we remained where we were, merely sending our horses back under cover. The shell fire was at times very heavy in our vicinity and during the afternoon 18 shells burst within our lines. The fact that their time shells burst very high probably accounted for our escaping without any casualties, though some of the infantry corps suffered severely.

On the morning of September 8, we moved out to attack the Boer position, Gen. Hamilton's division on the right flank and Gen. Buller's army on the left. As we moved out the Boer position was enveloped in clouds of mist thus enabling us to get comparatively close before it cleared away, when they immediately commenced shelling us. The Boer guns continued to fire while the infantry advanced about three miles, our long range guns replying with lyddite, and about 10 o'clock it was evident the enemy had had enough and were arranging to withdraw their big guns. About 10.30 the field artillery advanced and converged from the right and left centre on the main hill up which they climbed. When about half way the enemy opened on us with their pom-poms but these were very quickly driven off. Our guns advanced some 400 yards further and commenced shelling the crest of the hill to prepare it for the advance of our infantry, which soon moved forward and by 3 p.m. had occupied the crest of the hill, and the position was ours. Shortly after this a heavy cloud of mist settled down and prevented our further advance. Gen. Buller's army occupied the position, and Gen. Hamilton's division having completed its duty in turning the Boer flank, returned to camp. I cannot but again emphasize the fact that throughout the constant exposure to fire, especially the heavy shell fire on the 7th and 8th, both officers and men showed the greatest spirit under very trying circumstances. The officers beside myself who were in the engagements terminating with Paardeplaats, were Capt. Eaton, Lieut. Van Tuyl, Lieut. McCrea and Surg.-Major Worthington.

On the following day the battery moved south, arriving at Helvetia on the 11th, and proceeded east along the Delagoa Bay line. The right section, under Lieutenant McCrea, was detailed for duty at Machadodorp and proceeded there. On September 17, I received orders to take command of the column consisting of a section of "D" Battery, a section of the Elswick Battery, 125 men of the Royal Scots, and 10 Mounted Infantry, with an ammunition column and transport, to proceed across country from Kaapsche Hoope to Nelspruit Station. On the way over we captured six prisoners with their horses and 106 head of cattle. Handed the prisoners over to General Stephenson. On the 19th the centre section was detailed for duty at Crocodile Poort.

The right section under, Lieutenant McCrea, arrived at Machadodorp on the 21st, and remained there until the battery was again mobilized at Pretoria to return home. On September 27th, Lieutenant McCrea was ordered out with 100 Mounted Infantry and

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

came into action against the Boers at Zevenfontein, about 8 miles from Machadodorp. On October 2 the section again proceeded from Machadodorp and marched 15 miles to Grobler's Farm. The Boers sniped a good deal, but offered no serious resistance. One gun, with three companies of Irish Fusiliers, were left at Zevenfontein. On the following day the force continued its march in a southerly direction, and burned several farm houses from which the Boers had been sniping. On October 8 the right section also took part in the expedition of mounted troops to Eland's Kop, and came into action against the Boers who were firing on the advance guard from some rocky ground. The enemy were driven off with some loss.

THE LEFT SECTION AT BELFAST.

The left section of "D" Battery, under Lieutenant Morrison, was attached to General Hutton's brigade on September 3. On the following day the enemy attacked Noitgedacht and the section was ordered to reinforce that point, but the order was subsequently countermanded as the enemy had been repulsed. During the month of September the section remained in camp covering Belfast station. The horses had a good rest and picked up rapidly in condition. Lieutenant Morrison also succeeded in commandeering enough horses to mount the gunners of one detachment. The two detachments of the section were drilled alternately as horse artillery, and acquired considerable proficiency in the new drill. On October 6th, the Royal Canadian Dragoons, with one Colt gun, one Maxim and Lt. Morrison's horse artillery detachment went out on reconnaissance to the north of Belfast, and penetrated through some difficult country to the Steilpoort Valley, nine miles north. The Boers put up a spirited resistance and when the force was retiring in the afternoon, the enemy attacked vigorously and nearly succeeded in getting Howard's Colt gun detachment. There was a spirited rear guard action all the way back to the outposts. The Dragoons had two men wounded and six horses killed. On October 11th proceeded on reconnaissance south-west of Belfast with the Royal Canadian Dragoons and Colt gun detachment. Saw some Boers who fired on us as we were retiring. On October 28, the left section was transferred to the command of Gen. Smith-Dorrien, whose division was mobilizing at Belfast.

On the evening of November 1st, the section marched out with the flying column under Col. Spens, to co-operate with another column under Gen. Smith-Dorrien, southward from Belfast. The weather was very cold with rain and sleet falling. The column made a night march until some time after midnight, when it halted and the troops stood to their horses, until daybreak. It was a very trying night on all concerned, the men being wet to the skin and a driving cold wind causing them to suffer very keenly. At daylight the column moved towards Witkloof, the Royal Canadian Dragoons and left section "D" Battery forming the advance guard. The Boers appeared in force and attacked us from the right flank, but were forced to withdraw. Early in the day the General's column became heavily engaged to the eastward and about ten a.m. Col. Spens' column struck the enemy in a strong position. The Dragoons' advance was driven in with a loss of one man wounded and captured, and their retirement was covered by the guns of the left section, which shelled the enemy's position at 3,500 yards. Meanwhile Gen. Smith-Dorrien's column had had a sharp engagement, and as the weather was extremely cold, wet and rather misty, causing much suffering to the troops and horses, the General decided to return to Belfast and await more favourable conditions. As usual, the Boers pressed the column on its retirement and the Fifth Lancers and three companies of the Gordons, who were on rear guard, suffered considerably, the latter losing two men killed and ten wounded. Their loss would probably have been greater but for the timely reinforcement afforded by a troop of the R.C.D.'s under Lt. King, and the Canadian Colt gun. The force reached Belfast about three o'clock in the afternoon in a very exhausted condition, having marched 35 miles in the cold and wet since the previous evening with very little to eat. In addition to the losses already mentioned, Lt. Chalmers, of the C.M.R., who was acting in advance of the General's column, was killed and Major Sanders, wounded.

On November 6, a column moved out from Belfast at 3 a.m. under the command of Gen. Smith-Dorrien. It consisted of the Royal Canadian Dragoons, with Colt gun,

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

the Canadian Mounted Rifles, Fifth Lancers, two guns "D" Battery, four guns 84th battery, 2 5-in. guns, 4 pom poms, Shropshire and Suffolk regiments of infantry, Bearer Company, &c., with three days rations and forage. About 9 a.m., the Boers appeared on the ridges in isolated groups. The left section "D" Battery and Royal Canadian Dragoons with two pom poms formed the advance guard. The guns shelled the enemy at ranges varying from 4,000 to 5,000 yards during the morning and made good practice, driving the Boers steadily from ridge to ridge till noon. One of our shells burst close to the spot where Gen. Prinsloo and Commandant Fourie were standing, killing both of them, as was subsequently learned. After a short halt, about noon, the Boers were seen in some force on our left in the direction of the Kumati river. An advance was ordered and suddenly a hot rifle fire opened on the advance from a low rocky kopje, which proved to be the Boers' stronghold. The left section went into action at 1,700 yards and came into time shrapnel at 1,650. The guns were worked with great rapidity and the men were very steady. The Colt gun was in action 300 yards to the left, and the Shropshires assisted the gunners by standing up and firing three volleys to draw off the enemy's fire. When the guns got the range and commenced to explode time shrapnel along the edge of the kopje, the Boer fire slackened perceptibly, and a section of the 84th Battery came into action some distance to our left rear, when the fire nearly died out, but was subsequently renewed as soon as the artillery fire slackened. The Shropshire Regiment was ordered forward to attack the position, but were repulsed with a loss of six killed and 20 wounded. No. 273 Driver W. R. Hare, of the left section, was severely wounded in the right shoulder.

Gen. Smith-Dorrien ordered a flank movement to turn the position and Col. Lessard with the Royal Canadian Dragoons, section "D" Battery, section pom-poms and some infantry were ordered to the right, making a wide detour to threaten the Boer retreat from their stronghold by the Carolina road. On seeing their rear threatened the Boers began to evacuate the position, and were shelled with considerable accuracy by the "D" battery guns at 5,000 and 5,500 yards as they retired up the road. That night the force bivouacked at the position evacuated by the Boers.

REAR GUARD ACTION AT LILLEFONTEIN.

At seven o'clock on the morning of November 7th, the column began its return march to Belfast. The Royal Canadian Dragoons, with a Colt gun and left section "D" Battery, the whole under Col. Lessard, formed the rear guard. As soon as the enemy discerned the object of the movement they became very active. Col. Lessard with 95 Dragoons and the two guns, had to hold a plateau about two miles long and one and a half miles wide, while the transport and infantry supports reached the next ridge. The column of transport was about five miles long, and the main body of the troops moved out in front of it, so that the rear guard was isolated, with the exception of 60 C.M.R. and two guns of the 84th, under Col. Evans, who were protecting the right flank of the convoy about three miles back. It took the transport fully three hours to move out. Early in the day 300 Boers galloped down the Carolina road and attempted to regain their stronghold, which was on our right flank, commanding the road to Belfast. The guns of the rear guard shelled them as they passed at extreme range but they soon passed from the line of fire behind an intervening kopje. Luckily Col. Evans, acting on his own initiative, anticipated their move by seizing the stronghold and repulsed the enemy. Very soon the enemy commenced to press the rear guard and it was evident they were in force. The "D" Battery guns were kept busy moving from one point to another breaking up small bands as they appeared on the ridges. The transport and infantry supports had almost passed over the ridge when the enemy began to press our left rear very heavily. This point was held by Lt. Cockburn, with two troops of the R.C.D. Col. Lessard sent Lt. Morrison with one gun to his assistance. When the gun opened fire the Boers, who were advancing in force, dismounted, but still came on running from cover to cover and the gunners were soon exposed to a sharp rifle fire. At this juncture the enemy appeared in force for some distance on the left rear, right rear and rear of the force, threatening to cut it off. Col. Lessard ordered the guns to retire as quickly as

possible. Lt. Morrison limbered up No. 5 gun and galloped towards the ridge under a heavy rifle fire. At the same time an orderly was sent to accelerate the retirement of the other gun which was already well on its way towards the ridge. About 500 mounted Boers in line charged the rear guard in an attempt to secure the guns. The troops under Lt. Cockburn were nearly wiped out, that officer being wounded and captured, and all but six of his men being killed, wounded or captured. The Boers pursued the guns up the plain firing from their horses. Meanwhile Col. Lessard with the remainder of the Dragoons was holding back the advance of the flanking parties to prevent the guns being cut off. The horses of No. 5 gun became very exhausted, and after going about half the distance towards the ridge completely played out and came down to a walk. Lt. Morrison halted and went into action rear against the pursuing Boer lines at 800 yards. Though the enemy's line was broken directly in the rear by this fire the rest of the advance still came on, so Lt. Morrison limbered up again to make a final effort to get the guns away. He was materially assisted by a party of Dragoons, under Lt. Turner, who, though already twice wounded, gallantly dismounted his men and succeeded by a well directed fire in detaining the Boers long enough to enable the gun to reach the top of a ridge, where were stationed the infantry supports. During the latter part of the trip the gunners were dismounted and assisted the horses pulling on the traces. On arrival at the ridge they were so exhausted they could hardly mount, and two of them were bleeding from the lungs as a result of their exertions. As the infantry were now retiring, Lt. Morrison did not consider it safe to go into action on the ridge as the Boer line was only about 200 yards distant. The guns proceeded over the ridge and were met by Gen. Smith-Dorrien, who directed Lt. Morrison to cross the Spruit and take up a position on the other side, which was done. At this juncture a welcome reinforcement arrived, the C.M.R., under Col. Evans, having come to our assistance, and together, with the Dragoons, they held the road and a portion of the ridge. The long line of the enemy outflanked them on both sides but were held in check by the section of "D" Battery on the other side of the Spruit, reinforced later on by a section of the 84th Battery and the pom poms. The enemy then made a determined effort to turn our left flank but were broken up by the fire of the guns. After this they did not again attack in force though they hung on our rear and flank for some time. On the following day the force reached Belfast without further casualties. In the action on the 7th the Royal Canadian Dragoons had three killed, 12 wounded and 16 missing, out of a total of 95 officers and men.

From reports received from officers taking part in the engagement of 6th and 7th, I cannot speak too highly of the conduct and gallantry of Lt. Morrison and the non-commissioned officers and men of the left section. Gen. Smith-Dorrien in his report to Lord Roberts with reference to the rear guard action said :

"It was soon evident that the Boers had been heavily reinforced since yesterday. Col. Lessard with the Royal Canadian Dragoons and two Royal Canadian guns, the latter under Lt. Morrison, covered the rear, and I have no praise too high for the devoted gallantry they all showed in keeping the enemy off the convoy and infantry."

In a telegram congratulating Gen. Smith-Dorrien on the success of his operations Lord Roberts said : "Col. Lessard with his Canadians had a difficult task in guarding the rear on your return march and deserves great credit as do all who were with him."

Gen. Smith-Dorrien subsequently recommended Lt. Morrison for "some special mark of Her Majesty's favour for the skill and coolness with which he worked and finally saved his guns."

During the two days' fighting the section expended 240 rounds of ammunition.

IN THE STEILPOORT VALLEY.

On November 13. the left section proceeded north towards the Steilpoort Valley with the flying column consisting of the Royal Canadian Dragoons, Canadian Mounted Rifles, Fifth Lancers, Third Mounted Infantry, four guns 84th Battery, section pom-poms, two 5-in guns, the Gordon Highlanders and Royal Irish Regiment. The enemy offered considerable resistance on the first day, and the section expended 80

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

rounds of ammunition. On November 14, the section of "D" Battery and Royal Canadian Dragoons, which formed the advance guard, took part in three engagements, the last being against a strong position covering the village of Witpoort, which was subsequently taken and burned, the place having been used for some time past as the laager by the Boer forces that were then attacking us. On the following day the column moved south towards Swartz Kopjes. The "D" Battery guns shelled a Boer convoy and were instrumental in rounding up 150 cattle and 500 sheep, which the Boers were trying to drive off. The main body bivouacked at Swartz Kopjes, and on the next day a flying column, principally composed of mounted troops, advanced towards Dullstroom, which was occupied after slight resistance. This was another place that the Boers had been using as a laager and it was burned with the exception of the church and some buildings belonging to foreigners. In several of the houses were quantities of ammunition which exploded when the fire reached them. The Boers attacked the column as it was returning from Dullstroom, and opened a sharp fire from the right flank at 1,000 yards on the "D" Battery guns, killing one of the escort, a sergeant of the 3rd M.I. They were driven off by the fire of the guns and the pom-poms. On the fifth day the force returned to Belfast, and on November 21, the left section "D" Battery entrained for Pretoria.

When the left section was leaving Belfast the following general order was issued by Major-Gen. Smith-Dorrien:—

"Major General Smith-Dorrien cannot allow the Royal Canadian Dragoons and the left section "D" battery Royal Canadian Artillery and the Canadian Mounted Rifles to leave his command en route for Canada without thanking them for the grand work they have performed for him in the Belfast flying column. In eight of the last nineteen days, they have been engaged with the Boers and have proved themselves splendidly brave and mobile mounted troops, and it has afforded the major general much pleasure to have been able to send through General the Hon. N. Littleton to the Field Marshal Commanding in Chief detailed accounts of the splendid feats of arms, and to have been able to bring to the special notice of the Commander in Chief five officers and seven non-commissioned officers and men for distinguished conduct in the field during these operations. In wishing them all good-bye and good luck, he has no words to express how great a loss they will be to the flying column. He can merely say that he would choose no other mounted troops in the world before them if he had his choice, and he sincerely hopes the day may come when he may have them again under his command."

MOBILIZATION AT PRETORIA.

On November 22, the right, centre and left sections reached Pretoria and were brigaded with "C" Battery, Royal Canadian Artillery, under my command. The horses were turned over to the British Government at a valuation, which was made by a board of British and Canadian officers. The battery mobilized at Ottawa with 137 horses: ten died at sea, forty-eight died on active service, eleven were exchanged for remounts at Bloemfontein; sixty-eight were turned over to the British Government, at a total valuation of £1,418, being an average of £21 per horse. Some of the artillery teams brought as high as £30 per horse, these being horses which had been purchased direct from the farmers in the vicinity of Ottawa and had been through the whole of the campaign. They were in as good condition, according to the veterinary who examined them, as when they were purchased, and the veterinary particularly remarked on the fine constitutions of all the horses, and that notwithstanding the hard marching they had endured, their limbs were as clean as whips, and in only one or two instances was their wind affected. I think it would be interesting to know that the raw horses taken from the farms endured the hardships of the campaign very much better than the trained horses taken over from "A" Battery, very few of which survived. In comparison with the English horses in British batteries, this was a remarkable showing. Some of the British batteries during the same term of service were rehorsed completely two or three times. One battery which landed at the same time as mine had only one of its original horses when we were leaving Pretoria.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

I regret to report that on November 9th, No. 363 C. M. Bomb. W. J. Moore died of enteric fever in Pretoria. On November 18th No. 355 Sgt. E. Evett died of enteric fever at Waterval Onder.

At Pretoria the four "prairie" transport wagons which were built for the battery at Ottawa, were turned over to the British Government at a valuation of £10 each. These wagons stood the campaign splendidly and were practically as good as when we entered the field. For economy in draught and generally suitability for the work, I believe these wagons to be equal or superior to any used by the transport in the British army.

On December 3rd "D" Battery marched to Elandsfontein and entrained for Cape Town. Owing to the threatening attitude of the rebels in Cape Colony, the battery had to detrain at Worcester for forty-eight hours, and went into position on a hill overlooking the town, together with "C" and "E" batteries and several colonial corps. On Dec. 11 the battery entrained for Cape Town, arriving there the same evening. On the 12th the guns and stores were shipped on board the steamer 'Roslin Castle', and on the 13th, after a march through the city, and being addressed by Sir Alfred Milner and Gen. Forestier-Walker, the battery embarked for home. The steamer sailed at 4 p.m., reached Cape Verde on the 27th, and Halifax, January 8. On the following day the men debarked and left in the evening by train for home.

LIST OF ACTIONS.

My battery was engaged in thirty-two actions, besides a number of smaller affairs and occasions on which we were under heavy fire from long range guns but were unable to reply, notably at Lydenburg where we were for three hours under a heavy shell fire without being able to return it. The following is the list of engagements together with the dates :—

July 21	Dewegendrift.	Nov. 6	Van Wyks Vlei.
" 21	Onverwacht.	" 6	Liliefontein.
" 23	Rustfontein.	" 6	Carolina Road.
Aug. 27	Battle of Belfast.	" 7	Carolina Road.
Sept. 3	Zwarts Kopjes.	" 7	Liliefontein
" 6	Rooidaal.	" 7	Blyvoorlizich.
" 6	Spitzkop.	" 13	Wettervreven.
" 6	Lydenburg.	" 13	Laken Vlie.
" 7	Lydenburg.	" 13	Lalkloof.
" 27	Zevenfontein.	" 14	Vlakplatts.
Oct. 3	Elandskop.	" 14	Schoongenzicht.
" 6	Tweefontein.	" 14	Witpoort.
" 6	Zurkerboshkop.	" 15	Zwarts Kopjes.
" 6	Langkloof.	" 16	Dullstroom.
Nov. 2	Witkloof.	" 16	Welgevricht.
" 6	Esteringfontein.	" 17	Elandskloof.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. G. HURDMAN, *Major*,
Late commanding 'D' Battery, R.C.A.

APPENDIX E 3.

From O.C. "E" Battery, R.C.F.A., to O.C. Brigade Division, R.C.F.A.

KINGSTON, March 12, 1901.

SIR,—The enlistment for "E" Battery, R.C.F.A. first began in Quebec on Dec 27, 1899, and by January 15, 1900, everything was in readiness for active service, and at 9 a.m. on the 17, entrained at Point Lévis.

Owing to the severe weather during the previous week and the fact that our newly purchased remounts were housed in the riding school, we were obliged to leave half a dozen behind with influenza. Our train was broken in two and arrived in Halifax at midnight the 18th. As the horse cars provided were ordinary cattle trucks, and the thermometer dropped to 22° below zero during the night, our number of horses was further reduced by forty-four, which were left behind at Halifax.

Owing to a heavy fog we were obliged to lay to during the night, and for the two days following the sea was rough and the weather wet and cold.

On January 31, at 10 a.m., we entered the harbour of St. Vincent, Cape Verde Islands, remaining two hours only. The time on board ship was taken up with stables, squad drill, gun drill and cleaning harness. We found great difficulty in raising our horses or getting them out when once they fell or died; the percentage of deaths was much greater on the lower deck.

The equator was crossed at 11.15 a.m., February 6, and the weather was so hot that we were obliged to clip the horses. On the 16th the weather became quite stormy and cool and by 6.30 p.m. of the same day we sighted the lights off Table Bay. We began to disembark at 11 a.m. the 17th, and marched into Green Point Camp at 5 p.m. the 18th, having lost 14 horses during the voyage, and the 14 left in Halifax left us 58 under strength. It was interesting to notice that four other transports arrived the same day as ourselves, two from Australia, one from India and one from England.

On the 23rd, orders were out for us to proceed to Kimberley, but our want of horses so crippled us that on the 25th the orders were cancelled, and we remained in Cape Town until March 10, when we entrained for Victoria Road, Cape Colony. In the meantime we had supplied our wants with animals from Australia and the Argentine, and mules for our prairie wagons, the latter proving a most satisfactory arrangement, there being six mules and two native boys for each heavy wagon, and four mules and one native boy for the light spring wagon. On the 10th we received orders at 9.30 a.m., left camp at 11 a.m., marched about three miles, entrained and steamed out of Cape Town at 2.2 p.m. Arriving at Victoria Road on the 12th, we remained there two days and moved out on the 14th, forming part of a column under command of Colonel Sir Charles Parsons, which arrived at Carnarvon, North-west Cape Colony on the evening of the 17th. This short march showed up our weak points in horses and harness, as the horses had not yet recovered from the sea trip, and the collars all being too large the result was sore shoulders.

From Carnarvon north-west the Karoo is bare, except for small shrubs. The heavy rains stopped us at Van Wyks Vlei, and by April 6 we were back again at Carnarvon, and left on the 8th, going north-east towards Britstown, reaching the railway at DeAar on the 14th, having averaged about 23 miles a day. Here we were joined by 23 men and 39 horses that had been left at Halifax.

The battery remained in De Aar about three weeks, long enough unfortunately for the men to become infected with the germs of enteric fever, Gunner O'Reilly dying on May 17.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

On May 9, "E" Battery marched out of De Aar for Belmont, reaching that place on the 13th, and joined the column under command of General Sir Charles Warren. The column left Belmont on the 15th, marching north-west towards Douglas on the Vaal river, where we arrived at 4 a.m. the 20th, and came into action for the first time. We entered the town at 12.30 p.m., the enemy retiring across the river; they returned to the attack about 3 p.m., when the guns came into action once more and did such excellent practice as to call forth the personal thanks and congratulations of the General.

On May 26, the column moved on to Faber's Putts. It was on the morning of the 30th that we experienced the hottest fire of the campaign, when we were awakened from our sleep by a deadly fire from the sides of our bivouac, in some cases at less than 100 yards distance: it was here that one gun detachment lost 1 killed and 5 wounded out of 7 numbers: altogether we had 1 killed and 9 wounded, and 3 or 4 more slightly, who did not report. There were 3 horses killed and 5 stampeded and missing. There is no doubt that all of our horses would have been stampeded or killed, as was intended by the enemy, if the drivers had not taken them off the lines and removed them to the shelter of the farm house, and this under a hot fire at close range. No seasoned troops could have been steadier or behaved better, obeying every order as quietly as on parade, than these young Canadian gunners.

On June 3, the column moved on, shelling the enemy out of their position at Knofffontein, whence they scattered over the country. From here we followed on to Campbell, Griquatown, Daniels Quil, reaching Blikfontein on the 21st. On the 23rd Colonel Sam. Hughes returned to camp with his capture of 200 rebels, together with large quantities of arms and ammunition, horses, oxen and wagons. We remained here settling the country until July 5, when we returned towards the railway, reaching Schmidts Drift on the Vaal on the 9th, forty-five miles due west of Kimberley, where we remained until the 29th, occupying the time in refitting in horses and uniforms; the left section joined from Campbell and the right moved on to Kimberley. The remainder of the battery arrived at Kimberley, 3 p.m., July 31, and left by train at 5 p.m., dropping the left section at Warrenton and the centre at Vryburg, and now for the first time we were able to take advantage of all the useful things sent out by kind friends in Canada.

The custom of breaking up fighting units appears most incomprehensible. "E" Battery was scattered along the line from Kimberley to Vryburg, and yet while I acted as C.O.R.A. and O.C., western district, of the defences of Vryburg for six weeks, I commanded a battery, the right section of which consisted of 2 guns of the Royal Field Artillery, the centre section of 2 guns of the Royal Canadian Field Artillery, and the left section 2 guns of the Royal Australian Artillery, a command most unique in itself; in comparing the sections I found the English gunners were well balanced and a well seasoned lot, and the horses larger, while the Canadians and Australians were physically larger and more athletic, and the horses faster and lighter in the bone respectively.

The Vryburg column of 3,200 strong, under command of General Little, marched out of Vryburg on September 19, 1900: the artillery consisted of 4 guns of the 44th Field Battery, R.A., 4 guns "E" Battery, R.C.F.A., and 2 guns of 37th Field Howitzer Battery. The column was five miles in length, but generally moved in 3 parallel lines. It was here the Canadian Prairie wagon proved its great superiority in lightness of draught and carrying capacity: the two wagons carrying 400 rounds of spare gun ammunition, besides 1 day's spare forage and rations, and all the kits, blankets, cooking arrangements &c., of the officers and men of the battery, hauled by 8 mules to a wagon, other units carrying the same weight, required twice the number of the ordinary buck wagons hauled by 10 mules each. This was the first opportunity that "E" Battery had of entering the Orange River Colony or the Transvaal, assisting at the relief of Switz Reneke, Transvaal, and Hoopstad, Orange River Colony: they were also in action at Elizabeth Rust and Wegdrei.

Although the constant trekking and want of proper forage and water (the greatest hardship we had to contend with) used up the horses, we were able after nine months

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

marching of about 2,000 miles to turn into the Remount Station 44 Canadian horses at an average price of £28 each, the highest price allowed.

I may say that my experience in South Africa of Canadian, English, American, Australian and Argentine horses, I found the Canadian horse the best for the work, especially the French Canadian horse.

When turning the prairie wagons into Ordnance Store I was asked for and handed in a report as to their advantage or otherwise, as a transport wagon.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

G. HUNTER OGILVIE, *Major.*
Late O.C. "E" Battery, R.C.F.A.

APPENDIX E 4.

BRIGADE DIVISION, ROYAL CANADIAN FIELD ARTILLERY.

LIST of Officers, N.C.O's and Men killed in action or died of wounds received in action.

"E" BATTERY.

No.	Rank and Name.	Casualty.	Place.	Date.	Where Buried.
482	Bombardier W. Latimer.....	Killed.....	Faber's Putts. ...	30-5-1900..	Faber's Putts.

LIST of Officers, N.C.O's and Men who died of disease or from accident.

"D" BATTERY.

No.	Rank and Name.	Casualty.	Place.	Date.	Where Buried.
275	Driver R. Bradley	Effects of submersion	Van Wyks Vlei ..	2-4-1900...	Van Wyks Vlei.
255	Gunner E. Picot	Enteric	De Aar	1-5-1900...	De Aar cemetery.
363	Collar Maker W. J. Moore ..	"	Pretoria	9-11-1900..	Pretoria cemetery.
355	Sergeant E. Evett.....	"	Watervalonder....	18-11-1900.	WatervalonderStn.

"E" BATTERY.

409	Trumpeter G. Bradley ...	Enteric	Kimberley	28-7-1900..	Kimberley.
449	Gunner E. P. O'Reilly	"	De Aar	17-5-1900..	De Aar.
528	" J. Neild	Effects of accidental wounding	Kimberley	22-9-1900..	Kimberley.
486	" W. E. Price... ..	Enteric.....	Netley, England...	23-7-1900..	

LIST of Wounded.

“ C ” BATTERY.

Date.	No.	Rank and Name.	Place.	Nature.
1900.				
May 16.....	65	A Bombardier W. Patton.....	Mafeking	Slight.
" 16.....	135	Gunner W. McCollum.....	"	"

“ D ” BATTERY.

Nov. 6	273	Corpl. W. R. Hare	Belfast..	Severe.
--------------	-----	-------------------------	-----------------	---------

“ E ” BATTERY.

May 30.....	408	Corpl. H. M. Brown.....	Faber's Putt	Severe.
" 30.....	411	Driver J. Kane.....	"	Slight.
" 30.....	421	Gunner G. F. Fletcher.....	"	Severe.
" 30	491	" R. C. Jackson.....	"	Slight.
" 30.....	420	Bombardier J. McAskill.....	"	"
" 30.....	445	Gunner G. H. Ross	"	Severe.
" 30.....	531	" C. Woollard..	"	"
" 30	529	" H. B. Taite	"	Slight.

MISSING.

No. 29 F. J. Shedd, “ C ” Battery, left hospital at Marandellas, without leave, May 9, 1900, since when nothing has been heard of him.

REPORT F.

OTTAWA, January 17, 1901.

SIR,—In presenting this report, I might state that with the exception of a short time in Kimberley we were always attached to, and under the superintendence of the English army nursing sisters. We shared alike with them the work in the different hospitals and were thus relieved of any responsibility as to our movements. We were at all times treated with the greatest consideration and kindness by our English sisters, which helped to make our work more pleasant. We all came home feeling that the experience has been of great benefit to us, and will be of great value if our services in this line are ever required again. We assembled in Halifax on Jan. 20, 1900, and went on board the transport "*Laurentian*," nurses Hurcomb, Horne, Macdonald and Richardson. We sailed from Halifax Jan. 21. Our quarters on board ship were most comfortable and, in fact, we were all satisfied with the treatment accorded us during the voyage. As there were no serious cases of illness, we were not called upon for duty, and after a pleasant and uneventful trip arrived in Cape Town, Saturday, Feb. 19, 1900. We reported at once to Col. Supple, P. M. O., of Woodstock, who gave us orders to proceed at once to No. 3 General Hospital, at Rondebosch. This was a base hospital, at which patients were continually arriving from the front to stay until convalescent, when they were either sent home to England or, if well enough, returned to duty. Our hours of duty while here averaged about 9 hours a day, and during the period of our stay there were from 15 to 20 other nursing sisters, including four who went out with the first contingent. On Friday, March 16, we received orders to proceed to Kimberley, and left that evening. We arrived at Kimberley on the evening of the 18th. We were met by Col. Ryerson, who had arranged for our stay at the Grand Hotel for a few days, after which our quarters consisted of a private house where we were made very comfortable. We were assigned for duty at the Masonic Temple, which building had been turned into a temporary hospital. It had accommodation for about 100 patients. I, as head nurse, was placed in charge, and the staff consisted of the three other Canadian sisters and several orderlies. The cases were mostly enteric fever and dysentery, the former of a most malignant type. The percentage of deaths was not above the average. We were very much indebted to Col. Ryerson and the Canadian Red Cross Society for the help which they gave in the way of supplies of every description, which helped us very materially in our work. We remained at this hospital in Kimberley for about a month. On April 20, we got orders to go to Bloemfontein. We left the following day and arrived there on the 23rd. While in Bloemfontein we were attached to No. 10 General Hospital, and while here encountered our hardest work in the country. The majority of the cases were enteric fever and dysentery, at one time there being between 4,000 and 5,000 cases in the town. At first, for a while, medical and food supplies were very short and this, coupled with the fact that the supply of good water was very limited, made the suffering greater. Many of the doctors and nurses contracted the disease, and two of our own nurses, Misses Richardson and Horne, were on the sick list about three weeks after our arrival there. Miss Richardson was off duty about two months, while Miss Horne is still away on sick leave. We left Bloemfontein on July 18, for Pretoria, and arrived at our destination on July 20. We were immediately attached to the staff of the Irish Hospital, which had been established in the Palace of Justice. Here we met the four nurses who went out with the first contingent and whom we had last seen in Rondebosch. We were all on duty in the same hospital; our work here was not so heavy. This hospital was well equipped and sent out by Lord Iveagh and was well supplied with food and other necessities. There was an average of between 400 and 500 patients during the time we were there. While here we met a

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

good many of our Canadian soldiers, and had some of both officers and men as patients. On Oct. 15, the staff of the Irish Hospital left for home. The hospital was then taken over by the military and we stayed here until Nov. 23, when we left for Cape Town, en route for home. Before leaving Pretoria we got leave of absence for a week. During this time we visited Ladysmith, Colenso, Durban and other points of interest. The journey from Pretoria to Cape Town was made in 5 days. On arrival we were quartered at Wynberg, awaiting embarkation. We sailed from Cape Town on the "*Roslin Castle*," Dec. 13. On account of sickness on board, the nurses were called upon for duty, but as there were seven of us on board our work was comparatively light. I regret to say, however, that two of the cases terminated fatally. We arrived in Halifax Jan. 8, and from thence proceeded to our respective homes.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

D. HURCOMB,
Head Nurse 2nd Canadian Contingent.

Col. J. L. H. NEILSON, G.G.H.S.,
Director General Medical Service,
Ottawa, Canada.

LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE.

The next corps to be organized in Canada for service in South Africa, Lord Strathcona's Horse, was recruited, horsed, armed, equipped, clothed, conveyed to South Africa, and paid until the date of arrival there, at the sole expense of Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, and the members thereof were also, from the date of arrival in South Africa, paid from Lord Strathcona's privy purse the difference between Imperial cavalry pay and the higher rates paid by Canada to the North-west Mounted Police Force.

No corps left Canada, and it is doubtful whether there was any in the field in South Africa, so thoroughly clothed and equipped as that placed at the service of the Empire by Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal. It was, I am sure, a privilege and a pleasure to the officers of the Departments of Militia and Defence and of the North-west Mounted Police to assist in the organization of such a regiment.

ESTABLISHMENT.

The regiment consisted of a regimental staff and three squadrons, in accordance with the Army Establishment for a Cavalry Regiment, 1898.

The regimental staff and detail of a squadron were the same as the Canadian Mounted Rifles (pages 69 and 70), with the exception that there were six drivers per squadron instead of four, and twelve draught horses per squadron instead of eight.

The establishment was therefore as follows :—

RANKS.	PERSONNEL.							HORSES, PUBLIC.			
	Officers.	Warrant Officer.	Staff Sergeants and Sergeants.	Artificers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	Total.	Riding.	Draught.	Pack.	Total.
Regimental Staff.....	7	1	5	1	.....	34	51	29	24	.....	53
Three Service Squadrons.....	18	.....	30	18	6	414	486	456	36	3	495
	25	1	35	22	6	448	537	485	60	3	548

ENROLMENT.

Lord Strathcona specially requested that the regiment should be recruited from Manitoba, British Columbia and the North-west Territories. Recruiting was commenced on February 5, 1900, and the numbers enrolled at the different centres were as follows:

Manitoba.

	Men.
Winnipeg, Portage la Prairie, Brandon and Virden.....	40

North-west Territories.

	Men.
Moosomin	40
Regina	40
Prince Albert and Battleford	40
Calgary	40
Edmonton	40
Macleod	40
Pincher Creek	20
Lethbridge	20
Medicine Hat and Maple Creek	20

British Columbia.

Fort Steele	40
Nelson	40
Golden	10
Revelstoke	10
Vernon	15
Kamloops	15
Vancouver	15
Victoria	15
Eastern Canada, artificers, &c.	12
	<hr/> 512 <hr/>

CONDITIONS.

The conditions under which men were enlisted were similar to those of the second contingent.

CONCENTRATION.

The regiment was concentrated at Ottawa by special trains, the first, having on board 6 officers, 280 non-commissioned officers and men, arriving on February 15.

OFFICERS.

Lieut.-Col. S. B. Steele, who was at Halifax, en route to South Africa as 2nd in Command of the 2nd Battalion C.M.R., was chosen as Commanding Officer. He and the officers selected for Commissions in this corps, were appointed to temporary rank in the army.

Colonel Lumsden's corps, raised in India, and Lord Strathcona's Horse, were the only corps specially raised for service in South Africa whose officers received this recognition.

The officers selected for commissions were as follows:—

Lieutenant-Colonel.

Lieut.-Colonel S. B. Steele, (North-west Mounted Police).

Second in Command.

Major R. Belcher, (North-west Mounted Police).

Majors.

- " A. E. Snyder, (North-west Mounted Police).
- " A. M. Jarvis " "
- " R. C. Laurie (Lieut. Reserve of Officers).

Captains.

- Captain D. M. Howard (North-west Mounted Police).
 " G. W. Cameron (Major, 5th Battalion).
 " F. L. Cartwright (North-west Mounted Police).

Lieutenants.

- Lieutenant R. H. B. Magee (Lieut. Reserve of Officers).
 " F. Harper (North-west Mounted Police).
 " J. A. Benyon (Captain, Royal Canadian Artillery).
 " E. F. Mackie (Captain, 90th Battalion).
 " P. Fall (2nd Lieut., Manitoba Dragoons).
 " M. H. White-Fraser (Ex-Inspector, North-west Mounted Police).
 " H. D. B. Ketchen (North-west Mounted Police),
 " J. F. McDonald (Captain, 37th Battalion).
 " J. E. Leckie.
 " R. M. Courtney (Captain, 1st Battalion).
 " T. E. Pooley (Captain, 5th Regiment, C.A.).
 " A. E. Christie.
 " A. W. Strange.
 " G. E. Laidlaw (Lieut., Reserve of Officers).
 " G. H. Kirkpatrick " "
 " H. Tobin " "

Quartermaster.

- " W. Parker.

Transport Officer.

- " I. R. Snider (2nd Lieut. Manitoba Dragoons).

Medical Officer.

- " C. B. Keenan.

Veterinary Officer.

- " G. T. Stevenson.

The seniority of the officers as gazetted to the Army, is as follows :—

LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE.

Lieutenant-Colonel (with temporary rank of Lt.-Col. in Army.)

Steele, S. B., Superintendent Canadian N.W.M.P. . . . Mar. 7, 1900

Major (2nd in Command).

Belcher, R., Inspector Canadian N.W.M.P. July 18, 1900

" Temporary Major in Army Mar. 7, 1900

Majors (with temporary rank of Major in Army).

Laurie, Lt. R. C., Canadian Militia, Res. of Off. Mar. 7, 1900

Jarvis, A. M., Inspector Canadian N.W.M.P. " 7, 1900

Snyder, A. E., " " " " " 7, 1900

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Captains (with temporary rank of Captain in Army).

Howard, D. M., Canadian N.W.M.P.....	Mar.	7, 1900
Cameron, Major G. W., Canadian Militia.....	"	7, 1900
Cartwright. F. L., Inspector Canadian N.W.M.P.....	"	7, 1900

Lieutenants (with temporary rank of Lieutenant in Army).

Courtney, Capt. R. M., Canadian Militia.....	Mar.	7, 1900
Macdonald, Capt. J. F.	"	7, 1900
Mackie, Capt. E. F.	"	7, 1900
Magee, Lt. R. H. B.	Res. of Off..	" 7, 1900
Fall, 2nd Lt. P.	"	7, 1900
Christie, A. E., Inspector Canadian N.W.M.P.....	"	7, 1900
Leckie, J. E.....	"	7, 1900
Strange, A. W., late Canadian Militia.....	"	7, 1900
Ketchen, H. D. B., late 2nd Lt. Royal Innis. Fusiliers.	"	17, 1900
White-Fraser, M. H., late Insp. Canadian N.W.M.P..	"	17, 1900
Harper, F., Inspector Canadian N.W.M.P.....	"	17, 1900
Kirkpatrick, G. H.....	"	17, 1900
Laidlaw, G. E.....	"	17, 1900
Tobin, H. S.....	"	17, 1900
Benyon, Capt. J. A., R. Canadian Artillery.....	"	21, 1900
Adamson, A., late Capt. Canadian Militia.....	May	12, 1900

Quarter-Master (with temporary rank of Lieutenant in Army).

Parker, W., Canadian N.W.M.P.....	Mar.	7, 1900
-----------------------------------	------	---------

Medical Officer (with temporary rank of Captain).

Keenan, C. B., M.D.....	Mar.	7, 1900
-------------------------	------	---------

Veterinary Officer (with temporary rank of Veterinary Lieutenant).

Stevenson, G. T.....	Apr.	21, 1900
----------------------	------	----------

Transport Officer (with temporary rank of Lieutenant in Army).

Snider, I. R., 2nd Lt. Canadian Militia.....	Mar.	17, 1900
--	------	----------

The following appointments and promotions were made in the Field:—

To be Majors :

Captains D. M. Howard and G. W. Cameron, vice, A. E. Snyder and R. C. Laurie, from December 7, 1900.

To be Captains :

Lieutenants R. M. Courtney and J. F. Macdonald, vice, D. M. Howard and G. W. Cameron, from December 7, 1900.

To be Paymaster with rank of Lieutenant :

Regimental Sergeant Major Elmes J. Steele, from August 5, 1900.

To be Acting Veterinary Lieutenant :

F. Q. M. S. Adam McMillan, during the absence on sick leave of Veterinary Lieut. Stevenson, from August 15, 1900.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

On March 12th the regiment was moved to Halifax by special trains, where it arrived on the 15th. It embarked on the ss. *Monterey* for Cape Town on the following day at 5 o'clock p.m.

The marching out state was as follows :—

Strathcona's Horse : 28 officers, 512 other ranks, and 599 horses, being 3 officers and 51 horses in excess of the authorized strength.

Three officers and 101 N.C. officers and men, being reinforcements for the 2nd S.S. Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment. Honorary Major J. L. Biggar, 15th "Argyll Light Infantry," to be attached to the Army Service Corps in the field. Major D. C. F. Bliss, R.O., to be attached to the 2nd Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles, with the rank of Lieutenant. Lieut. and Captain F. H. C. Sutton, R.C.D., to be attached to the 1st Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles, with the rank of Lieutenant. One civilian clerk.

REINFORCEMENTS.

Subsequently, Lord Strathcona requested that an officer and 50 men be sent out as reinforcements for his corps.

Captain Agar S. A. M. Adamson, The G.G.F.G., was selected as the officer. The men, like those of the regiment who preceded them, were, with few exceptions, recruited from Manitoba, British Columbia and the North-west Territories, and under the same conditions as regards pay, qualifications, &c.

The detachment arrived at Ottawa on April 25. They were clothed and equipped, and left for Montreal, April 30, where they embarked, on May 1, on the ss. *Vancouver* for Liverpool.

REPORT G.

OTTAWA, March 23, 1901.

From Lt.-Col. S. B. Steele, M.V.O., Comdg. Lord Strathcona's Horse, to the Hon. the Minister of Militia and Defence, Ottawa.

SIR,—In accordance with instructions received through Lord Strathcona, I have the honour to submit this my report as Officer Commanding Lord Strathcona's Horse, organized in Canada for special service in South Africa.

Our late lamented Queen having been graciously pleased to accept the offer which Lord Strathcona in his patriotism made to raise and equip a regiment of horse for service in South Africa, I was offered the command and after considering the grave responsibility, accepted.

At that time I was at Halifax en route for South Africa as Second-in-Command of the Canadian Mounted Rifles, but upon receiving your telegram proceeded to Ottawa and reported to you at once.

When I arrived at Ottawa I found that the regiment to be raised was to be of full strength of three Squadrons, with machine gun detachments and regimental transport complete. Also that the men were to be recruited in Manitoba, the North-west Territories, and British Columbia, and that the officers were to be experienced in life on the plains and in the mountains.

After several consultations with you and Mr. Fred White, Comptroller of North-west Mounted Police, in the course of which the officers were selected, and all preliminary arrangements made, I left for the west on January 31, arriving at Winnipeg on February 2. Here I gave the necessary instructions as to the number and class of men to be selected, and went on to Regina the same afternoon.

When in Ottawa I was empowered to obtain the assistance of such officers of the North-west Mounted Police as I thought would be of help in recruiting, so that when I arrived at Regina on the 3rd I was able to request Superintendent Greisbach, Inspectors Wilson, Howard, Harper and Morris to commence the work, and it was largely owing to their assistance, together with that of the officers already chosen for the corps, that the recruiting was so rapidly and systematically carried out.

I personally looked after the recruiting at Calgary and had intended to remain some time in the west to assist Dr. McEachran in the purchase of horses, but owing to the illness of Major Belcher, who was to superintend the organization of the regiment at Ottawa, I was obliged to leave earlier for the Capital.

The recruiting stopped on February 9, and on the 10th the men from northern and western British Columbia concentrated at Calgary, and were sent on under Lieut. Strange, meeting the recruits from Nelson, Rossland, Fort Steele, Pincher Creek and Lethbridge at Medicine Hat. The whole then proceeded to Ottawa under Inspector Morris, picking up the men from Regina, Moosomin, Brandon, Winnipeg and other points en route.

I reached Ottawa again on the 14th and finding that the exhibition grounds had been fitted up for the reception of the men, I had them formed into troops and squadrons and instructed in dismounted drill.

The regiment was complete on March 7, and a mounted parade was ordered for that day for inspection by His Excellency the Governor General. The limited space and deep snow made it impossible for the regiment to go through all the movements usual on such an occasion, but His Excellency expressed himself as being pleased with the appearance of the men and horses. The corps was addressed by His Excellency, yourself, Sir Charles Tupper, Mr. Nicholas Flood Davin, M.P., and Mr. Klock, M.P., the latter gentleman presenting the regiment with a handsome flag on behalf of the citizens of the town of Sudbury.

On the 8th the regiment again paraded mounted and marching through the streets to the Parliament grounds was presented by Mrs. Borden, on behalf of the ladies of the Civil Service at Ottawa, with four beautifully worked guidons, a gift very much appreciated by the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the corps.

A church parade was ordered by the officer commanding the Ottawa district for Sunday, March 11, and at 10 o'clock the regiment, headed by the bands of the 43rd Ottawa and Carleton Rifles and The Governor General's Foot Guards proceeded, the Presbyterians to St. Andrew's Church, the Anglicans to Christ Church Cathedral, and the Roman Catholics to the Church of St. John Baptiste. Eloquent sermons were preached in each of the churches.

Monday the 12th was the day named for the departure of the regiment for Halifax, and as it was necessary to start early the horses were all loaded on the 11th. We entrained at 10 o'clock and moved out amidst the encouraging cheers of the large number of people who had come to see us off. Arriving at Montreal at 3 p.m. we met with a most enthusiastic reception. The whole garrison of that district was on parade and the crowd was so dense on the streets through which we marched that the cavalry escort found it difficult to keep the route clear. Arriving towards evening at Windsor Hall the Corps was the guest of the city at luncheon. Patriotic speeches were delivered by His Worship Mayor Prefontaine, Sir Alex. Lacoste, Mr. Principal Peterson, McGill University, Mr. Wilson-Smith and Archbishop Bruchesi, to which I replied, thanking them for their kindness, and for the magnificent way in which we had been received in the metropolis.

The corps entrained again at 10 p.m. and reached Halifax on the morning of March 15. At nearly every station all along the line we were met, day and night, by large crowds of people. At Campbellton, N.B., the citizens presented us with a silk banner, and at Moncton we received another flag, accompanied by the following address :—

“TO COLONEL STEELE, OFFICERS AND MEN OF STRATHCONA'S HORSE :—

“The citizens of the city of Moncton, province of New Brunswick, desirous of showing in some tangible and practical way, their enthusiastic admiration of Lord Strathcona's magnificent patriotism, and of the splendid body of mounted troops who are known to us and will be known to posterity as Strathcona's Horse, beg your acceptance of this Canadian ensign, which bears upon its folds the emblems so dear to every British and Canadian heart. It is the symbol of England's greatness and it tells the story of the Empire's unity.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

"With hearts filled with loving patriotism, we give this flag to you in the full assurance that its honour is safe in the keeping of Strathcona's Horse, and that, let the call be made upon them to jeopardize their lives, without counting the cost, it will be answered as of old.

" 'Their's not to make reply,
Their's but to do or die.'

"To you this bit of silk will be a sacred symbol—an inspiration to do what is right an incentive to duty, in its highest and noblest sense a reminder that Canadian prayers are with you on the path of duty.

"And when on African veldt or kopje you serve beneath that flag it will remind you of your loyalty and devotion to God, to Queen and Empire, ever to be guarded with jealous care in moments of peril—never to be yielded save with life.

"In offering you this flag to-day we assure you that from every heart amongst us there will rise the earnest prayer: 'God bless and guide and guard Strathcona's Horse.'

"MONCTON, March 20, 1900."

The horses were immediately detrained and embarked. This was done on the advice of Dr. McEachran, who had discovered evidences of disease in the city and thought it unsafe to stable the animals for the night. The precaution was also taken to properly treat, by steaming and other means, any horses showing signs of cold contracted on the journey from Ottawa to Halifax.

The men were comfortably quartered for the night at the exhibition grounds and drill hall, and were entertained in the evening to a smoking concert given by the Halifax Garrison.

On the 16th, at 3 p.m., the regiment was paraded and drawn up en masse in the drill hall and were inspected by Lt. Gen. Lord Wm. Seymour, commanding the troops in British North America. The following message from our late lamented Queen, received by cable through Lord Strathcona, was read to the regiment, and was received with the greatest enthusiasm by the assembled thousands:

"Her Majesty would be glad if before they start you would convey to them an expression of her confidence that they will prove worthy comrades of her Canadian soldiers who are now so gallantly fighting for the Empire's cause: the Queen wishes them all success and safe return to their homes in the Dominion."

After the inspection the regiment marched through the streets, headed by the whole garrison, to the ship and immediately embarked. A few minutes later, amidst the greatest enthusiasm possible, the ship pulled out in the stream, where she remained until the following day.

The voyage from Halifax to Cape Town was marked by splendid weather—not a rough sea was experienced during the whole of it—but the enjoyment was marred to a large extent by the worry and sorrow brought about by the loss of so many of our horses. It was found after one or two days out that a great many of the horses were unable to stand the decided change of climate between the prairie country and Ottawa and between the latter city and Halifax. The slight colds contracted soon developed, and before many days, in spite of everything that could be done, we found ourselves with an epidemic of pneumonia amongst the animals. 176 horses died during the voyage.

The duties as laid down in the Queen's regulations were carried out, during the voyage. The men were instructed in musketry and in other details as well as the limited deck space would permit.

The ship arrived in Table Bay on the 10th of April and we disembarked the following day, going into camp on Green Point Common.

On April 13 I commenced the mounted drills, and taking advantage of the hilly country to the south instructed the men in movements which I thought would be most useful to them at the front. This, unfortunately was forbidden on the April 21, owing to the fact that glanders was discovered in our horses, and a long and serious test had to be instituted to learn the extent to which the disease had developed. At the end of ten days it was found by the Imperial veterinary authorities that 32 horses had

reacted to the test, and these were destroyed. Altogether 44 horses were destroyed owing to this cause.

Although I have made extensive inquiries I have been unable to arrive at a conclusion as to where this fatal horse disease was contracted. It was first of all discovered in the transport animals purchased in Montreal, but it would be unfair to say that it was brought from Canada. The ground upon which our lines were laid had been used since the beginning of the war as a recuperating ground for horses and mules brought by ship from all parts of the world, and it is just possible that the disease was taken in that way. In fact I am in a position to state that glanders to a serious extent was found in 700 horses landed ex. ss. *Rapidan*, and which were quartered for some time on the very ground on which the horses of Strathcona's stood.

As soon as evidence of glanders had disappeared 'C' Squadron under Major Laurie was sent to Maitland, a cavalry camp about eight miles distant from Green Point, and this squadron took over Argentine remounts sufficient to mount the whole of the corps.

When the regiment arrived at Cape Town I received a telegram from Lord Roberts, then at Bloemfontein, to the effect that we must not be disappointed at not going up to the front at once as he had reserved us for a very important duty.

On May 22 I received orders from the base commandant to be in readiness to embark 'A' and 'C' Squadrons, the Pom Pom and Maxim guns and regimental transport, with the exception of the pack animals, 500 of which had been turned over to us under Captain (now Lt.-Col.) Chesney of the 18th Bengal Lancers, now commanding the Commander-in-Chief's Body Guard. This was in accordance with a plan which had been under discussion for some time and by which it was intended to blow up the bridge at Komati Poort, on the Delagoa Bay Railway, and thereby cut off the Boer line of communication with the sea.

'A' and 'C' Squadrons, under command of Major Belcher, embarked on May 24 on the ss.'s *Mohawk*, *Maplemore* and *Chicago* for Durban, where they disembarked and moved by rail to Lower Tugela Station, on the boundary between Zululand and Natal.

On May 28 'B' Squadron, made up to a strength of 200 officers and men, embarked under my command on the ss.'s *Wakool* and *Columbian*, and sailed on the 29th for Kosi Bay, on the southern boundary of Portuguese East Africa.

Arriving in the Bay on June 2, we were met by Admiral Sir R. W. Harris and the flagship *Doris*, together with a number of other ships of war, who were there to assist us in disembarking in the dangerous waters of the bay, and which was to commence the following morning. During the afternoon, however, a despatch boat arrived from Lorenzo Marques with a despatch to the effect that the plan, the essence of which was surprise, had in some way got into the hands of the Boers and that they had placed, in the last few days, a strong commando on the right of our advance, and another on the left, making a force of about 1,500 men which I would have to pass with a party of 200. It was, therefore, self-evident, that the scheme was impracticable at the present time, and we returned to Durban, arriving there on June 4.

I was immediately ordered to proceed to Peitermaritzburg to consult with the general officer commanding lines of communication in Natal, Lt.-General Wolfe-Murray. I returned the same day to Durban, with orders to move by train to Lower Tugela and march from there with the whole regiment for Eshowe, in Zululand, and endeavour to destroy the bridge by marching on it by that route. We reached Eshowe on June 11, but on the 13th were ordered to return by road in a forced march of three days. This was done, and on the 16th the regiment entrained at Durban and arrived in Newcastle on the night of June 17.

On the night of the 20th, after a two days' march from Newcastle, we joined Sir Redvers Buller's army at Zand Spruit, and the following morning proceeded with the advance on Standerton, attached to the 3rd Mounted Brigade, under the Earl of Dundonald.

Standerton was occupied on June 22, and the whole force remained here until June 30, while the railway to the south was being replaced and opened, but the regiment was continually employed furnishing patrols and other duties made necessary by the proximity of a large force of the enemy.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

On June 30, railway communication having been established to the south, a force composed of the 2nd Division and the 3rd Mounted Brigade, the whole under Lieut. General Clery, moved north for the purpose of opening a line of communication through to Heidelberg, at which place General Hart's force was operating.

On July 1 (Dominion Day), while the regiment was in advance, it met with its baptism of fire. The troops under Lieuts. Tobin and Kirkpatrick, while protecting the left flank, came in contact with a large force of the enemy under Ben. Viljoen, and were fired upon from a rocky kopje in front, and from a farm flying a white flag on the right front. It was on this occasion that Major Howard, through no fault of his own, was taken prisoner. The enemy was driven off by our men, assisted by the artillery. Casualties, No. 509, Private A. Jenkins, killed; Major Howard and No. 456, Private J. Hobson, missing.

During the march to Greylingstad on July 2, and the halt made there on the 3rd the regiment was under constant fire but without casualties.

Before we moved for Vlaakfontein on the morning of July 4, I was ordered to send one squadron back to Watervaal Bridge to act in conjunction with the Devonshire Regiment in guarding the large and important bridge at that point. 'C' Squadron under Captain Cameron was chosen, and during the month the squadron was on duty it was in contact with the enemy nearly every day. It was while operating from this place that No. 332, Corporal B. H. Lee, was killed on July 6, and that No. 514, Sergeant E. C. Parker was killed and Private Arnold wounded on the 30th (since dead). 'C' Squadron deserves a great deal of credit for the work done here.

The balance of the regiment reached Vlaakfontein on the afternoon of the 4th, and on the 5th, under orders, sent fifty men to reinforce 'C' Squadron at Watervaal, and 100 men, under Major Snyder, to form part of escort for a convoy coming from Greylingstad under Major Rycroft. On the return the enemy opened a hot fire from kopjes in the vicinity of Greylingstad and continued it all along the march back to camp. A Maxim gun under Lieut. Benyon did excellent service. The troop under Lieut. Ketchen was sent to a distant kopje by Major Rycroft, and whilst there a retirement was ordered. The troop was nearly cut off. As it was the following men found it impossible to get back:—Corporal Mills and Privates Norris, Simpson and Gilroy.

I learned some time after that Private Norris was killed on this occasion.

On the 6th I again sent 150 men back to escort Sir Redvers Buller on his way from Standerton to Johannesburg. The enemy brought their field guns and pom poms to bear on the escort, but it got through safely without casualties. 'A' Battery, R.H.A., which moved out from Vlaakfontein in the afternoon at the beginning of the fire, lost one man killed and two wounded. The regiment formed the escort for Sir Redvers through to Heidelberg, returning on the 7th.

On July 9, the corps returned to Greylingstad, escorting a convoy of wagons. We were under orders to remain there, but on the 11th, the 3rd Mounted Brigade and 2nd Division came down and 140 men of the corps under my command accompanied a large force sent out to drive back Ben Viljeon's commando, which had been harassing the line from Vlaakfontein south to Standerton.

From then until the 24th, the day on which the force returned to Greylingstad, there was almost continual fighting, sometimes only in a small way, in the nature of sniping, but occasionally when the enemy found a position suitable for their guns, something like a general engagement ensued. On the 13th the force moved towards Platkop, Strathcona's Horse in advance. The enemy was known to occupy Lone Tree Hill, three miles on, but the guide, in leading, took us to the left and exposed us to a severe cross fire. Major Saugmeister, Border Mounted Rifles, attached to us on June 20, taking a troop to the right, came in contact with the enemy at the Hill and was captured. The main body of the advance operating further on met with a heavy fire at 600 yards range, and our pom pom and a gun of 'A' Battery, Royal Horse Artillery were required to dislodge the enemy. We followed until nightfall, inflicting severe loss on the Boers.

Casualties: Wounded, 2. Missing, 6.

At Holgatefontein, on the 14th, we took part in what might be termed a general engagement, as the whole of the troops and artillery were engaged, under Lt.-General Clery. The enemy occupied a position extending three miles along our front. A strong artillery fire was directed at the column from the flat kopje to the north, and it required a battery of Howitzers and two five inch guns to silence it. Pom poms were used to impede our advance in front, but a movement directed by the Earl of Dundonald resulted in turning the position, and the enemy as usual retired.

The force marched as far as Lieu Spruit, east of Standerton, and the object of the operations having been accomplished, we returned to Greylingstad, and from there proceeded to Zwickerbosch Spruit near Heidelberg, where we halted until the 30th, marching on that day under orders to join Sir Redvers Buller at Paardekop. We reached that place on August 3, without casualty.

The time between the 3rd and 7th August was spent in preparing for Sir Redvers Buller's advance northward, in which Lord Strathcona's Horse, as part of the 3rd Mounted Brigade, was to take part. The whole of the force was composed as follows, and with the exception of the 3rd Mounted Brigade and the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, composed the Ladysmith garrison during the siege :—

HEADQUARTERS STAFF.

2nd Cavalry Brigade.

Brigade Headquarters. (Major General J. E. Brocklehurst, M.V.O.)

5th Lancers.

18th Hussars.

19th Hussars.

Supply Column.

2nd Cavalry Brigade Field Hospital.

3rd Mounted Brigade.

Brigade Headquarters. (Major General the Earl of Dundonald, C.B., M.V.O.)

"A" Battery, Royal Horse Artillery.

No. 2 Field Troop Royal Engineers.

South African Light Horse.

Lord Strathcona's Horse, with three Maxims and Pom-Pom.

Supply Column.

3rd Mounted Brigade Field Hospital.

Colt Gun Detachment.

4th Division.

Divisional Headquarters. (Lieutenant General Hon. N. G. Lyttleton, C.B.)

4th Division Mounted Infantry Battalion.

Brigade Division Royal Field Artillery.

21st Field Battery, 42nd Field Battery.

53rd Field Battery and Ammunition Column.

23rd Field Company, Royal Engineers.

7th Brigade.

Brigade Headquarters. (Brigadier-General F. W. Kitchener.)

1st Battn. Devonshire Regiment.

1st Battn. Manchester Regiment.

2nd Battn. Gordon Highlanders.

2nd Battn. Rifle Brigade.

Supply Column.

7th Brigade Bearer Company.

7th Brigade Field Hospital.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

8th Brigade.

Brigade Headquarters. (Major General F. Howard, C.B., C.M.G.)

1st Battn. Liverpool Regiment.
 1st Battn. Leicestershire Regiment.
 1st Battn. Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers.
 1st Battn. King's Royal Rifle Corps.
 8th Brigade Bearer Company.
 8th Brigade Field Hospital.
 4th Brigade Supply Column.
 4th Divisional Field Hospital.
 Section No. 6 Field Veterinary Hospital.

Corps Troops.

No. 16 Company, Southern Division Royal Garrison Artillery. (2 5-inch guns.)
 No. 6 Company, Western Division Royal Garrison Artillery. (2 4·7 guns.)
 No. 2 Company, Western Division Royal Garrison Artillery. (2 12-inch guns.)
 No. 10 Mountain Battery. (2 12-inch guns.)
 61st Howitzer Battery, Royal Field Artillery. (6 5-inch Howitzers.)
 Nos. 3 and 4 Pom Poms.
 Corps Troops Ammunition Column.
 Movable remount depot.
 Supply park.
 Indian mule train.

The Boers held the successive hills with 13 guns, pom-poms and machine guns, on the south-west of Amersfoort; and these were assaulted and carried by the troops on August 7. The 3rd Mounted Brigade covered the left and left front, while the regiment was in advance of the brigade.

The behaviour of the regiment on this occasion was excellent. The whole of it screened the front and flanks during the march, and by skilful work on the part of the corps the enemy's positions were turned and he was forced to retire. The brigade had often to change direction so that the squadron covering the advance would at times be covering the left flank and the flanking squadron would be taking the advance. This took place to the north of Amersfoort, and after a march of two or three miles, opposed by the enemy, "B" squadron entered the town under fire.

Major Snyder and Major Jarvis showed much skill in the handling of their squadrons, whilst Captain Mackie, the Adjutant of the corps, rendered me every assistance. Major Belcher, 2nd in command, in charge of the reserve, handled it splendidly until it was expended, and then made his presence felt in every part of the field where he was required. The officers of the regiment worked so well that it would be hard to make individual mention, but the following non-commissioned officers and men came under my observation :

No. 459 Squadron Sergeant Major Richards, who had charge of a troop and turned during the day a strong position held by the Boers.

No. 269 Sergeant Whitehead.

No. 517 Sergeant Nelles, in charge of the advance scouts.

No. 346 Private Pym.

Casualties, No. 402, Pte. W. E. S. Menteth.

Owing to the dense fog and the delay in bringing up the transport on account of grass fires encountered by it during the long march, the force halted on the 8th.

We got into bivouac late on the night of August 9. The regiment formed the advance on that day and was persistently opposed by the enemy, who occupied the dongas and ravines of which there were many in the vicinity of Rolfontein. Finally the Boers were driven out by our scouts aided by the pom-pom, which did excellent practice under Lt. Magee and No. 396, Corp. Bell.

On the 11th in marching from Begin Der Lyn on Ermelo we experienced a severe dust storm, making it a very trying day on the men and horses. The town was entered by "B" Squadron, and Major Jarvis under orders performed the duties usually assigned to the Provost Marshal. The buildings were searched and a considerable number of rifles seized. The advance having been so rapid the Infantry and trains found it impossible to make the distance in the day, so that the 3rd Mounted Brigade halted here until the 12th, continuing the advance to Klip Stapel on that day.

On the 14th, during the march to Witbank, I was ordered to send a portion of the regiment to take Carolina, an important town situated a few miles off the road we were taking. They were to hold the place until it was searched by the Intelligence Corps of the army. Major Belcher, with "C" Squadron under Captain Cameron, and a troop of "A" Squadron under Lt. Harper, was sent to perform the duty. Considerable resistance was made by a force of the enemy in the town for the purpose of obtaining supplies for the left wing of Botha's army, then in a strongly entrenched position extending from a point north of the railway near Belfast, south to Geluk farm. The troops under Major Belcher behaved splendidly, attacking and carrying the town in the face of a heavy fire. The magazine was blown up and the town thoroughly searched by Major Henderson.

Casualties, No. 30 Pte. Norris, shot through lungs. Ptes. No. 624 Carey, No. 155 Saxby, and No. 255 Pte. Stewart, scouting to the south of the town failed to rejoin the Squadron when a withdrawal was ordered, and on account of the darkness were unable to get back to camp. They, therefore, remained until early the following morning, protecting themselves by deceiving the people into the belief that they were a patrol from a large force surrounding the town. They gained a lot of valuable information as to Botha's strength in men and guns, and also as to the position he had taken up in our front.

The men arrived in camp at Twyfelaar at five the next day, having been pursued nearly all the way by small parties of Boers. They were highly complimented by Lord Dundonald, who considered the information gathered to be of much value.

The force halted at Twyfelaar until the 20th, but the duties were heavy and dangerous as we were now nearly in front of the position in which the Boers were to make their "last stand." Large commandos of the enemy were in the vicinity, and our patrols and the outposts were under the continual fire of snipers.

The following, taken from the regimental diary, explains the part taken by the regiment in the operations made against Botha in his position in the vicinity of Machadodorp, and in the pursuit which followed when driven from that position:—

August 21.—The brigade marched this morning at 8.10 for Van Wyks Vlei, South African Light Horse leading, Strathcona's Horse covering right and rear. "C" squadron under Captain Cameron formed the rear guard. On the right to-day the firing was very heavy, the Gordons and Second Cavalry Brigade suffering considerable loss. Twelve wounded Highlanders came through the lines and were treated by our surgeon. "B" squadron went on outpost duty to-night, connecting with infantry on left and cavalry on right.

August 22.—Halt to-day. Heavy artillery fire to east and north of camp all day. Enemy's position on first ridge taken last night.

August 23.—Marched at 6 a.m., brigade protecting right and rear. Heavy firing on right front. In the vicinity of Geluk the enemy unmasked their guns and fired shell and pom-pom. South African Light Horse in front had 6 men wounded. The casualties among infantry were heavy, the Liverpool's loss being 14 killed, 40 wounded and 40 missing. Halted at Geluk Farm. "C" squadron on outpost duty on right to-night.

August 24.—Regiment for duty South African Light Horse, picquetting the hills to north-east of camp. During the night orders came for regiment to be ready for duty at daybreak, the order was cancelled. There was heavy artillery fire to north, north-west and north-east of camp. The enemy replying, their shells exploding, though not effectually, in all parts of the camp. The enemy also directed a pom-pom fire on the S.A.L.H. picquets on the rocky kopje to N.E. So hot was the fire that 2 guns of "A" Battery Royal Horse Artillery were unable to reply and had to keep under cover till dark.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

August 25.—Regiment for duty with 4th Division Mounted Infantry. Hills picquetted. Under severe fire all day. The regimental pom-pom took up position on the rocky kopje and fired a large number of rounds.

August 26.—Broke camp this morning. "B" and "C" squadrons, under Major Jarvis and Captain Cameron, were ordered into trenches at day-break and occupied them until late in afternoon, supported by R.H.A. and pom-pom. The trenches were so situated that in leaving the men were exposed to the enemy's fire for about 600 yards. The conduct of the men to-day was a splendid example of courage, exposed as they were to an extremely heavy rifle and shell fire. It was really wonderful that so few were hit when a retirement was ordered. Ammunition expended, 12,500 rounds small arm, 500 rounds pom-pom. Camped at Vogelstruitpoort.

August 27.—Marched this morning at 6.30. Three squadrons, S.A.L.H., relieved Gordon Highlanders on outpost at six. Strathcona's Horse covered the left flank, and on the right a general engagement occupied nearly the whole of the day. The rocky kopje at Bergendal Farm, so persistently held by the enemy in the face of a terrible artillery fire, was finally carried after a magnificent attack made by the Rifle Brigade, assisted by the Inniskilling Fusiliers.

Camped at Bergendal.

August 28.—The brigade marched at 6 a.m. for Delmanutha, arriving there without opposition. A short distance past the station, S.A.L.H. leading, the brigade came in contact with the enemy, and Strathcona's Horse were brought up in support, two squadrons under Major Belcher being sent to the left. The firing ceased for a time and the squadrons returned, advancing with the remainder of the corps to the next rise which overlooked the town. The enemy had been shelling the brigade at intervals, but here when Lord Dundonald ordered the regiment to dismount, the shells, well directed, came quickly. Soon after, "A" squadron, under Captain Cartwright, entered the town, the remainder of the brigade following. Passing through, the regiment ascended the high hill and met a heavy Long Tom and high velocity shell fire till dark.

The brigade camped on the heights to north of Machadodorp.

August 29.—Brigade marched at seven, Strathcona's Horse leading. "B" Squadron, under Major Jarvis, in front, passed over the mountain range and supported by No. 2 troop under Lieut. Christie, entered Helvetia and pushed on two miles farther. Returning to Helvetia the regiment was collected and proceeded by road to right for the purpose of reconnoitering Watervaal Boven. No. 2 Troop "C" Squadron, under Lieut. McDonald, was in front and succeeded in getting very close to the town in face of heavy fire. Gen. French's force then came up, and as they were to march through Watervaal Boven towards Barberton to-morrow, we left the ground gained to him and returned to camp at Helvetia. The forces under Gen. Sir Redvers Buller, Lt.-General Pole-Carew and Lt.-General French coming by different routes, concentrated at this point this morning.

August 30.—The brigade marched this morning to the heights overlooking Nooitgedacht about twelve miles from Helvetia. The country is extremely rough and mountainous, resembling in places the untimbered portions of British Columbia. Considerable sniping took place but there were no casualties. Arriving on the ground it was ascertained that owing to this movement, the British prisoners at the Boer laagar had been released and that 1,800 of them were streaming down the railway in the valley below. Lt. Leckie with six men was sent to reconnoitre the town and inform General French of our presence on the heights. The object of the advance having been effected the brigade returned, camping at Vluichtfontein for the night.

August 31.—Halt to-day.

September 1.—Force marched at 7.30, Strathcona's in advance. Came in contact with enemy at Crocodile River where bridge crosses. Pom-pom and R. H. A. were brought up, shelled the conical kopje and the enemy, pressed back, camped a mile from the bridge. "B" Squadron put out picquets for the night and took a Boer prisoner when in the act of sniping. Before going into camp the country to the front was scouted and valuable information gained.

Casualties, No. 151, Private McGillivray, missing.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Early on the morning of the 2nd September the whole force was prepared to move to Lydenburg, 8 miles further on, but it was extremely doubtful whether such a move could be made at once, as information had been received that the enemy intended to hold the high and rugged ridge which extended across the valley, a glance at which would convince one that should it be occupied by any force at all it could be easily held, as a frontal attack would be suicidal and the nature of the country was such as to make a flanking movement impossible. The 3rd Mounted Brigade was ordered forward to reconnoitre the hill and to develop the strength of any force occupying it. This was done but we were exposed to one of the most severe artillery fires of the war. It was found that the whole of Botha's army with fourteen guns were entrenched, and that they could only be moved by a force taking them on the flank by the Belfast road, which ran along the heights, rising like a wall 1,500 feet high on our left. We returned to our bivouac after dark and halted until 6th September, the day on which General Ian Hamilton, operating on the Belfast-Lydenburg road, arrived at the kloof and made the enemy's position untenable.

During the time we were halted here the regiment in its turn formed the outposts and other duties for the protection of the camp, and on the 3rd September, while trying to occupy a high ridge to the right of camp on which our scouts expected the enemy were trying to mount a gun, we met with a heavy loss, in fact the most severe we experienced in a single day during the war.

It being our turn for outpost duty Lieut. Leckie was sent to form an observation post on the ridge mentioned, but finding the ground occupied by a considerable force of Boers he sent to me for support. I reported to Lord Dundonald, who advised me to send out two troops. This was done. Lts. Kirkpatrick and Tobin commanding. In proceeding over the rough rocky ground, which was the feature of the hill, they became entangled with the enemy, with the result that the following non-commissioned officers and men were killed :—

No. 465 Sgt. J. Brothers. No. 508 Pte. Cruickshanks.

Previous to this, at the time when Lieut. Leckie was sent out, Sgt. Logan with a section of men proceeded up the hill to occupy a point further to the front, met the enemy at close quarters and refusing to surrender were, all but one man, killed. The following are the names :—

No. 465 Sgt. Logan. No. 284 Pte. West. No. 297 Pte. Jones. No. 312 Pte. Wiggins.

During our halt at Badfontein our losses were 6 killed, 2 wounded and one missing.

We reached Lydenburg on the 7th September and had our camp shelled the same evening by Long Toms in position on the high range towards Spitz Kop. Anticipating a continuation of the shelling in the morning, I ordered reveille for 4.30, so that when it commenced I would be ready to take advantage of the cover of a donga close by. The enemy opened again at 8 in the morning but the men were all under cover.

Sir Redvers Buller attacked the position towards noon, and carried it in the evening, our brigade being on left flank of the advance. During the next three days we drove the enemy before us over the rough ground between Lydenburg and the Mauchberg and through the Devil's Knuckles to Spitz Kop. The work was very hard for mounted men, as it was impossible in many places to leave the road which wound up and down and around the rugged mountains all the way. Our maxim guns did splendid work on 10th September when the brigade was close upon the Boers transport. The regiment was first over the Mauchberg, and at the foot of the hill, hidden in a ravine, Lieut. Tobin found several tons of Boer stores, which they had hidden in their haste.

The next day the corps made a dash after a Long Tom in position on the road about three miles in front, but on account of no support being available Sir Redvers Buller ordered me not to go any further. The gun was shifted, however, and we captured a wagon load of shells, beside the gun's derrick and sight. Sir Redvers characterized the work of the corps on this day as dashing and well carried out, and expressed himself so to me in person.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Our casualties during the three days' operations, amounted to two men wounded, as follows :—

No. 193 Corp. Flintoff.

No. 386 Pte. Nicholson.

On September 12 the King's Royal Rifles attacked the enemy's position on the main road, while Lord Strathcona's Horse carried the high hills on the left. The enemy then fell back before us, and soon the whole of Botha's army was seen in full retreat to the north, but a tremendous ravine, some miles in width, extended across our front and prevented a further advance until the main body of the force reached the Spitz Kop.

We halted at Spitz Kop until September 23, but during the time, in addition to furnishing a strong guard over Glyn's Lydenburg mine at Sabi Drift, we also found a number of outposts and escorts for convoys going to Neil Spruit on the railway.

During the time which 'B' squadron, under Major Jarvis, was on guard at Glyn's Lydenburg mine, several of the enemy were captured, as well as 5,000 sheep and about 2,000 head of cattle.

On September 25, we arrived at Sabi Drift, and following day at Mac Mac again came in contact with the enemy, who directed a heavy fire at us from the Pilgrims Rest, Lydenburg Road. The position was a strong one, but the Devons, covered by a heavy artillery fire, assaulted the heights, driving the Boers back.

The next day, Strathcona's Horse, in advance of the 3rd Mounted Brigade, the force marched for Pilgrims Rest, and after considerable opposition directed against us from the vicinity of the town, our men entered under a heavy fire, capturing some of the enemy and guarding the place until the following day, when Sir Redvers Buller withdrew on his way back to Lydenburg via Kruger's Post.

After ascending the high hill south of Pilgrims' Rest, the force halted to rest the transport animals at Morgansen's Nek, and on October 1 descended into the Valley, commanded near Kruger's Post by a high rocky ridge, from which the Boers intended to shell us as we advanced. Sir Redvers Buller, however, ordered the 2nd Cavalry Brigade up from Lydenburg, and this movement forced the Boers to the right to the hills overlooking the Ohrigstad Valley. A lot of sniping took place at intervals, but the fire was particularly heavy at the forks of road near the ridge referred to, and artillery fire was necessary to clear the way.

In coming up from Lydenburg the cavalry failed to scout the range of hills about 6,000 yards to the right of Kruger's Post, and the enemy, taking advantage of it, posted guns and shelled us from 3 o'clock in the afternoon until 9 at night, killing a number of the horses of the regiment and wounding severely No. 370 Pte. E. Seymour.

We halted at Lydenburg until October 5, and on that day the 3rd Mounted Brigade returned with Sir Redvers Buller to Machadodorp, reaching that place without incident on the 8th. When near the town, I was ordered to hurry in as Sir Redvers Buller wished to address the regiment before leaving for Pretoria en route for England. Sir Redvers spoke in very complimentary terms, and concluded his address with the following words :—

'I have never been served with a nobler, braver or more serviceable body of men. It shall be my privilege when I meet my friend, Lord Strathcona, to tell him what a magnificent body of men bear his name.'

The Natal Field Force having been broken up at Machadodorp, I was ordered to prepare to march with Gen. French's column to Standerton. This order, however, was changed, it being arranged that we should turn over our horses to the 6th Dragoon Guards, and proceed by train to Pretoria. This was done, and the regiment arrived there on the 14th, going into camp.

At Pretoria I was ordered to prepare for further service in the field, new remounts were given to us, and the men fitted out with everything they required that could be got.

On October 20, the regiment marched for Elandsfontein, arriving there on the afternoon of the 21st. The next day we entrained again and were taken to Welverdend, a station about 50 miles west Johannesburg. Here I found that we were to form part of a column going to reinforce the 6th Brigade, under General Barton, at Frederickstad.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

The Elswick Battery, Brabant's Horse, Dublin Fusiliers, and the Essex Regiment arrived the next day, and on the 25th, Strathcona's Horse in advance, the column marched. Three hundred Boers held the ridge on the left, which was covered by our men, and at one time the pom-pom was brought into action. The column arrived at Frederickstad about noon, in time to be present at the fight in which the Scotch Fusiliers, the Welsh Fusiliers and Imperial Light Horse inflicted such heavy loss on DeWet's Force at this place.

Col. Hicks, who commanded the column, complimented the regiment on the careful and satisfactory way in which the column had been protected during the march. The corps now entered upon a period of very hard work. De Wet, taking advantage of the rugged country lying from the railway south to the Vaal, made it the centre from which all his operations were directed. In addition to this, Delarey was known to be in the hills across the valley to the north, and the greatest watchfulness was necessary to prevent the two forces joining hands. A number of night and early morning marches were made by the troops, and as the rainy season had set in, the men were in a most uncomfortable condition all the time.

On the 28th of October the regiment formed the advance of a force sent out under Sir John Colleton, to locate DeWet. Marching at dawn the scouts of the corps found a large force of the enemy at Boschoek. The men of the corps deserve the greatest credit for this work, as in spite of misleading reports by residents and Kaffirs they worked carefully and skillfully until they discovered large numbers of the enemy in a well planned ambush.

The district lying from Krugersdorp to Potchesfstroom had been gone over in August, but the railway line was not kept open or the towns garrisoned. It was now found necessary to do so, and the force under General Barton was employed for some time at this work. The first march to Potchesfstroom was made on the October 30, when the regiment formed the advance. Nothing of importance occurred, although the greatest care had to be taken. On the night of the 31st, while a small party of the regiment was guarding one of the bridges near the town, a number of Boers boldly attacked, but were easily driven off. One of them left his horse and rifle behind.

On November 4 we again moved out of Frederickstad at 3 a.m. to reconnoitre the country to the south-east as far as Buffelsdoorn Pass. We were in contact with the enemy all day. All the houses and villages were searched and 250 head of cattle captured.

On November 4, at 9 in the evening, we again marched to Potchesfstroom, and by a series of operations cleared the country round of the enemy and allowed the safe entry of the first railway train in some months. The Coldstream Guards were left to garrison the town, the remainder of the force returning to Frederickstad on the 6th.

At 2 a.m. on the 8th we marched in advance of a column to surround a village 6 miles west of camp. The Boer picquets fell back to the north-westward as we advanced and a chain of cossack posts was put out with supports between the village and range of hills. "B" Squadron, under Major Jarvis then entered the village, with orders to search for Boers and to burn houses occupied by them. No prisoners were taken, but a number of houses were destroyed. A heavy fire was directed at us from the direction of the hills, but it was soon subdued by our pom pom.

On the evening of the 9th I received orders to march at 1 in the morning to hold a line on the plain extending from Buffelsdoorn Pass to near Boschep, to be in position at 4 a.m. We reached the post in front of Deel Kraal at 4.30 and threw out a line of picquets as far as the pass, three troops under Captain Cameron with the pom pom in support. We held the place until the afternoon, when a withdrawal was ordered. The regiment was under continual fire, which during retirement increased, and the pom pom was used. The regiment captured 600 cattle and a large number of sheep.

Casualties: No. 39, Pte. Treston; wounded and missing, No. 132, Pte. Read.

The latter returned during the next day, having escaped from the Boers during the night. He brought very valuable information.

General Barton, thinking that the work of the regiment was worthy of notice, wrote to me as follows:—

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

"I cannot speak too highly of the practical and effective manner in which the duty assigned to your splendid corps was carried out by yourself and all under your command yesterday, and I have specially mentioned this in my report to the Field Marshal, commanding in chief. I only regret that circumstances prevented my supporting your movement by advancing further with the main body. The capture of stock is most satisfactory. I much regret the casualty of one man wounded and one missing."

On the 13th, the whole of the brigade, with the exception of a small garrison left at Frederickstad, marched under Gen. Barton to Potchesfstroom, and the following day the corps, in advance of a large force, marched on Klerksdorp with a large convoy of supplies for General Douglas. Considerable resistance was expected, but it did not materialize to any great extent, although the firing was heavy at times.

We turned over thirty days' supplies to General Douglas on our arrival at Klerksdorp on the 16th, and commenced the return march the following day, arriving at Potchesfstroom on the 18th.

A lamentable incident occurred in the lines on the 21st, when No. 157, Pte. Scott, of Regina, was accidentally shot dead by a comrade. It appears that while handing a rifle to Pte. Scott No. 132, Pte. Read, in some way touched the trigger and the weapon went off. The accident cast a gloom over the regiment, as Pte. Scott was very popular. He had gone through the whole campaign with credit to himself and the Corps.

The regiment remained at Potchesfstroom until November 29, furnishing in its turn the various duties necessary for the protection of the town, scouting the country round and occasionally going out with other troops for the capture of cattle and supplies.

On the 29th we left by train under orders for Aliwal North, in Cape Colony, but at Bethulie at 11 p.m. on December 2, I was ordered to detrain. This was done, and at midnight we marched with Col. Long's column, joining General Knox's force at dawn. We then moved in support of the artillery until about 7 o'clock, when, coming into contact with the enemy, I was ordered to place a hundred men to support some of the Seaforth Highlanders and Irish Yeomanry who were supposed to be at a farm about the centre of the enemy's position. Col. Herbert's column attacked on the right, our column the centre and another brigade the left. I took "B" Squadron and moved along the donga, so that I might take advantage of the cover it afforded in proceeding to the farm. A wire fence impeded us, and whilst cutting it we were exposed to a severe fire from the left and lost nine horses killed. I pushed the Squadron up the donga, sent back for the other two which were forced to go through the same ordeal. I then ordered up the pom pom, which did excellent work under the skilful handling of Lieut. Laidlaw. Major Jarvis with his Squadron attacked and took possession of the sangers and kraals. He was ably assisted by Lieuts. Kirpatrick and Tobin. Major Belcher then took the support, galloped across to the farm, under fire, and established himself there. Afterwards Major Jarvis with 'B' Squadron carried the kopjes in front and on the right and left. A troop of 'C' Squadron under Captain Boyd, R.C.R.I., after driving some of the enemy from a kopje on the left were, through a mistake of an officer of the artillery, fired upon and one of the men was wounded by lyddite. It was fortunate the aim was not accurate or the whole of the troop would have been destroyed. The behaviour of the officers and men was all that could be desired, and Lieuts. Kirkpatrick and Tobin deserve special mention.

The enemy fell back from his position and towards night the regiment was relieved at the farm by the Highlanders.

On December 5 the column marched in pursuit. Torrents of rain fell all day, and when we halted for the night at Wessel's farm we were all drenched. We took advantage of the houses and sheds there to dry our clothes. The following morning the march was continued to a drift on the Caledon river. When the regiment arrived the river was still considered fordable and part of the column had succeeded in crossing, but now the water had risen to such an extent that the regiment, with a portion of the transport, had to remain until the rain ceased. We therefore went into bivouac, and placing marks on the bank I found, about three in the morning, that the water had lowered sufficiently to permit of a crossing being attempted. I then paraded the regi-

ment and proceeding in Indian file, twenty feet from head to crop, succeeded in getting the whole regiment across in about half an hour. Soon after the river again rose, making it impossible for the transport to get over, and it was sent back to Comassi Bridge under an escort commanded by Lieut. Leckie of "C" Squadron. In crossing the stream, which was very swift, some of the men of the other corps were nearly drowned and were rescued by members of Lord Strathcona's Horse.

On December 7 we moved in advance of the column at 4.30. About four miles out where the road forked, I heard a heavy artillery fire on the left front, and as the road to the left led to Comassi bridge, it was evident that DeWet was trying to force a passage. I reported to Col. Barker, who stated, that as General Knox feared an attack on Rouxville it would be necessary to follow the road to the front. This was done, and we arrived on the heights overlooking the town soon after. The place was not attacked.

Halted at Rouxville on the 8th, and on the 9th we marched at 6.30 p.m., making 12 miles in about three hours, halting at Comassi bridge, where we found that DeWet had attacked the post on the 7th with his artillery and pom pom, and it was only on account of the determined stand made by the Infantry guard that prevented him from forcing a passage.

The Force halted here again on the 10th, but Lieut. Kirkpatrick's and Lieut. Tobin's troops were sent out to ascertain the whereabouts of the enemy. These officers were complimented by General Barton upon the manner in which the work was carried out. It was now evident that the enemy was not more than eight miles off.

The pursuit was continued through Smithfield to Helvetia Farm, where, on December 12, we again came in contact with the enemy. His convoy could be seen about four miles off passing through a nek commanded on both sides by a range of rough rocky kopjes. Col. White's column was in advance this day, and coming under fire at Helvetia Farm, Col. Barker's column moved along to turn the enemy's left, and Col. Williams his right. The Regiment formed the advance of Col. Barker's column and I was ordered to move along the enemy's left flank and bring him to a stand, which I proceeded to do as rapidly as possible, and was soon nearly two miles in advance. A heavy fire was directed at us from the right of Helvetia Farm, where the advance of the Regiment pressed the enemy hard. A heavy fire was also opened on the support and reserve at long range, the bullets whistling through the ranks but without hitting anyone. I turned the enemy's right and came into a position where the whole of his convoy was in full view. I then sent to the rear for guns, but it was impossible to send them up, as the General was under the impression that they were required in another quarter. I pushed on, supported by the 9th Lancers, coming directly on the left flank of the convoy, and closed up to very short range, firing with the pom pom and machine guns when necessary. By evening we were about ten miles in advance of the spot where we first met with a fire, and the enemy then placed a strong force to resist us, owing to the road running through a long, deep valley, and as strong support was necessary to drive them out, and as night was coming on, I halted there until the column came up.

On the 13th and 14th we made long and effective marches in pursuit of DeWet's column. At times, when on the high ground, we could see him in full retreat. By marching at night and having any number of remounts, he had been able to gain some. On the 15th we marched through Dreifontein at 5.30, and at 9 came in sight of Spring Hook Nek and Thaba N'chu. At this point, a heliograph message was received to the effect that DeWet was forcing his way through the nek, under fire, and that Col. Thorneycroft, with his Regiment of Mounted infantry, was opposing him. General Knox then directed Colonel White to take the left towards Thaba N'chu and Colonel Williams' column the right, whilst Colonel Barker's column, to which we were attached, was to move in the centre. We made Spring Hook Nek, 30 miles, by 4.30, and halted. We found here that Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry were unable to hold the Pass, but that De Wet had suffered a severe loss in forcing a passage; Thorneycroft's Infantry succeeded in capturing 60,000 rounds of ammunition and a pom pom. Considering the great odds against Colonel Thorneycroft, it was generally considered that he had done well.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

We lay all day at Spring Hook Nek on the 16th waiting for supplies, and marched on the morning of the 17th towards Makola, near Holstein, where the Boers were supposed to be entrenched in a strong position upon the kopjes in that vicinity. The information we had, went to show that at least 4,000 of the enemy were there, and under ordinary circumstances a stand would be made, but as the column approached, the enemy retired, although at times we met with a heavy fire. During the marches between Spring Hook Nek and Clocolan, at which place we arrived on the 22nd, the Regiment was continually employed in furnishing patrols and scouting parties to ascertain the strength of the enemy, and they were carried out in such a way as to excite the admiration of all the troops. We were to remain at Clocolan until supplies arrived, but on the 23rd we got the order to march to search the country for forage. The squadron under Major Jarvis was to march towards the North, examine the dongas, and at the same time protect the right of Col. Williams' column. In performing this duty Major Jarvis found it necessary to send a small party of three men to occupy a post on a neighbouring ridge. In going up the men found themselves at close quarters with a body of the enemy. No. 368, Pte. Ingram, was killed, and No. 337, Corporal McDonnell, wounded. Three of the Boers were killed and two wounded.

On the 26th we made a long night march, moving on Ficksburg through Basutoland. Around Ficksburg we operated until the 28th, destroying mills, and succeeded also in capturing a quantity of ammunition.

On the 30th we came in contact with the enemy at Kaffir Kop. The position was a strong one and the regiment met with a severe fire all day in operating against it. The position was turned and the enemy moved back. There were no casualties, though it is remarkable that some of the men were not either killed or wounded.

On the 3rd of January, out of Lindley, Lord Strathcona's Horse formed the advance guard of Colonel Barker's column. When we reached Colonel White's camp, some miles further on, we found that a party of the Commander-in-chief's Body Guard, in escorting Piet De Wet, who had surrendered to us, to his farm, was fired upon and a number killed and wounded. We were then moved on with directions to drive the enemy out and cover the party bringing in the dead and wounded. In performing this duty we captured a wagon containing a large quantity of supplies.

On the 4th we joined Colonel White, who the day before had moved on about six miles, and learned that Colonel Lang of the Commander-in-chief's Body Guard had been sent out with a squadron in the morning to reconnoitre, with the result that he came upon an ambushade and was killed, together with a large number of his men. It was a sad affair, and cast a gloom over the whole camp.

On the 6th the regiment furnished the rear guard, and were pressed closely all day by the enemy. Stimulated by his success with the Body Guard, the enemy showed a boldness almost unknown to us, but towards evening we laid a little trap for them, into which they fell and a number of them were killed. We were not troubled in the rear again for a day or two.

On the 8th of January, the regiment again formed the rear guard during the march through the dangerous country lying between Lindley and Kroonstadt. The left flank was in contact with the enemy from the time we left, and at times our rear was attacked by small parties of the enemy at long range. We halted to feed the horses on the Vet River at 1.30, and then commenced the march through the district where so many rear guards had met with heavy loss. When the bridge was reached, I found that the enemy had gathered in large numbers on the rocky kopjes, but covered by the machine guns on the other bank, and by being careful, we managed to cross without a casualty. It was a very trying day, as the transport was only able to make on an average a little over a mile an hour.

The column reached Kroonstadt on the 9th of January, and on the 10th our horses were handed over to the officer in charge of the Remount Depot at that place, and it was generally understood, in fact it was pointed out to the Commander-in-chief, that as our time of service had expired, and as the men were largely interested in business in Canada, that it would be a hardship to keep them in the country any longer. We entrained on the 11th, and moved to Elandsfontein, arriving there the following day. I was

informed at this place that it had been decided to send the regiment home direct, but later on I received further information to the effect that Lord Strathcona had made arrangements so that the regiment would visit England on its way. We were ordered to entrain for Cape Town on the 15th, but before doing so the Commander-in-chief, Lord Kitchener, inspected the regiment and thanked the officers and men for the work they had done. He told us that we had marched through nearly every section of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, now under British control, and that he had never heard anything but good of the corps. He stated also that the regiment would be greatly pleased if he told them the number of letters he had received from generals all over the country asking for Strathcona's Horse.

We arrived at Cape Town on the 20th and immediately embarked on the "Lake Erie" for London. Before sailing, I called on the High Commissioner, Sir Alfred Milner, who spoke very highly of the services rendered to the Empire by Lord Strathcona's Horse.

The weather was fine during the whole of the voyage, and, with the exception of six cases of enteric fever which developed on the ship, there was no sickness at all.

Arriving at Gravesend on the 13th February, the men suffering from enteric fever were taken off and placed in hospital, and as this took considerable time, the ship missed the tide and we were obliged to remain there all day. I was met here by several of the members of the Colonial Entertainment Committee, who submitted a magnificent programme for the entertainment of the regiment in England. I also received orders that the regiment would be employed on arrival in the morning in lining the streets through which His Majesty the King would drive in proceeding to Westminster to open his first Parliament. The honour of being allowed to take some small part in this historic event was fully appreciated by all ranks.

On our arrival at the Royal Albert docks on the 14th, the corps immediately disembarked and proceeded by train to Kensington Barracks, from where we marched to Pall Mall, taking up a position there.

On the 15th the regiment was inspected by His Majesty King Edward VII, after which he presented every officer and man on parade with the South African War medal, the first issued to any troops in that war. His Majesty also presented the regiment with the King's Colours, and in doing so spoke as follows :—

"It was the intention of my late mother to present you with this colour. I do so now, and ask you to guard it in her name and in mine."

Before the regiment marched off, His Majesty addressed it in the following terms :

"Colonel Steele, officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates,—I welcome you here on these shores on your return from active service in South Africa.

"I know it would have been the ardent wish of my beloved mother, our revered Queen, to have welcomed you also, but that was not to be : but, be assured, she deeply appreciated the services you have rendered as I do.

"It has given me great satisfaction to inspect you to-day, and to have presented you with your war medals, and also with the King's colour. I feel sure that in confiding this colour to you, Colonel Steele, and to those under you, that you will always defend it and will do your duty as you have done during the past year in South Africa, and will do on all future occasions.

"I am glad that Lord Strathcona is here to-day, as it is owing to him that this magnificent force has been equipped, and sent out. I can only hope that your short sojourn in England may be agreeable to you, and that you will return safely home to your friends and relatives.

"Be assured that neither I nor the British nation will ever forget the valuable services you have rendered in South Africa."

During our stay in London everything was done by Lord Strathcona, the Colonial Entertainment Committee, and the people generally, to make the visit enjoyable. The many places of interest and the theatres were thrown open. Splendid arrangements were made by the Committee to enable the men to visit all these places, by placing brakes and guides at their disposal. In addition to this, there was a disposition on the part of the people to show us some individual attention, and it soon got so that we felt undeserving of it all.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Lord Strathcona gave two luncheons to the men on the 18th and 21st, which were attended by the Earl of Aberdeen, the Marquis of Hertford, the Earl of Dundonald, the Duke of Abercorn, Lord Stanley, and many other gentlemen of distinction.

The corps left London at 7.30 on the 23rd, and at Liverpool we were the guests of the Lord Mayor, Mr. Arthur Crosswaite. We were met by a very large crowd, who showed the greatest enthusiasm during the march from the station to St. George's Hall. After luncheon the regiment marched to the Town Hall, and were addressed from the balcony by the Lord Mayor, who spoke very eloquently of the service rendered by the corps to the Empire. The regiment was then marched to the ship, about two miles distant, the streets being thronged. The quays were also crowded with people who came to cheer us off. During the luncheon at St. George's Hall, a number of eloquent and patriotic speeches were made by several of the distinguished gentlemen present, also the guests of the Lord Mayor.

The honours paid us while in London, and at Liverpool as well, will always remain in the memory of the members of the corps.

A number of men remained in England on furlough, the remainder sailing from Liverpool on the "Numidian" on the 23rd, arriving at Halifax on the 9th, after a stormy passage.

The regiment left Halifax on the same day, and along the route from there to Ottawa we were met by large numbers of people who wished to welcome us home. At Moncton, I was presented with an address from the loyal people of that town. Arriving at Montreal on the morning of the 11th, the regiment was received by the band of the Garrison Artillery and by a great many citizens.

All ranks are deeply grateful to yourself and the members of the Military Staff for the kindness extended during the organization of the regiment here, and since that time, to Lord Strathcona, who has been kindness itself.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

S. B. STEELE, Lt.-Col.

APPENDIX G (1).

The following is taken from the *London Gazette* of February, 1901, being an extract from a despatch of General Sir Redvers Buller, dated November 9, 1900 :—

“ LORD STRATHCONA’S HORSE.

“ Joined the Force in June, and from the moment of their arrival, they served with marked success. I can hardly speak too highly of the value Strathcona’s Horse have been to the Natal Field Force.

“ Lieut.-Colonel S. B. Steele, commanding, has great influence with all ranks in his regiment. Having a thorough knowledge of frontier work, his services have been most valuable.

“ Major A. M. Jarvis, Major R. Belcher, Captain and Adjutant E. F. Mackie, and Lieutenant R. H. B. Magee, have done excellent service throughout, and proved themselves most useful soldiers in every duty they were called upon to perform.

“ The following warrant and non-commissioned officers and men have been brought to my notice as having specially distinguished themselves :—

Regimental Serjeant-Major J. Hynes.
No. 517 Sergeant H. W. Nelles.
No. 87 Armourer-Sergeant J. R. Brigham.
No. 457 Corporal A. K. McLellan.
No. 35 Private C. W. Rooke.
No. 476 Private G. Gamsby.
No. 362 Private W. F. Graham.
No. 98 Private A. C. Garner.

“ The remark I have made about the South African Light Horse applies equally in this case, and I subjoin a list of names :—*

Major A. E. Snyder.
Captain G. W. Cameron.
Captain F. L. Cartwright.
Lieutenant F. Harper.
Lieutenant J. A. Benyon.
Lieutenant P. Fall.
Lieutenant J. F. Macdonald.
Lieutenant J. E. Leckie.
Lieutenant T. E. Pooley.
Lieutenant A. E. Christie.
Surgeon-Lieutenant C. B. Keenan.
Lieutenant W. Parker (Quartermaster).
Lieutenant E. J. Snider (Transport Officer).
Lieutenant E. J. Steele (Paymaster).

* In referring to the South African Light Horse Sir Redvers Buller states in his despatch :—“ In a corps like the South African Light Horse it will be difficult to reward good work except by public notice. I do not know whether it may be found possible to do so, but in case it should be, I append a list of those officers and men who, during the twelve months’ work, have performed special acts of bravery, or have been selected for, and successfully carried out, arduous reconnaissances or dangerous duties.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

Lieutenant A. McMillan (Veterinary Officer).
Lieutenant A. H. L. Kyle (attached).
Civil Surgeon A. E. Houseman.
No. 459 Squadron Sergeant-Major Richards.
No. 462 Sergeant-Trumpeter J. Farmer.
No. 49 Sergeant R. H. Moir.
No. 260 Farrier-Sergeant A. Gillies.
No. 468 Sergeant J. S. Lambert.
No. 49 Sergeant G. Clarke.
No. 269 Sergeant C. A. W. Whitehead.
No. 315 Sergeant S. A. Kelly.
No. 314 Sergeant P. G. Routh.
No. 15 Corporal E. H. Clarke.
No. 102 Corporal Alex. Norquay.
No. 207 Corporal W. M. Lafferty.
No. 492 Corporal F. Mulligan.
No. 337 Corporal C. R. McDonald.
No. 328 Corporal R. N. Grogan.
No. 457 Corporal Read.
No. 85 Private J. E. V. Carpenter.
No. 204 Private C. E. Kindrew.
No. 292 Private R. Hammond.
No. 155 Private H. D. Saxby.
No. 135 Private A. W. Stewart.
No. 490 Private J. T. Waite.
No. 506 Private J. Devine.
No. 264 Private S. A. White.
No. 286 Private R. Dearing.
No. 346 Private T. M. L. Pym.

APPENDIX G (2.)

NOMINAL ROLL of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of Lord Strathcona's Horse killed in action, or died of wounds received in action.

Reg. No.	Rank.	Name.	Place.	Date.	Where buried.
402	Pte.	Arnold, F. G.	Watervaal	11- 8-1900	Watervaal.
465	Sgt.	Brothers, J.	Badfontein	4- 9-1900	Badfontein.
508	Pte.	Cruickshank, C.	"	4- 9-1900	"
368	"	Ingram, W. H.	Clocolan.	2- 12 1900	Clocolan.
509	"	Jenkins, A.	Watervaal.	1- 7-1900	Watervaal.
297	"	J nes, A.	Badfontein	4- 9-1900	Badfontein.
332	Cpl.	Lee, B. H.	Watervaal.	6- 7-1900	Watervaal.
335	Sgt.	Logan, A. E. H.	Badfontein	4- 9-1900	Badfontein.
152	Pte.	Norris, F.	Vlakfontein.	5- 7-1900	On ground.
514	Sgt.	Parker, E. C.	Watervaal	30- 7-1900	Watervaal.
284	Pte.	West, W.	Badfontein	4- 9-1900	Badfontein.
312	"	Wiggins, H. J.	"	4- 9-1900	"

NOMINAL ROLL of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of Lord Strathcona's Horse who have died of disease or from accident.

Reg. No.	Rank.	Name.	Cause of death.	Place.	Date.	Where buried.
171	Pte.	Banks, E. M.	Appendicitis	Cape Town	2- 6-1900	Cape Town.
398	"	Cancellor, E. V.	Enteric.	Germiston	13-11-1900	Germiston.
321	"	Cotterill, C. W.	"	Durban	24- 6-1900	Durban.
51	"	Dandy, C. R.	"	Potchefstroom	11 12 1900	Potchefstroom.
324	"	Davis, L. S.	"	Longmans	9-10-1900	Longmans.
361	"	Fernie, M.	"	Bloemfontein.	31- 1-1901	Bloemfontein.
381	"	Harris, C. B.	"	Woolwich		
629	"	Hunt, W. Devere	Bright's disease	Pretoria	14-11-1900	Pretoria.
364	"	Hunter, E. T.	Enteric.	Gravesend	16- 2-1901	Gravesend.
221	"	McIntosh, E.	"	Bloemfontein.	28- 1-1901	Bloemfontein.
483	"	McNicoll, A.	"	Newcastle	19- 7-1900	Newcastle.
500	Cpl.	St. George, B. A. L. E.	"	Johannesburg	21-12-1900	Johannesburg.
157	Pte.	Scott, L. B.	Accidentally shot.	Potchefstroom	21-11-1900	Potchefstroom.
392	"	Simmill, J.	Abscess.	Cape Town	25- 4-1900	Cape Town.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

NOMINAL ROLL of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of Lord Strathcona's Horse who have been wounded in action.

Date.	Reg. No.	Rank and Name.	Place.	Nature.
1900.				
Nov. 3....	175	Pte. Bull, V. J.....	Frederickstad.....	Dangerous.
Aug. 26....	357	" Switzer, P. P.	Geluk's Farm.....	"
Dec. 23....	337	" McDonell, C. R.....	Near Clocolan.....	Severe.
Nov. 14....	135	" Stuart, A. W.....	Machavie Station.....	"
Oct. 1....	370	" Seymour, E. B.....	Kruger's Post.....	"
Sept. 10....	386	" Nicholson, C. J. G.....	Devil's Knuckles.....	"
Sept. 10....	193	Corp. Flintoff, W.....	".....	"
Aug. 24....	324	Pte. Davis, L. S.....	Carolina, near Geluk's Farm.....	"
Sept. 4....	98	" Garner, A. C.....	Badfontein.....	"
Aug. 26....	341	" Palmer, R. H.....	Geluk's Farm.....	"
Aug. 26....	494	" Childers, H. C.....	".....	"
Aug. 14....	30	" Nicks, J.....	Carolina.....	"
Aug. 7....	305	" Menteth, W. E. S.....	Amesfoot.....	"
July 5....	646	" Sparks, G. A. S.....	Standerton.....	"
July 5....	606	" McArthur, Alex.....	".....	"
July 5....	605	" McDougal, J. C.....	".....	"
July 13....	34	" Robinson, A.....	One Tree Hill.....	"
July 13....	18	" Dodd, G. S.....	".....	"
Aug. 28....	622	" Burnet, D.....	Machadodorp.....	Slight.
Nov. 11....	39	" Treston, J.....	Botha's Kraal.....	"
Oct. 27....	67	" Machell, S.....	Near Frederickstad, Gat's Rand..	"
Aug. 28....	266	" Whiteley, F. C.....	Machadodorp.....	"
Aug. 26....	292	" Hammond, R. B. C.....	Geluk's Farm.....	"
Sept. 2....	58	" Watts, C. G. N.....	Helvetia.....	"

AUXILIARY CORPS.

THE NURSING SISTERS.

The nursing sisters sent from Canada, although few in number, rendered good service, and did work no less creditable than the troops whom they went out to nurse. The party of four who accompanied the first contingent arrived in South Africa when the nursing staff was very small, some 40 strong only, and as the staff was increased during their period of service to 1,000 from necessity, their presence in the country was most opportune. The services of the second contingent nurses, who arrived four months later, were not any less acceptable.

I think the suggestion of the Director General of Medical Services, in the last annual report, that the cadres of a nursing service should be inaugurated in connection with our military forces, and positions therein offered to these nursing sisters is a good one, and should be acted on.

POSTAL CORPS.

The postal corps sent to South Africa by the Post Office Department, consisting of Capt. W. R. Ecclestone in charge, and Messrs. Rowan Johnston, Kenneth A. Murray, Thomas B. Bedell and Joseph Lallier as assistants, performed most acceptable work. With troops constantly moving over such a large country it is an impossibility to reach them with mail matter regularly and promptly. The presence of this corps, however, to specially watch the postal interest of Canadians was a great boon, and one much appreciated.

The military branch of the Militia Department has not been without post office experience, as some 8,500 letters have been forwarded to it by the Post Office Department,

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

or from Shorncliffe and South Africa direct, to be forwarded to soldiers who had left South Africa or England before their receipt. Many more letters were received addressed to persons who had met death in the battlefield or in some other manner. It is satisfactory to note that at the present time none of the letters remain undelivered.

ARTIFICERS.

The War Office intimated in January, 1900, through the High Commissioner for Canada, that the services of qualified shoeing-smiths, saddlers and wheelers would be acceptable in South Africa, for employment at Re-mount Depots and with transport establishments, and space was reserved in the "*S.S. Milwaukee*" for 20. There were, however, three in excess of that number enrolled and sent out.

Conditions of their employment were as follows :—

To serve with Her Majesty's forces in any part of South Africa, at six shillings per diem, and rations, for six months, or such less period as their services were required. If their services were dispensed with within the six months, one month's notice, or one month's pay to be given.

GENERAL AND OTHER REMARKS.

RETURN OF THE TROOPS.

On July 13 the first detachment of returning soldiers reached Canada, comprising 28 invalids, who arrived at Quebec by the S.S. "*Parisian*". Lt.-Colonel B. H. Vidal, Acting Assistant Adjutant General at Head-Quarters, was detailed to proceed to Quebec to meet the party and to pay them off and discharge them.

The Band of the Garrison Division, R. C. A., played the soldiers to the Citadel, where they were quartered until they could proceed to their homes, and the Militia of the city of Quebec voluntarily paraded to line the streets to assist in making the reception to their comrades in arms by the citizens of Quebec one worthy of the occasion.

Other detachments arrived from time to time, and by November 1, when the Steamers ceased to call at Quebec, over 300 had disembarked there.

Troops have returned as follows :—

(a) Detachments of invalids via England who disembarked at Quebec up to November 1, 1900.....	316
(b) Troops by the Transport " <i>Idaho</i> ," disembarked at Halifax, November 1, 1900.....	434
(c) Colonel Otter and part of his command, by Steamship " <i>Lake Champlain</i> ," who returned via England and arrived at Halifax, December 24, 1900.....	289
(d) Transport " <i>Roslin Castle</i> " direct from Capetown to Halifax, arriving January 8, 1901.....	830
(e) Lt.-Colonel Steele and part of his command, by S.S. " <i>Nu-midian</i> ," who returned via England and arrived at Halifax, March 8, 1901.....	280
(f) Detachments of invalids via England, disembarked at Halifax to date (March 27)	276
	<hr/> 2,425

On all occasions when large numbers returned, Officers with necessary clerical assistance, were sent from Head-Quarters, in order that N.C. Officers and men should be paid the deferred pay due them, discharged and provided with transportation to their homes, with the least possible delay. A Certificate discharging them from further service in South Africa was issued to each N.C. Officer and man.

COMMISSIONS IN THE ARMY.

In March, 1900, the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for War offered to Canada, 42 direct commissions in the army, 12 of which were to be given to cadets in attendance at the Royal Military College of Canada. Of the remaining 30, 24 were set apart by His Excellency the Governor General for members of Canadian corps on service in South Africa.

Nominations for these 24 commissions were made by His Excellency, and the appointments gazetted, as hereunder :—

ROYAL ARTILLERY.

Rank and Name.	Corps to which belonged.	Gazetted to.	Date.
Pte. H. M. T. Pym.....	Lord Strathcona's Corps...	R.F.A.	14-12-1900
Gunner E. Duval.....	E Battery, R.C.A.....	"	5-10-1900
Lieut. T. E. Pooley.....	Lord Strathcona's Corps.....	"	5-10-1900
Corpl. J. K. G. McGee.....	Canadian Infantry.....	"	5-10-1900
Gunner J. R. Jago.....	E Battery, R.C.A.....	"	5-10-1900
" D. H. N. Russel.....	D "	"	5-10-1900
Sergt. M. N. Ross	D "	"	5-10-1900

INFANTRY.

Sergt. A. L. Ross.....	30th Regt. Wellington Rifles...	Lancashire Fusiliers..	24- 8-1900
Pte. W. O. Paterson.....	Nelson Rifles.....	East Lancashire. .	24- 8-1900
" R. B. Campbell	"	Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry.....	18- 9-1900
" M. Cook	R.C.R.I.....	Royal Warwicks.....	2-10-1900
" R. D. Whigham.....	R.C.R.I.....	Lancashire Fusiliers...	2-10-1900
Tpr. E. H. R. Thackwell.....	Canadian Mounted Rifles ..	East Lancashire	2-10-1900
Sergt J. A. Belford	D Battery, R.C.A.	Middlesex	2-10-1900
Bombr. J. C. Anderson.....	" "	Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry.	2-10-1900
" D. A. McDonell	" "	Royal Berkshire	2-10-1900
Lieut. R. B. Willis....	R.C.R.I (See Army List).....	Manchester.....	20-10-1900
Gunner W. N. Cosby	C Battery, Canadian Artillery..	Middlesex	2-10-1900
Pte. H. S. Mitchell.. . . .	R.C.R.I.....	"	4-12-1900
Tpr. A. N. Bredin.....	2nd Bn. C.M.R.....	Leinster.....	4- 1-1901
Pte. A. Butler	Canadian Mounted Rifles.....	Norfolk.....	4- 1-1901
Corpl. Leach, F. E.....	" "	Liverpool... ..	4- 1-1901

Of the foregoing appointments the following have since resigned their commission :
Bombardier J. C. Anderson,
Sergt. J. A. Belford.
Corporal F. E. Leach.

The following were selected and were nominated by His Excellency the Governor General, but declined their commission :—

ROYAL ARTILLERY.

Rank and Name.	Corps to which belonged.
Lieut. W. P. Murray.....	E Battery, R.C.A.
Lieut. T. W. Van Tuyl	" "

INFANTRY.

Lieut. C. J. Armstrong	R.C.R.I.
Private I. Currie.....	5th Regt. Royal Scots.
" F. S. Dickinson.....	5th Regt. C. A.
Private P. S. Stevenson.....	R.C.R.I.

TELEGRAMS AT SPECIAL RATES.

It was felt during the early part of last summer that an arrangement should if possible be made for the transmission of telegrams between our troops in South Africa and their relatives, at a reduced rate, such as had been arranged for telegrams between people living in Great Britain and their relatives in the army in the field.

Application was accordingly made to the Colonial Office, and that department arranged with the Post Office Department to extend the system of packed telegrams, which the Post Office Department was handling, to include Canada. The charge for a telegram from Canada to South Africa, or vice versa, under this arrangement was the special charge in force between England and South Africa, plus the Government rate between England and Canada, or a total cost of 61 cents per word. The ordinary rates for inland transmission in Canada to and from this office were of course an additional charge.

All telegrams both from and to South Africa passed through this office as well as the London post office, and in both offices the messages were packed or unpacked as was necessary. The arrangement has been more satisfactory to the troops in South Africa than to the sender of messages from Canada, and consequently far more messages were received from South Africa than were sent from Canada. This was because the sender of a message in South Africa only required to get his message to a telegraph office to practically ensure its delivery in Canada, while, on the other hand, all messages for South Africa were sent to Capetown, from where the person addressed had to be located, which at times was very difficult owing to the corps moving about so rapidly, and possibly the person for whom the message was, would be absent from his corps even if it were located.

On the whole the arrangement has worked most satisfactorily. The secretary of the General Post Office, London, Mr. Ardron, has been most attentive to the interest of the Canadians in this matter, and to him and the authorities in London who aided in bringing about this arrangement, the people of Canada are indebted for the boon of being able to telegraph to their relatives in the field at less than half the ordinary cost.

An arrangement was also made with the War Office for the transmission, through that department, of official messages at the same cost.

A REGRETTABLE INCIDENT,

A most regrettable incident in connection with the conduct of our special service forces while in South Africa was that which arose out of the question of the continuance on service of the first contingent after the termination of their term of enlistment.

Col. Otter deals with the question in his report, and I only allude to it because it is quite apparent, in face of the facts, that there were no good grounds for the misunderstanding between Colonel Otter and his command which unfortunately arose. Colonel Otter on July 13, in his weekly letter, asked for instructions on the subject of the continuance on service of his non commissioned officers and men, should they be required after October 15. His letter was received in this office on August 20, and on August 22 the question was submitted by me for decision. On August 24 the question was referred, in the usual way, to the Department of Justice. On August 29, up to which date no decision had been received from the Justice Department, His Excellency the Governor General received a telegram from the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, asking for the observations of His Excellency's Government as to the best way of meeting the difficulty. On August 30 His Excellency replied to Mr. Chamberlain that the "men may claim discharges after the expiration of their period of service, unless they voluntarily agreed to an extension."

Unfortunately this decision was not communicated to me, and consequently Colonel Otter remained in ignorance of it until it reached him by way of the War Office. On September 14, Mr. Chamberlain telegraphed His Excellency that instructions had been sent to South Africa that all men unwilling to extend their period of service would be returned home. The instructions referred to by Mr. Chamberlain appear to have

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

reached South Africa on or about September 7, and they probably prompted the telegram which the Commander-in-Chief sent to Colonel Otter on that date, a copy of which is included in Colonel Otter's report.

In reply to Lord Roberts' request Colonel Otter, on September 8, speaking for his regiment, very properly, in my opinion, promised to comply, and took steps to do so.

Colonel Barker, commanding lines of communication, conveyed the War Office instructions direct to the officers commanding companies of the Royal Canadian Regiment away from the headquarters of the battalion, and the receipt of the permission to return home thus communicated, while Colonel Otter was at the same time endeavouring to obtain their consent to remain, caused the unfortunate misunderstanding. Colonel Otter thereupon telegraphed to Ottawa on September 10. His telegram, a copy of which follows, was not received until the night of September 13:—

“Previous to receipt of War Office authority for sending home men wishing to return Canada Roberts personally requested the regiment remain further period. I deemed compliance advisable, so agreed; no definite period specified, and await your orders *re* further action. Cable urgent.”

Upon the receipt of this telegram a decision on the point referred on August 22 was requested, and I only ascertained then, that His Excellency had telegraphed Mr. Chamberlain August 30 as above.

On September 15 I telegraphed Colonel Otter in the sense of His Excellency's telegram to Mr. Chamberlain, adding that there was no objection to the battalion, whole or in part, continuing on service. Colonel Otter did not receive my reply until September 18, and as an imperative order that the men must continue to serve was the only answer that could help him, it did not mend matters.

It can be said that the non-commissioned officers and men were within their rights in demanding their discharge on the expiration of their term of enlistment; that all ranks had had a hard year's work and a surfeit of war, and that many of them might lose their civil employment if they did not return to Canada by the end of the time for which they enlisted.

These were strong reasons for the desire on the part of many to return; but Canada had gone to great expense in sending contingents to South Africa, and had treated her troops much more generously than she had undertaken to do; they had also been splendidly treated by the Commander-in-Chief, who lost no opportunity of keeping them at the front, or favourably considering their interests in many other ways.

The battalion had made a name for itself, of which the people of Canada, whom they represented, were justly proud, and this name would have been greatly enhanced if all officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the battalion still in the field, could have seen their way to continue on service for the further short period desired by Lord Roberts.

PAY AND ALLOWANCES.

The government of Canada undertook to pay members of the first contingent, from the date of enlistment until the date of arrival in South Africa, the rates of pay provided for the Permanent Corps of Canada. Under these conditions officers accepted appointment and the men enlisted.

The conditions under which officers were appointed to and men enlisted in the corps of the 2nd Contingent were that they should receive, up to date of arrival in South Africa, the rates of pay provided for their relative rank in the North-west Mounted Police Force.

The Government subsequently brought down to Parliament a Bill providing for the continuance of these rates during the whole period of service of the respective contingents, the difference between the pay provided by the Royal Warrant, which Her Majesty's Government had undertaken to pay from the dates of the arrival of the troops in South Africa, and the Permanent Corps and North-west Mounted Police rates, being paid by the Government of Canada. This Bill was assented to on April 4, 1900.

The Act, which is intituled "An Act to provide for the expenses of the Canadian volunteers serving Her Majesty in South Africa," is as follows :—

Preamble

WHEREAS, hostilities having broken out between Great Britain and the South African Republic and the Orange Free State during the period when Parliament was not in session, the Government of Canada deemed it expedient to anticipate the action of Parliament by authorizing the appropriation of certain sums of money for the purpose of equipping and forwarding Canadian volunteers to the seat of war; and whereas it is expedient that such appropriations and the expenditures made thereunder be ratified and confirmed, and that further provision be made as hereinafter enacted: Therefore Her Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and House of Commons of Canada, enacts as follows :—

Expenditure authorized for sending volunteers to South Africa.

1. From and out of the Consolidated Revenue Fund of Canada there shall and may be paid and applied a sum, not exceeding in the whole the sum of eight hundred and fifty thousand dollars, being the sum of two hundred and fifty thousand dollars authorized under Order in Council, dated the fourth day of November, one thousand eight hundred and ninety nine, and the sum of six hundred thousand dollars authorized by Order in Council, dated the fifth day of January, one thousand nine hundred, towards payment of the expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, in sending the contingents of Canadian volunteers to South Africa, or in connection therewith; and the members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada, and the officers and persons who authorized or made the expenditure of any of the said sums under the Orders in Council above referred to, or under any warrant of the Governor General issued in consequence of or on the authority thereof, are hereby indemnified and exonerated from all liability by reason of having used or authorized the use of the above mentioned sums of money, or any portion thereof, without due legal authority, and all expenditure heretofore made of any of the said sums shall be held to have been lawfully made.

Certain persons indemnified from liability

Further expenditure authorized

2. In addition to the said sum of eight hundred and fifty thousand dollars referred to in the preceding section, there shall and may be paid and applied, from and out of the Consolidated Revenue Fund of Canada, a further sum, not exceeding in the whole the sum of one million one hundred and fifty thousand dollars, towards defraying any further expenditures that may be incurred in connection with the sending of Canadian volunteers for active service in South Africa, and for providing as hereinafter mentioned for a fund by way of allowance to such volunteers or their dependents.

"Expenditure" defined. Equipment, transportation, etc.

3. The word "expenditure" in this Act includes—
(a.) expenses of every kind in connection with the raising, enrolling, arming, equipping, provisioning, despatching and transporting of the said volunteers up to the time of their arrival at the place of debarkation in South Africa;

Pay of volunteers.

(b.) the pay and allowances of each such volunteer (both before and after the date of his debarkation in South Africa) at the rates named in the Order in Council dated the thirteenth day of March, one thousand nine hundred, set forth in the schedule of this Act,—the provisions of which Order in Council are hereby approved and confirmed;

Separation allowances.

(c.) the separation allowances payable under the provisions of the last mentioned Order in Council.

Disposal of pay while on service in Africa.

4. The amounts payable to any such volunteer under the Order in Council set forth in the schedule to this Act, after the time of the debarkation of such volunteer in South Africa, shall not be paid to such volunteer while he is on service, but shall be placed to his credit and shall be applied, in such manner as the Governor in Council determines, for the benefit of

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

those dependent upon him, or, if not so applied, shall be paid to him, or his representatives, at the close of his period of service.

SCHEDULE.

EXTRACT from a Report of the Committee of the Honourable the Privy Council, approved by His Excellency on the 13th day of March, 1900.

On a Memorandum dated 12th March, 1900, from the Minister of Militia and Defence, recommending that the pay of Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and men of the Canadian Contingents on Special Service in South Africa be as follows :—

1. Up to and inclusive of the date of disembarkation in South Africa :—

(a.) 1st Contingent, comprising the 2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment and reinforcements :—

Rank.	Pay.	Allowances.	Total.
	\$ cts.	\$ cts.	\$ cts.
Lieut.-Colonel	4 00	0 75	4 75
Major.....	3 50	0 75	4 25
Captain.....	2 82	.....	2 82
Lieutenant.....	2 00	.....	2 00
Adjutant, according to rank .....	.....	0 50	.....
Quartermaster	2 82	.....	2 82
Medical Officer.....	3 00	.....	3 00
Regimental Sergeant Major.....	1 25	.....	1 25
Quartermaster Sergeant	1 00	.....	1 00
Staff Sergeants.....	1 00	.....	1 00
Colour Sergeants.....	1 00	.....	1 00
Sergeants.....	0 80	.....	0 80
Corporals	0 70	.....	0 70
Privates.....	0 50	.....	0 50
Buglers.....	0 50	.....	0 50

Being the rates of pay provided for the Permanent Corps of Canada, and allowances, with the exception that the pay of privates is at the rate of 50 cents per diem, the rate of pay of a private in the several corps of the Active Militia, instead of 40 cents, the rate provided for the Permanent Corps.

And in addition to the foregoing, in the case of officers in permanent employment, such amounts as will make their pay equal to that of the pay and allowances of their appointment, and, in the case of officers of the Permanent Corps, amounts equal to such increments of pay as have accrued to them under the regulations governing the pay of the Permanent Corps (Part III., Sec. 3, Para. 15, Regulations and Orders for the Militia, 1898).

(b.) The 2nd Contingent, comprising the Canadian Mounted Rifles and the Brigade Division of the Royal Canadian Artillery :—

OFFICERS.

<i>N. W. Mounted Police.</i>	<i>Special Service Force.</i>
Commissioner	Lieut.-Colonel \$7 12
Assistant Commissioner.	Major 4 38
Superintendent.....	Captain..... 3 84
Inspector.....	Lieutenant.. . . . 2 75
Surgeon	Medical Officer 3 84
Veterinary Surgeon.....	Veterinary Officer.. . . . 2 75

N. C. OFFICERS AND MEN.			
<i>N. W. Mounted Police.</i>		<i>Special Service Force.</i>	
	Per diem.		Per diem.
Staff Sergts. (higher rate).....	\$2 00	Regimental Sergt. Maj	\$2 00
Other Staff Sergts. (higher rate)...	1 50	{ Battery or Squadron Sergt. Maj ...	1 50
		{ Battery or Squad'n Qr. Master Sergt.	1 50
		{ Orderly Room Sergt.....	1 50
		{ Hospital Sergt.	1 50
		{ Pay Sergt.....	1 50
Other Non-Com. Officers, Sergts	1 00	{ Orderly Room Clerk	1 00
		{ Sergeants	1 00
Other Non-Com. Officers, Corporals..	0 85	{ Corporals	0 85
		{ Bombardier	0 80
Private ...	0 75	Private.....	0 75
		{ Farrier Qr. Master Sergt.....	1 75
		{ Sergeant	1 50
		{ Corporal.....	1 25
		{ Bombardier.	1 25
Artificers.....		{ Private	1 25
		{ Trumpeter	1 00

Being the rates of pay provided for the North-West Mounted Police, with the exception that the pay of privates is at the maximum rate of pay for privates in that force, viz. : 75 cents per diem instead of at the rate of from 50 to 75 cents per diem, according to service.

(2.) From the date of debarkation in South Africa :

(a.) 1st Contingent and reinforcements :—

By Her Majesty's Government, as agreed upon :

The rates of pay provided for Infantry in the Royal Warrant for pay ;

By the government of Canada :

Such additional amounts as will be required to make the total pay of each officer, N.C. officer and man equal to that specified in paragraph 1 (a) above.

(b.) 2nd Contingent :—

By Her Majesty's Government, as agreed upon :

The rates of pay provided, in the case of the Mounted Rifles, for Cavalry : and in the case of the Field Artillery, for Field Artillery, in the Royal Warrant for pay.

By the Government of Canada—

Such additional amounts as will be required to make the total pay of each officer, N.C. officer and man equal to that specified in paragraph 1 (b).

The Minister further recommends that all officers attached to the army for instructional or other purposes at the request and with the approval of the Government of Canada, including Chaplains with the relative rank of captain, and nurses with the relative rank of lieutenant, be paid the rates of pay provided for the rank in the Permanent Corps with which they are attached, except in the case of officers belonging to the Permanent Corps or in permanent employment, who shall be paid, in addition, such allowances and increments as they may be entitled to under the Regulations and Orders for the Militia, 1898, and that such part of their pay as is not paid by Her Majesty's Government, be paid by the Government of Canada.

The Minister further recommends that separation allowances as hereunder be paid :—

In the case of officers : One-half the amount of such officer's pay to the wife.

In the case of N.C. officers and men :—

Rank.	Wife.	Son under 14 years.	Daughter under 16 years.
Sergeant.	0 50	0 25	0 05
Corporal.....	0 35	0 05	0 05
Private	0 25	0 05	0 05

Such allowances to be paid from and inclusive of the date of embarkation.

The Committee submit the same for Your Excellency's approval.

JOHN J. McGEE, *Clerk of the Privy Council.*

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

The following statement shows the result of the foregoing legislation :—

1ST CONTINGENT.

Rank.	Pay from date of enlistment until date of arrival in South Africa, by the Government, of Canada according to agreement.	Pay from date of arrival in South Africa, by Her Majesty's Government, according to agreement.	Difference of pay between British and Canadian rates, from date of arrival in South Africa, paid by Government of Canada over and above agreement.
	\$ cts.	\$ cts.	\$ cts.
Lieut. Colonel.....	\$4 00		
" allowances.....	75	4 38	37
Major.....	3 50		
" allowance.....	75	3 89	36
Captain.....	2 82	2 82	
Lieutenant.....	2 00	1 58	42
Adjutant, according to rank.....		Adj. Cap. 60	
" allowance.....	50	" Lieut. 85	
Quartermaster.....	2 82	2 19	63
Medical Officer ..	3 00	3 65 to 7 30	
Regimental Sgt. Major.....	1 25	1 09	16
Quartermaster Sergeant ..	1 00	97	03
Staff sergeants	1 00	85	15
Color Sergeants.....	1 00	73	27
Sergeants.....	80	56	24
Corporals.....	70	40	30
Privates.	50	24	26
Buglers.....	50	26	24

2ND CONTINGENT.

	\$ cts.	\$ cts.	\$ cts.
Lieut.-Colonel.....	7 12	5 23	1 89
Major	4 38	3 65 to 4 38	
Captain.....	3 84	3 16	68
Lieutenant ..	2 75	1 86	89
Medical Officer	3 84	3 65 to 7 30	
Veterinary Officer.....	2 75	3 33 to 6 08	
Regimental Sergt. Major.....	2 00	1 28	72
Battery or Squadron Sergt. Major ..	1 50	1 05	45
Battery or Squadron, Qr. Master Sergeant.....	1 50	80	70
Orderly Room Sergeant	1 50	65	85
Hospital Sergeant.....	1 50	65	85
Pay Sergeant.....	1 50	65	85
Orderly Room Clerk.....	1 00	48	52
Sergeants	1 00	65	35
Corporals.....	85	49	36
Bombardiers.....	80	54	26
Privates.....	75	29	46
Artificers {	Farrier Qr. Mr. Sergeant.....	97	78
	Sergeant.....	69 to 89	
	Corporal.....	48 to 89	
	Bombardier.....		
Trumpeters.....	Private.....	40	
		32	68

When the contingents were raised our regulations did not provide any separation allowances, and therefore the allowances provided in the Royal Warrant for pay were applicable. They were :—

Wife.	15 cents per diem.
Each girl under 16 years	5 “ “
“ boy “ 14 “	5 “ “

Army orders issued some months later made provision for the much more liberal scale contained in the last paragraph of the Act above, and in adopting this scale for our troops it was made retroactive to the dates of enlistment.

Provision was also made to pay the wives of officers an allowance equal to one-half of their husband's pay. No such allowance as this is paid to the wives of officers of the army.

The foregoing would seem to establish that the Government have treated our soldiers generously. Moreover, it can be safely said that no honest claim has been made against the department in connection with the pay or allowances of any officer, N.C.O. or man which has not been, when circumstances admitted of it, promptly settled, and a decision always rendered, when there were any points in doubt, in the claimant's favour.

DEFERRED PAY, 1ST CONTINGENT.

The question has naturally arisen why the rates of pay for the 2nd Contingent should be so much higher than those of the 1st. All will admit that the sacrifice made by officers and men of the 1st Contingent in leaving their civil employment, was as great as that made by members of the 2nd, and the hardships endured by the 2nd contingent were certainly not greater than those of the 1st. The only justification for higher rates being paid the 2nd Contingent, is that in the army mounted troops are paid higher rates than dismounted, but the difference is not nearly so great as that between the 1st and 2nd Contingents.

These rates were based upon the scale of pay the N.W.M.P. were receiving, as the 2nd Battalion of the Canadian Mounted Rifles was to be raised among the members of that force, and it would have been invidious to have offered a lower rate to the N.C. officers and men of the 1st Battalion of the same regiment, who were largely recruited from the Royal Canadian Dragoons and cavalry units of the active militia.

In view of the foregoing, and believing that as soldiers the 1st Contingent have not been underpaid, though not so generously treated as the members of the 2nd Contingent, I have not felt it my duty to urge upon the Government that the 1st Contingent should receive the abnormal rates paid to the 2nd Contingent.

DEFERRED PAY FOR “C” BATTERY, R.C.F.A.

Another instance of exceptional treatment in the matter of pay was that of deferred pay for “C” Battery.

When the officers detailed from head-quarters boarded the “Roslin Castle” at Halifax to pay off the troops who returned home by that transport, it was brought to their attention that “C” Battery had been authorized to receive Rhodesian rates of pay from the date of their departure from Capetown for Beira, April 14, until the date of disembarkation in Canada. As these rates were greatly in excess of the Canadian rates, the deferred pay for this Battery was withheld and the question whether it should be paid or not was referred to head quarters.

It was a matter of doubt whether this extra pay was issued by the Imperial Government or by the Rhodesian Government, but as it subsequently transpired that it was the Imperial pay issued to the Rhodesian Field Force, it was ruled by the Minister of Justice that the Officers, Non-Commissioners Officers and men of “C” Battery had no claim to deferred pay, which was only intended to bring the Imperial pay they had already received in South Africa up to a maximum equal to Canadian rates.

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

GALLANTRY OF CANADIAN TROOPS.

Many expressions of admiration of the gallantry of Canadian troops during the campaign were received from time to time. Among them was one from our late lamented Queen, which was as follows:—

Mr. Chamberlain to Lord Minto.

LONDON, February 27, 1900.

Her Majesty the Queen desires you to express to people of Dominion her admiration of gallant conduct of her Canadian troops in late engagement, and her sorrow at loss of so many brave men.

(Sgd.) CHAMBERLAIN.

Among other telegrams received were the following:—

Lord Roberts to Lord Minto.

PAARDEBERG, February 22, 1900.

Canadian regiment has done admirable service since arrival South Africa. I deeply regret heavy loss it suffered during fighting 18th instant, and beg you will assure people how much we all here admire conspicuous gallantry displayed by our Canadian comrades on that occasion.

(Sgd.) ROBERTS.

Lieutenant Governor New South Wales to Lord Minto.

SYDNEY, February 26, 1900.

The Premier on behalf of people of New South Wales desires to express deep sympathy with people of Canada in the loss of so many of her valuable and gallant sons.

(Sgd.) FRED. M. DARLEY,
Lieutenant Governor.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lord Minto.

LONDON, February 28, 1900.

Hearty congratulations to Canada on noble part taken by Canadian troops in Roberts' achievement.

(Sgd.) CHAMBERLAIN.

Governor of British Honduras to Governor General of Canada

NEW ORLEANS, LA., March 13, 1900.

Hearty congratulations to Canadian troops on active service.

(Sgd.) GOVERNOR OF BRITISH HONDURAS.

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

Governor of South Australia to Lord Minto.

ADELAIDE, March 15, 1900.

Governor, Ministers and people of South Australia beg to offer their congratulations to Canadian people on splendid conduct of their contingents in South Africa and sympathy in sad losses.

(Sgd.) TENNYSON.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lord Minto.

LONDON, May 22, 1900.

Congratulate Canada on great service rendered by Canadian Artillery in relieving Mafeking.

(Sgd). CHAMBERLAIN.

Lord Roberts to Lord Minto.

PRETORIA, July 6, 1900.

I have much pleasure in bringing to Your Excellency's notice the good work done by the 1st and 2nd Battalions Canadian Mounted Rifles, who have been repeatedly conspicuous for their gallant conduct and soldierlike instincts. During the attack by the Boers at Katbosch on June 22, a small party of Pincher's Creek men of the 2nd Battalion displayed the greatest gallantry and devotion to duty, holding in check a force of Boers by whom they were largely outnumbered. Corporal Morden and Private Kerr continued fighting till mortally wounded, Lance-Corporal Miles and Private Miles (sic) wounded, continued to fire and held their ground.

On June 18 a party of 1st Battalion under Lieut. Young when operating with a force under General Hutton to the north-west of Pretoria succeeded in capturing two of the enemy's guns and brought in a herd of cattle and several prisoners without losing a man.

(Sgd). ROBERTS.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lord Minto.

LONDON, July 18, 1900.

Following despatch received from Lord Roberts begins: July 18, the two young Canadian officers mentioned in my telegram of yesterday were killed while gallantly leading their men in a counter attack upon the enemy's flank at a critical juncture of his assault upon our position, Lieut. Borden, only son of the Minister of Militia, Canada, had been twice before brought to my notice in despatches for gallant and intrepid conduct, ends. Express to Doctor Borden my deep sympathy with him at the loss of his gallant son.

(Sgd). CHAMBERLAIN.

Lord Roberts to Hon. F. W. Borden.

ARMY HEAD QUARTERS,

PRETORIA, July 18, 1900.

DEAR MR. BORDEN,—In forwarding to you a copy of the telegram in which General Hutton conveyed to me the sad news of the death of your gallant son, I venture to add one word of sincere and heartfelt sympathy with you in your great loss. You will see by the telegram how well your son had acquitted himself and how he fell bravely lead-

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

ing on his men. I know for the moment nothing can lessen your grief, but I trust that in time it may be some slight consolation to you to know that he fell doing his duty in the service of the mother land, and has left behind him a record, as General Hutton puts it, of intrepid and gallant conduct on several occasions.

Believe me, yours very truly,

ROBERTS.

Sir Alfred Milner to Lord Minto.

CAPE TOWN, Sept. 7, 1900.

September 7, following extract from telegram from Lord Roberts begins. A post held by 125 men of Canadian Mounted Infantry guarding railway between Pan and Wondersfontein was attacked at daylight this morning by body of enemy under Commandant Trekhart with two guns and one pompom. Brigadier General Mahon went to their assistance but found on arrival that they had beaten off the enemy, a very creditable performance, Major Saunders, Lieut. Moodie slightly wounded and D. V. Johnson wounded, missing, Sergts. Hayne, McCulloch, Privates Strong, Clendinnin, Shunn, Duxbury, all Canadian Mounted Infantry ends.

(Sgd). MILNER.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lord Minto.

LONDON, Oct. 26, 1900.

Her Majesty's government learn with satisfaction of arrangements being made for welcome of members of Canadian regiment. Their splendid services in South Africa have won the admiration and gratitude of the whole empire, and the memory of their indomitable courage and resolution will ever live in the annals of the British Army.

(Sgd). CHAMBERLAIN.

CANADA'S AID TO THE EMPIRE.

The accompanying statement shows that Canada sent to South Africa to aid the mother country in this war, 160 officers and 2,932 non-commissioned officers and men. The statement also shows the number of casualties, and contains other interesting information.

Canada also placed at the disposal of the mother country the 3rd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment, to temporarily relieve the 1st Battalion, Prince of Wales' Leinster Regiment, Royal Canadians, at Halifax. Although this battalion did not proceed to South Africa, by relieving the 1st Battalion, Leinster Regiment, for service elsewhere than at Halifax, we thus practically augmented the military forces of the empire by 29 officers and 975 non-commissioned officers and men. The total troops, therefore, raised in Canada in aid of the empire in this war, were as follows:

	Officers.	N. C. Officers and Men.
Sent to South Africa.....	160	2,932
For Garrison duty at Halifax.....	29	975
Total	189	3,907

64 VICTORIA, A. 1901

A much larger force could have been sent without difficulty, and no doubt additional troops would have been authorized if there had been any necessity for them, but the chief object in the colonies sending contingents to South Africa was to demonstrate to the world that England could not be attacked without the assailants having the colonies to reckon with at the same time, and that in the colonies there are, without there being even what might be called the nucleus of a standing army, citizen soldierly forces which are to the empire a formidable strength. Sufficient troops were sent to demonstrate this, and no action on the part of the colonies could have done so much towards uniting the mother country and the colonies and thus creating an empire unparalleled for magnitude and grandeur, and with unprecedented possibilities for peace, freedom and the expansion of christianity and civilization.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

R. H. O'GRADY HALY, Major-General,
Commanding Canadian Militia

HEAD QUARTERS, OTTAWA,
March 27, 1901.

64 VICTORIA

SESSIONAL PAPER No. 35a

A. 1901

STATEMENT showing total number of Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men, sent from Canada on Special Service in South Africa, 1899-1900, and Casualties, &c.

	Establishment.		Total officers, N.C.Os. and men.	Killed or died of wounds received in action.		Died from disease or accident- ally killed.		Invalided home.	Appointed to commission in Imperial Army.		Discharged to enlist in South African Con- stabulary.		Discharged to enlist in Howard's Scouts.		Discharged to join other corps or to remain in South Africa		Missing.	On command in South Africa (sick, on leave and on duty).		Returned home, time expired.		Total officers, N.C.Os. and men.	WOUNDED.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																					
	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.		Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.		Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.		Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.		Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Dangerously.		Severely.		Slightly.		Not classified.		Total wounded.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
			Officers.					N.C.Os. and men.									Officers.					N.C.Os. and men.					Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.	Officers.	N.C.Os. and men.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
2nd (Special Service) Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment.	41	978																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										

tr
ch
th
to
ev
ar
th
th
ni
ex

H

